

Bit by Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

New Hello!



2nd PREP
SECOND TERM

2025

التعليم العام والأزهرى

الصف الثاني الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Contents

1

Part

- Exam specifications

Module 3: Science and art

- Unit (7) : Technology and the future
- Unit (8) : You are what you eat
- Unit (9) : Watch, listen and make

Review (C)

Module 4: Our place in the world

- Unit (10) : We are what we wear
- Unit (11) : The future of our planet
- Unit (12) : Languages and learning

Review (D)

2

Part

- Listening material

Booklet (free with the book)

- Dictation
- Homework exercises on lessons
- Tests on units
- General Revision & Exercises
- General Exercises
- End of Term Practice with Answers
- Final Exams
- Al-Azhar Exams



Specifications for Second Year Preparatory (2nd term) English Examination (2024 - 2025)

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثاني الإعدادي
(30 Marks) (الفصل الدراسي الثاني) للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤ / ٢٠٢٥ (Time: 2 Hours)

A Listening

4 Marks

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

Students listen to a text from (30 – 35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. (One mark each)

B Language Functions

5 Marks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions without providing them with any guidance. The situation in which the dialogue takes place is described briefly but clearly. The first sentence is given in full. (One mark each)

C Reading Comprehension

5 Marks

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each (**Half a mark each**) and **FOUR (4)** open-ended questions (One mark each)

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)



Vocabulary & Structure

9 Marks

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (4 Marks)

EIGHT (8) multiple-choice items (**6** vocabulary & **2** structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. (Half a mark each)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (5 Marks)

FIVE (5) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs...etc. related to what students have studied.. (One mark each)



Writing

7 Marks

6 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on.....: (7 Marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. (Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for choice of vocabulary – One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

OR

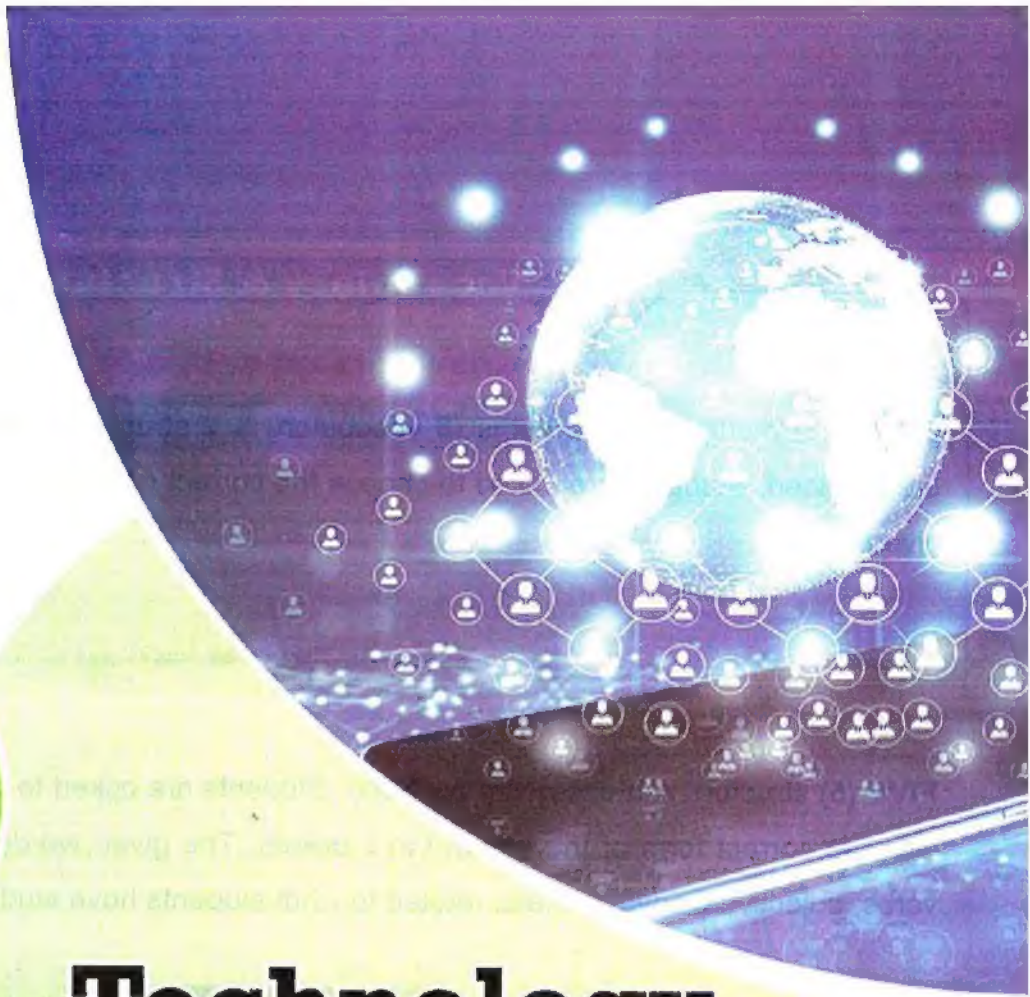
Write an email of about **NINETY (90)** words on: (7 Marks)

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85)** to **NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the email. Names and addresses are provided.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – One mark for organization -One mark for choice of vocabulary – One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)



**New
Hello!**



Technology and the future

Objectives

Reading:

A magazine article about online shopping;
The Time Machine; a poster about the
dangers of technology

Writing:

A reply to an online message; a formal
email about a problem with a delivery

Listening:

A discussion about new inventions;
people's problems with technology and
suggested solutions

Speaking:

Giving opinions about inventions and
technology; a debate

Language:

If/when + should for advice

Life Skills:

Critical thinking: technological awareness

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائماً)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)		

Useful Phrases

have {	money	يملك مالاً	spend {	money	ينفق مالاً
	a choice	لديه اختيار		time	يقضى وقت
	time	لديه وقت			
save {	money	يُخّذ المال	waste {	money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
	time	يوفر الوقت		time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
			wait for	a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)

Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)	يصحح - يصوب	correction	تصحيح - تصويب
invent (ed)	يخترع	invention	اختراع
predict (ed)	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ
translate (d)	يترجم	translation	ترجمة



Vocabulary

half-motorbike	نصف خصائص دراجة نارية	technology	التكنولوجيا
half-helicopter	نصف خصائص طائرة مروحية	for	مع «مؤيد لـ»
French	اللغة الفرنسية	against	ضد «معارض لـ»
shopping online = online shopping	التسوق عبر الإنترنت	the latest	الأحدث
		article	مقالة (في جريدة)
pollution	التلوث	either...or....	إما ... أو ...
resources	مصادر	benefits	فوائد
businesses	أعمال تجارية / شركات	cooler	أكثر برودة
wing	جناح	free time	وقت فراغ
firstly	أولاً	hope (d)	يأمل
secondly	ثانياً	push (ed)	يدفع (للأمام)
flying motorbike	دراجة نارية طائرة	prefer (red)	يفضل

Expressions & Prepositions

make electricity	يولد كهرباء	pass exams	يجتاز الامتحانات
look online	يبحث على الإنترنت	translate from...into... .. إلى	يترجم من ... إلى ...
wear headphones	يرتدي سماعات الرأس	on a motorbike	على دراجة نارية
get hotter	يزداد سخونة / حرارة	agree / disagree with	يتفق / يختلف مع
get home	يصل للمنزل	arrive in	يصل إلى (بلد)
do the shopping	يقوم بالتسوق	in a few minutes	في خلال دقائق قليلة
go shopping	يذهب للتسوق	at the speed of..	على سرعة ..
change roads into ...	يحول الطرق إلى ...	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
shop online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	think of	يفكر في

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

hear	يسمع	heard	heard
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
spend	يقضي وقت - ينفق مالاً	spent	spent
drive	يقود (سيارة مثلاً)	drove	driven
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
fly	يطير	flew	flown

Word

Meaning

Opposite

useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
famous	مشهور	popular	unknown	غير معروف
agree / for	يوافق - مؤيد	accept	disagree / against	لا يوافق / معارض
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف
real	حقيقي	true	unreal	غير حقيقي



Definitions

helicopter	طائرة مروحية	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly	١- وسيلة مواصلات ٢- عجلات ٣- محرك ٤- جهاز إلكتروني
translate (d)	يترجم	change words into a different language	
motorbike	دراجة نارية	a form of transport ⁽¹⁾ with two wheels ⁽²⁾ and an engine ⁽³⁾	
app	تطبيق	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other electronic device ⁽⁴⁾	
speed	سرعة	how fast something moves	
headphones	سماعات الرأس	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it	



Language Notes

1) spend / waste

- تستخدم الأفعال **spend / waste** كما يلي:

spend يقضي / **waste** يضيع + (time) + V-ing.

Ex. I don't want to **spend** lots of time **travelling** to the shops.

Ex. I **waste** no time **playing** video games.

spend ينفق / **waste** يهدر + (money) + on + V-ing. / noun

Ex. He **spent** much money **on** (buying) clothes.

Ex. Don't **waste** your money **on** (buying) sweets.

2) prefer

- يمكن أن يلي الفعل (**prefer**) الفعل في المصدر مسبقاً (to) :

Ex. I **prefer to wear** that jacket.

- كما يمكن أن يستخدم كما يلي:

prefer + $\frac{\text{V-ing.}}{\text{Noun}}$ + to + $\frac{\text{V-ing.}}{\text{Noun}}$

Ex. I **prefer playing** football **to playing** tennis.

Ex. I **prefer** football **to** tennis.

③ hope

1- hope + مضارع بسيط + فاعل

Ex. We hope she passes the exam.

3- hope + to + inf.

Ex. I hope to get high marks.

- يستخدم الفعل (hope) بمعنى (يأمل) كما يلي:

2- hope + فاعل + will + inf.

Ex. We hope she will pass the exam.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Amr spends too much time computer games.

a. play

b. to play

c. plays

d. playing

2. I prefer TV to going to the cinema.

a. watching

b. watches

c. watch

d. to watching

3. Omar is hoping English at university.

a. studying

b. studies

c. to study

d. will study



Reading

SB Page (2)

استمع إلى النصوص



- ① This clever jacket uses an app⁽¹⁾ to make you warmer when the weather is cold.
- ② When these headphones⁽²⁾ hear another language, they can translate^{*(3)} it into your language.
- ③ Change roads into solar panels⁽⁴⁾! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make electricity⁽⁵⁾ at the same time.
- ④ Is it a motorbike⁽⁶⁾? Is it a helicopter⁽⁷⁾? No, this invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter! It can push you into the air at the speed⁽⁸⁾ of a fast car!



- ١- تطبيق
- ٢- سماعات الرأس
- ٣- يترجم
- ٤- ألواح طاقة شمسية
- ٥- الكهرباء
- ٦- دراجة نارية
- ٧- طائرة مروحية
- ٨- سرعة



Say it correctly

* translate

• ينطق حرف (s) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق صوت /s/ أو /z/ .

Shopping online - Yes or No?

Inji - I love online shopping!



Shopping online ⁽¹⁾ is great! Firstly, it ⁽²⁾ saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more ⁽³⁾ choice online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on the ⁽⁴⁾ road and less ⁽⁵⁾ pollution! I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Baher - I prefer going to real shops in my city.



Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can ⁽⁶⁾ try it first. Also, I don't like to ⁽⁷⁾ waste time waiting for a ⁽⁸⁾ delivery. I want things now! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other ⁽⁹⁾ businesses like cafés will close, too.

- ١- التسوق عبر الانترنت
- ٢- يوفر
- ٣- إختيار
- ٤- طريق
- ٥- تلوث
- ٦- يقيس - يجرب
- ٧- يضيع
- ٨- توصيل
- ٩- أعمال تجارية

- Mother** : Ahmed, your plane will arrive in England at 11 o'clock.
- Ahmed** : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late?
- Mother** : Uncle Sami will wait for you, don't worry!
- Ahmed** : What clothes will I wear if it's cold?
- Mother** : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside!
- Ahmed** : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school?
- Mother** : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
- Ahmed** : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson?
- Mother** : He or she will help you to understand.
- Ahmed** : What will I eat if I don't like the food?
- Mother** : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too!



Audioscript

SB Page (3)

1. Narrator : Hatem

Hatem : Wow! That looks so cool ! I'm not sure it's very useful though . It won't be able to fly very high, will it?

2. Narrator : Manal

Manal : I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling . It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it? It's only listening.

3. Narrator : Tarek

Tarek : I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though! I think they'll make one to make people feel cooler! That would be good here in the summer!

4. Narrator : Sawsan

Sawsan : I think that is an amazing idea . I hope they'll build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

١- رائع

٢- مفيد برغم ذلك

٣- السفر

٤- مفيد

٥- ربما

٦- اختراع

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في
كراسة الواجب المنزلي

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Which do you use most, Facebook or Instagram?

- a. device b. equipment c. app d. set

2. Do you that the weather will get hotter in the future?

- a. predict b. prevent c. prepare d. proud

3. This shop offers free to your home.

- a. app b. delivery c. choice d. pollution

4. Let's our shopping tomorrow.

- a. go b. spends c. makes d. do

5. Do you think we'll a car that makes no pollution?

- a. prediction b. invent c. invention d. invite

6. Do you think that it is easy to from Arabic to English?

- a. translate b. move c. find d. stay

7. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a

- a. lorry b. ship c. rocket d. motorbike

8. _____ are like planes, but they do not have wings! WB 2022
 a. Cars b. Cameras c. Helicopters d. Mobiles
9. Mona always wears _____ on the bus because she loves listening to music. WB 2022
 a. mobiles b. headphones c. dresses d. tablets
10. There's a/an _____ on this phone which tells me the weather in my city. WB 2023
 a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
11. We can use solar _____ to make electricity. 2023
 a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms
12. _____ much time using the mobile phones is bad for health. 2023
 a. Spending b. Saving c. Spelling d. Sewing
13. I don't like to waste time _____ for the delivery. 2023
 a. wait b. waits c. waiting d. to wait
14. "_____" means to change words into a different language. 2023
 a. Wait b. Translate c. Spend d. Waste

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. I want to _____ shopping on foot.
 a. have b. go c. pass d. visit
16. My mother _____ the shopping yesterday.
 a. wore b. made c. went d. did
17. A _____ has two wheels and is always fast.
 a. car b. ship c. motorbike d. boat
18. Don't _____ your time playing games on your mobile.
 a. give b. keep c. waste d. miss
19. He drove his car at a/an _____ of 120 km / h.
 a. speed b. invention c. app d. wing
20. The internet is a useful _____.
 a. invent b. invention c. predict d. prediction
21. Ola always _____ her money on buying dresses.
 a. waits b. has c. makes d. spends
22. A: Do you think scientists can _____ the future?
 B: Of course not.
 a. translate b. translation c. predict d. prediction
23. Don't leave the lights on, it wastes _____.
 a. electricity b. water c. time d. wind



Language

Making predictions

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

التركيب

• نستخدم الصيغة الآتية للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل:

subject (فاعل / اسم / ضمير) → will = 'll سوف
will not = won't سوف لا → Inf. مصدر الفعل

The headphones very useful for travelling.

Ex. The machine won't be able to fly very high.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

one day	الأسبوع - الشهر - العام	القادم
tomorrow	يوماً ما	غداً
soon	في المستقبل	قريباً
perhaps	من المحتمل	ربما
maybe	ربما	ربما
as soon as possible	كما نستخدم الأفعال والتعبيرات الآتية للتعبير عن التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع (will / won't):	
will	يأمل	يتنبأ
won't	يعتقد	يتوقع
	متأكد	

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم will ('ll) / will not (won't) للتنبؤ بالمستقبل بدون دليل

Ex. I will buy a car one day.

Ex. Hossam won't get high marks next exam.

• نستخدم أيضاً للتعبير عن حقائق في المستقبل.

The sun at 5: 30 the morning tomorrow.

Question السؤال

...مصدر الفعل + inf. + فاعل + Will (كلمة استفهام)?

Ex. When will you see your friends? (سؤال بكلمة استفهام)

Ex. Will trains change in the future? (سؤال بهل؟)

- Yes, they will.

- No, they won't.

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother at university next year.

- a. will be b. is c. has d. was

2. He fail. He's really smart.

- a. will b. won't c. isn't d. wasn't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Will you (coming) to tomorrow's party?

2. (Did) the students travel to Luxor next week?

2- (If / When) for future predictions

• نستخدم (If / When) في الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will + inf.

Ex. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئي الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When) :

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الآتي:

...? مضارع بسيط + when / if → Will + فاعل + Inf. (كلمة استفهام)

If / When + فاعل + مضارع بسيط , will + فاعل + Inf....? (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, he buy a mobile?

Ex. Will Mustafa buy a mobile if he gets much money?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أي من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا :

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (Will + inf.) في فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Ramy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. If Ramy will help his dad, they will finish on time. (X) (الجملة خطأ)

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I think it next Friday. الغربية 2024
 a. rains b. is raining c. will rain d. rained
2. The teacher be angry because I didn't do my homework. 2024 WB
 a. will b. is going to c. is able to d. is
3. Adham online for a new phone when he gets home. WB
 a. looked b. looking c. would d. will look
4. If Omar trains hard, he the next match. WB
 a. win b. won c. winning d. will win
5. We out if the weather is fine. البحر 2024
 a. go b. will go c. goes d. went
6. Ola will take this medicine if she sick. WB
 a. feels b. feel c. felt d. was feeling
7. If I to the shops, I will spend a lot of money. WB
 a. go b. went c. goes d. going
8. My son be 8 years old next year. WB
 a. will b. is c. going d. going to
9. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I some new headphones. WB
 a. buy b. bought c. am buying d. will buy
10. What clothes if it's cold? WB
 a. I will wear b. I wear c. I wore d. will I wear
11. When Huda visits Cairo, she some new shoes. WB
 a. would buy b. buying c. will buy d. bought
12. Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he older. WB
 a. is b. was c. be d. are
13. If I everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends. WB
 a. would buy b. buy c. will buy d. bought
14. I think there no illnesses in the future. WB
 a. will be b. be c. won't be d. was
15. If you go to the club this afternoon, you Hossam because he is in Aswan. WB
 a. should see b. won't see c. will see d. don't see

Bit by Bit Exercises

16. My friends and I to Alex soon.
a. is travelling b. travelled c. travels d. will travel
17. Mona her aunt if she has enough free time.
a. will visit b. visited c. would visit d. is visited
18. Kamal will arrive on time if he about the meeting.
a. will know b. knew c. knows d. knowing
19. When mum goes to the mall, she me a jacket.
a. was getting b. got c. getting d. will get
20. They wear heavy clothes if it is hot.
a. will b. should c. won't d. would
21. I will travel abroad when I my exams.
a. will finish b. finishing c. finish d. finishes
22. My father me a new mobile next month.
a. will buy b. would buy c. buys d. bought
23. They a nice time if they go to Al-Azhar Park.
a. had b. will have c. having d. has
24. When Amir to America, he will buy a modern car.
a. travels b. travel c. travelling d. travelled

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I think the exam (is) be easy. الموقفية 2024
2. If Huda (visit) Italy, she will buy new shoes. سبتمبر 2024
3. If you work too much, you (be) tired. الجامعة 2024
4. If Salah has a problem, he (would) ask for his parents' help. المها 2024
5. Hala will be sad if she (got) low marks in the exam. سبتمبر 2024
6. What (I will) eat if I don't like the food? WB
7. What (I do) if I've a problem? دارة أبو حماد - الشارقة 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. What (would) you do when you meet Ali?
9. He will feel tired if he (didn't) sleep well tomorrow.
10. I think I (speak) English well next year.

Speaking

Talking about new inventions

الحدث عن الاختراعات

- نسأل ونحيط عن ما نامله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

ما الاختراع الذي تأمل أن نراه مستقبلاً؟

B: I hope..... will be invented soon. أتمنى أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يتم اختراعه قريباً.

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that..... will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

هل توافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون / سوف لا يكون مفيداً في مصر؟

B: I agree that..... will / won't be useful in Egypt!

أوافق أن (اسم الاختراع) سوف يكون / سوف لا يكون مفيداً في مصر.

Ex. I agree that the jacket will be very useful in Egypt.

Predicting the future

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام will / won't / may / might / can / can't كالاتي:

- If I **hold** my mother at the weekend, she **will have** more free time.

لو أساعد أمي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، سوف يكون لديها وقت فراغ أكثر.

- If I **finish** my homework early, I'll **play** video games.

لو انتهت من واجبي المنزلي مبكراً، سوف أعب ألعاب الفيديو.

- If I **pass** my exams, I'll **be** happy.

لو اجتاز امتحاناتي، سأكون سعيداً.

- If I **find** a snake in my house, I **will be** frightened.

لو أجد ثعباناً في منزلي، سأكون خائفاً.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمارين إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

الاجابة على التمرين 2023

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Rashad and Omar are talking about **types of technology**.

Rashad : Do you know much about technology?

Omar : ①.....

Rashad : What type of technology do you use every day?

Omar : ②.....

Rashad : ③..... ?

Omar : I use the internet to communicate with my friends and play games online.

Rashad : ④..... ?

Omar : Yes, sometimes I've problems online.

Rashad : What should you do if you are worried about somethings online?

Omar : ⑤.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. I like to use my to listen to music on my mobile phone. 2023 الاجابة على التمرين

- a. charger b. headphones c. laptop d. microphones

2. I have a new phone that has a / an to help me do my homework.

إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2023

- a. motorbike b. app c. wing d. headphone

3. My mother always the shopping on Fridays.

- a. does b. goes c. makes d. looks

Exercises on Language

4. There will electric cars in the future.

الاجابة على التمرين 2022

- a. be b. are c. being d. been

5. When Dina home, her aunt will meet her.

- a. come b. comes c. came d. coming

6. I have enough free time, I will go out with my friends.

- a. If b. What c. How d. Do

7. If they play well, they the game.

- a. won b. will win c. wins d. would win

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If they (not work) hard, the manager will punish them.

2. If Huda (went) to Cairo, she will buy some new shoes.

3. He will feel tired if he (didn't) sleep well.

4. I won't play outside if it (rain) tomorrow.

5. She (won't) succeed in the next exam. She's really clever.

6. If Sara (have) much work, she won't watch TV.

④ Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

"Are you for or against online shopping?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What are the benefits of online shopping?
- Why don't some people like online shopping?
- Does online shopping save time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- If more people shop online,
- It saves
- Some people like to try

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6-8 WB pages 72-73

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات في كراسة التسميع

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	horrible	فظيخ / سيء جدًا
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي

Useful Phrases

stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	have flying cars	يملك سيارات طائرة
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	swim in the sea	يسبح في البحر
travel in / through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
live on the moon	يعيش على القمر		



Vocabulary

The Time Machine	آلة الزمن (اسم رواية)	planet	كوكب
Time Traveller	مسافر عبر الزمن	climate change	تغير المناخ
model	نموذج مصغر	funny	مضحك
suddenly	فجأة	share (d)	يشارك / يتشارك
instead	بدلاً من ذلك	drop (ped)	يُسقط
expert	خبير	tidy (ied)	يرتب
strange	غريب	reply (ied) (n)	يرد - رد
space	الفضاء	copy (ied) (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
website	موقع على الإنترنت		

Expressions & Prepositions

sound like	يبدو مثل	ready to use	جاهزة للإستخدام
have a headache	يعانى من صداع	take the road south	يسلك الطريق جنوباً
have a break	ياخذراحة	on the internet	في الإنترنت
make friends	يصادق - يكون صداقات	on social media	على مواقع التواصل
feel tired / worried	يشعر بالتعب / بالقلق	turn... off	يُغلق
pull a lever	يسحب ذراع آلة	good at	جيد في
share a photo	يشارك صورة	for a long time	لمدة طويلة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	worried about	قلق على
a piece of technology	أحد أشكال التكنولوجيا	take ... away	ياخذ... بعيداً
drop rubbish	يلقى القمامة	believe in	يؤمن بـ
start a machine	يشغل آلة	come out	يظهر/ يبرز (الشمس مثلاً)

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
cost	يكلف	cost	cost
hurt	يؤذى - يؤلم	hurt	hurt
build	يبني/ ينشئ	built	built
send	يرسل	sent	sent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Word	Meaning	Opposite
impossible	مستحيل	unlikely / no way
pull	يسحب	grab
disappear	يختفي	hide
turn.. off	يغلق جهاز	switch off
horrible	رهيّب/ فظيخ	terrible
		possible
		push
		appear
		turn.. on
		awesome / amazing
		ممكن
		يدفع «للأمام»
		يظهر
		يشغل جهاز
		رائع/ مذهش



Definitions

social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - websites and apps that allow⁽¹⁾ people to talk to each other on the internet - websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information on the internet using a computer or mobile phone
by mistake عن طريق الخطأ	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - without planning⁽²⁾ or wanting to do something - something you do or say without intending to
horrible فظيع/سوء جدًا	very bad, not nice at all
addicted to مدمن على	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - always needing to do or have something - liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time
pull يسحب	hold something and move it towards you
disappear يختفي	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find
explore يستكشف	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there
Impossible مستحيل	if an action or event ⁽³⁾ is impossible, it cannot happen or be done
lever زراع تشغيل آلة	a handle ⁽⁴⁾ that you push or pull to make a machine work
headache صداع	a pain ⁽⁵⁾ inside your head



Language Notes

① Gerund (V-ing)

- من الممكن أن يستخدم (V-ing) كفاعل للجملة:

Ex. Playing video games is my hobby.

Ex. Travelling has many benefits.

2) stop

• stop + V-ing يتوقف عن شيء كان يفعله

Ex. You should stop **spending** too much.

Ex. When dad arrived, we **stopped** **watching**.

• stop + to + inf. يتوقف لكي يفعل...

Ex. On my way home, I **stopped to** **buy** some bread.

3) take

- يستخدم الفعل (take) بمعنى (يستغرق) كما يلي: take + مدة + to + inf.

Ex. The machine **took** (me) two years **to** build.

- لاحظ أنه يمكن وضع المفعول به بعد الفعل take

4)

• explore يستكشف (مكان/ شيء) لأول مرة

Ex. I'll **explore** the village tomorrow.

• invent يخترع شيء لم يكن موجود

Ex. I hope the flying motorbike will be **invented** soon.

5) allow / let

• allow (ed) + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح

Ex. Social media **allows** people **to** **communicate**.

• let (let - let) + مفعول + inf يسمح

Ex. My dad didn't **let me** go out last night.

• Let's + inf. هيا بنا

Ex. **Let's go** for a walk.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. movies online really wastes my time.

- a. Watch b. Watching c. To watching d. Watches

2. It took Hagar three hours her homework.

- a. finish b. finishes c. finished d. to finish

3. My teacher didn't me to eat in class.

- a. allow b. laugh c. let d. work

4. Graham Bell the telephone in 1876.

- a. found b. explored c. invented d. wasted



Audioscript

SB Page (6)

استمع إلى النصوص



Shady



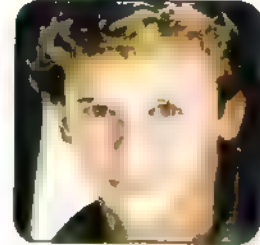
Hala



Randa



Adam



1. Narrator : Shady

Shady : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often hurts lots in the morning, too.

١- يكلف

٢- يامل

٣- قلق

٤- يصبغ

٥- مضحك

٦- يشارك

٧- غريب

2. Narrator : Hala

Hala : I found this great online game but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it **costs** real money! I **hope** my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...

3. Narrator : Randa

Randa : I love social media, I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now I feel **worried** if I don't have my phone or I can't check it. I think it is starting to **become** a problem.

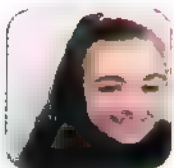
4. Narrator : Adam

Adam : My friends and I like to put **funny** pictures online but when I **share** a photo, everyone says my clothes are not cool or my hair looks **strange**. It makes me feel sad.

SB Page (6)

Narrator : One

Woman : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.



Narrator : Two

Woman : Hala, you need to talk to your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Narrator : Three

Woman : Randa, it is important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.



Narrator : Four

Woman : Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.



Reading

SB P. (7)

My parents say that I spend too much time online, but playing video games is my hobby and I am very good at them! I love playing games with my friends but my parents say they will take my computer away if I don't stop playing on it so much. What should I do?

SB Page (8)

The Time Machine by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895

A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is **possible**⁽¹⁾ to travel through time.

"It's **impossible**!" they **reply**⁽²⁾, "We can only travel through space, not time."

The Time Traveller shows them **a model**⁽³⁾ of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a copy of a machine that I **built**⁽⁴⁾ can go through time. It took me two years to build," he tells them. The friends laugh.

"**Pull**⁽⁶⁾ this **lever**⁽⁷⁾," he tells one of them.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly **disappears**⁽⁸⁾!

"Where is it?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will **leave**⁽⁹⁾ the past and the future!"



- ١- ممكن
- ٢- مستحيل
- ٣- يرد
- ٤- نموذج مصغر
- ٥- يعتقد
- ٦- يسحب
- ٧- زراع آلة
- ٨- يختفي
- ٩- يستكشف



* lever

ينطق الجزء الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة (leave).

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is to go to the sun. خبر داود 2024
 a. possible b. probable c. impossible d. easy
2. Some people don't in time travel. الدفعه 2024
 a. think b. talk c. believe d. say
3. I use my phone too much, I think. I am to it. مدرسي 2024
 a. allergic b. interested c. hungry d. addicted
4. It's important to be careful when you friends with other people. مدرسي 2024
 a. make b. do c. speak d. damage
5. Our friends sent us photos on اداره ابو الامرس - الجبره 2023
 a. social media b. social studies c. social parts d. the radio
6. That new hotel looks I really don't like it. دره دلو 2023 WB
 a. nice b. wonderful c. horrible d. fantastic
7. The tourists took the road south by, but they wanted to go north. WB
 a. correction b. lever c. mistake d. right
8. The best way to the countryside is on foot. سجاد - مدر 2023
 a. invent b. explore c. communicate d. make
9. I can't find my earphones; they suddenly ساحر شوبه 2023
 a. believed b. listened c. appeared d. disappeared
10. My friend drinks too much coffee. He became to it. دره صايم 2023
 a. additional b. addicted c. horrible d. expert
11. If you don't the lesson, you should tell the teacher. WB
 a. swim b. visit c. try d. understand
12. "....." means very bad. داره المدرسي 2023
 a. Awesome b. Amazing c. Horrible d. Interesting
13. Don't touch the, or the machine will start. سجاد 2022
 a. liver b. lever c. river d. diver
14. I need some medicine, please. I've a terrible مدر 2022
 a. class b. mistake c. picnic d. headache

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. It is for us to breathe underwater.
 a. possible b. probable c. usual d. impossible

16. Some divers will the bottom of this sea tomorrow.
 a. explore b. damage c. invent d. make
17. The sun behind a cloud.
 a. made b. bought c. disappeared d. worked
18. I watched an interesting film the internet last week.
 a. of b. on c. out d. to
19. You shouldn't friends with bad people.
 a. do b. take c. make d. hurt
20. When you are to something, you always need to do it.
 a. addicted b. kind c. polite d. rude



Language

(If / When + should / shouldn't) to give advice

• نستخدم (If / When + should / shouldn't) لتقديم النصيحة بمعنى إذا / عندما ينبغي / لا ينبغي أن ...:

If / When

مضارع بسيط

should / shouldn't + inf.

Ex. You **shouldn't** think that you can't buy anything **when** you **play** games online.

Ex. If they **get** good marks, maybe they **should** study harder.

Ex. If it is very rainy, you **shouldn't** go out.



١- إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ (When / If) لابد من وضع (inf) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية.

Ex. If you have a problem you **should** tell your parents.

Ex. You **should** tell your parents if you have a problem.

٢- في حالة الاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

...? مضارع بسيط if / when inf. فاعل Should (كلمة إستفهام)

Ex. What **should** I do if I **don't** find my mobile?

Ex. **Should** we go out if we **have** enough time?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أيًا من جزئي الجملة (أو كلاهما) في حالة النفي:

Ex. If you **don't** finish your books, you **shouldn't** tell your parents.

Ex. If you **don't** feel well, you **shouldn't** go out.

٤- إذا دلت الجملة على الاستمرارية من الممكن أن يأتي بعد (inf) زمن المضارع المستمر

بدلاً من المضارع البسيط:

Ex. If you **are sitting** at the computer for a long time, you **should** have a break.

Exercises on Language

يوجد تمارين إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. If you _____ online, you should remember safety rules. نفاذ 2024
 a. goes b. went c. are going d. go
2. If you are late, you _____ a taxi. السيرة 2024
 a. won't take b. take c. don't take d. should take
3. What _____ if there is a new student at my class? سؤال 2024
 a. should I doing b. should do c. should I do d. I should doing
4. When you go to bed, you _____ turn your phone off. سؤال 2024 SB
 a. won't b. will c. should d. have
5. You should tell a parent or teacher if you _____ worried about something. SB
 a. felt b. will feel c. are felt d. feel
6. If she has a headache, she _____ see a doctor. سؤال 2024
 a. have b. should c. is d. was
7. You _____ swim in the sea if it is very cold. سؤال 2023
 a. have to b. had to c. should d. shouldn't
8. When you _____ tired, you should have a break. سؤال 2023
 a. are b. be c. were d. will be
9. If you are in the library, you _____ make noise. سؤال 2023
 a. shouldn't b. should c. must d. can
10. If you want to be healthy, you _____ healthy food. سؤال 2023
 a. ate b. should eat c. eating d. would eat

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. Where should I go if I _____ to buy a new car?
 a. was wanting b. wants c. want d. wanting
12. You shouldn't stay up late if you _____ to get up early.
 a. needing b. needed c. needs d. need
13. What _____ I do if I need to make friends online?
 a. am b. not c. should d. was
14. If you need to stay healthy, you _____ go to the gym.
 a. not b. should c. shouldn't d. have
15. I should read books if I _____ free time.
 a. had b. has c. will have d. have

16. If you meet Mr Hamdy, you tell him about the accident.

a. shouldn't

b. are

c. not

d. aren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. If you don't know someone, you (not make) friends with them online. قبا 2024

2. If you are in a library, you (should) make noise. 2011

3. If you have free time, you (should) waste it. 2024

4. Dina should visit her aunt if she (go) to Alexandria. 2024

5. If someone (help) you, you should thank him. 2024

6. If she is ill, she should (sees) a doctor. 2024

7. If we want to stop climate change, we should (stopped) cutting down trees. WB

8. If you (didn't) do your homework, you should apologise to your teacher. دارد الزاوية الحمراء 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. When you have much homework, you (shouldn't) finish it first.

10. You should (is) careful when you use the internet.

Speaking

Talking about technology

تحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التي نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?

ما هي أنواع التكنولوجيا التي تستخدمها كل يوم؟

B: I think I am addicted to.....

أعتقد أنني مدمن للاستخدام.....

A: What do you use them for?

فيما تستخدمهم؟

B: I spend hours watching / playing.....

أقضي ساعات أشاهد / ألعب.....

A: Do you have any problems with technology?

هل تعاني من مشكلات مع استخدام التكنولوجيا؟

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!

أعتقد أنني مدمن لهاتفى!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

أنفقت كثيراً من المال فى لعبة على الإنترنت عن طريق الخطأ.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



2024

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Anas and Nour are talking about mobile phones.

Anas : Did you know that Ali bought a new mobile?

Nour : ① He phoned me last night.

Anas : What do you think of mobile phones?

Nour : ② What about you?

Anas : I think they are the most important inventions.

Nour : ③?

Anas : Because they save time and effort.

Nour : ④?

Anas : They can cause eye and ear problems if you use them for a long time.

Nour : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Most young people are to mobile phones.

2023

- a. addicted b. interested c. worried d. amazed

2. My head hurts, I have a

- a. backache b. headache c. stomachache d. toothache

3. If you do something without intending to do it, it's means you do it by

- a. advice b. addiction c. mistake d. night

4. I can't find my watch. It

2023

- a. hurt b. disappeared c. sent d. found

Exercises on Language

5. If it rains, you take your umbrella.

2022

- a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. need

6. You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head

SB

- a. will hurt b. hurting c. hurts d. would hurt

7. If you someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online. **SB**
 a. didn't know b. don't know c. not know d. won't know
8. If you see people being horrible online, you tell your parents. **SB**
 a. should b. won't c. are d. shouldn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When you (had) much money, you should travel abroad.
2. What (would) you do when you meet the manager?
3. You should visit your grandparents when you ... (had) enough time.
4. You (should) chat to people you don't know. **SB**

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

"How do you think life will change in the future?" (مخاطب عندهم آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think will happen in the future?
- Do you think we will travel in time?
- Do you think we will live on the moon?
- Do you think we will have flying cars?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- In the future, I think
- I think we will travel
- I don't think we'll live
- I think we'll have

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9- 11 WB pages 74-76

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

enough
outside

كافي | video games
بالخارج | order (ed)

ألعاب الفيديو
يطلب / يأمر

Useful Phrases

watch videos online

يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت

check social media

بتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

get enough sleep يحصل على قدر نوم كافي

spend (time) on screens

يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات

have eye problems يعاني من مشاكل في البصر

spend hours playing يقضي ساعات في اللعب

damage your hearing

يسبب ضررًا لحاسة السمع



Vocabulary

debate

مناظرة / جدال

exercise

تمارين رياضية

screen

شاشة

view

رأي / وجهة نظر

faithfully / sincerely

بإخلاص

dangers

مخاطر

robot

إنسان آلي

clear

واضح

ear problems

مشاكل سمعية

surname

لقب (اسم العائلة)

though

بالرغم من ذلك

idea

فكرة

wheel

عجلة

transport

النقل

regards

تحيات

damage (d)

يتلف

improve (d)

يُحسّن

text (ed)

يرسل رسالة نصية

wish (ed) (n.)

يتمنى / أمنية

Expressions & Idioms

give ... headaches

تسبب صداع...

get a headache

يصاب بصداع

order ... on a website

يطلب... من على موقع

go online

يدخل على الإنترنت

do exercise

يؤدي تمارين رياضية

stay healthy

يبقى بصحة جيدة

once an hour

مرة في الساعة

go on wheels

يسير على عجلات

go on holiday

يذهب لقضاء إجازة

bad for

ضار بـ

Unit 7

Technology and the future

stop ... sleeping	يمنع ... من النوم	late into the night	في وقت متأخر ليلاً
the reason why	السبب الذي من أجله	In my view / opinion	في رأيي
children aged 6	اطفال أعمارهم 6 سنوات	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري
look forward to + V-ing. / n	يتطلع إلى		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
ride	يركب (دراجة... الخ)	rode	ridden

Meaning

Opposite

outside	بالخارج	outdoors	inside / indoors	بالداخل
online	عبر الإنترنت	on the internet	offline	بدون الإنترنت
positive	إيجابي	useful	negative	سلبي
clear	واضح	obvious	unclear	غير واضح



Definitions

order

يطلب

ask someone to make, supply, or deliver⁽²⁾ food or an object

١- يمد
٢- يوصل

Language Notes

① enough

- تستخدم (enough) بمعنى (كافي / بدرجة كافية) كما يلي:

enough + to + inf. + صفة / حال

Ex. Sami was clever enough to get high marks.

Ex. He is tall enough to reach the shelf.

- من الممكن أن يلي (enough) اسم:

Ex. We don't have enough money to buy a car.

2) all

- تستخدم (all) بمعنى (كل ...) كما يلي:

1- all + اسم يُعد جمع + فعل لفاعل جمع

Ex. All my friends are coming to the party.

2- all + اسم مفرد لا يعد + فعل لفاعل مفرد

Ex. All Ali's money is at home.

3) Email Writing

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ / لتنتهي رسالة بريد الكتروني (في حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	Kind Regards	أطيب التحيات
Yours sincerely (if you know the person)	محدثك بإخلاص	Best Wishes	أطيب التمنيات

- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات الآتية بعد (Dear):

Mr.	السيد للإشارة لرجل بشكل مهذب
Mrs.	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة متزوجة بشكل مهذب (ويوضع بعدها اسم الزوج)
Ms	السيدة: للإشارة لسيدة بشكل مهذب (دون تحديد ما إذا كانت متزوجة أم لا) وينطق حرف (s) كبطق (z).

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية لتبدأ / لتنتهي بريد الكتروني (في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه):

Dear Sir / Madam	عزيزي السيد / السيدة	Yours faithfully = (if you don't know the person)	محدثك بإخلاص
------------------	----------------------	---	--------------

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This street is wide to drive down it.

a. enough b. too c. much d. many

2. All the milk in the fridge fresh.

a. have b. are c. is d. does



Reading

SB P. (9)

استمع إلى النصوص



The dangers of technology

Sleep

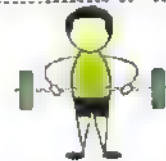
: Many people , check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep⁽²⁾.

١- يرسل رسالة نصية
٢- نوم كافي

Eye problems : If you spend a lot of time on **computers**, you can have **eye problems**⁽⁴⁾ and **headaches**⁽⁵⁾.

Ear problems : Listening to loud music or films **through**⁽⁶⁾ headphones can **damage**⁽⁷⁾ your **hearing**⁽⁸⁾.

Exercises : Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time **exercising** doing exercise.



- ٣- الشاشات
- ٤- مشاكل في العين
- ٥- صداع
- ٦- عبر
- ٧- يتلف
- ٨- السمع
- ٩- بالخارج

SB Page (10)



New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I **ordered** a new mobile phone last week and the **delivery**⁽¹⁾ was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I would like to **exchange** the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this?

Yours faithfully⁽²⁾,

Lama Sabri

- ١- طلبت
- ٢- لتوصيل
- ٣- يعبر
- ٤- المخلص بك



WB Page (75)



New Message

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your **website**⁽¹⁾. The delivery was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children **ages**⁽²⁾ 6-9. It didn't say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the **correct age**⁽³⁾. Can you tell me how I can do this?

I **look forward to**⁽⁵⁾ hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Haytham Shabana

- ١- موقع على الإنترنت
- ٢- بالغ من العمر
- ٣- بالخطأ
- ٤- العمر المناسب
- ٥- يتطلع إلى



New Message

Hi Fatma,

The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it!

See you soon,

love Maya



Audio script

Hanan : Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama?

Lama : From my point of view⁽¹⁾, not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.

١- من وجهة نظري

٢- مشكلة

Hanan : I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem⁽²⁾.

٣- بالرغم من ذلك

٤- في رأيي

٥- يعلم

Lama : It's not a good idea to play games late at night though⁽³⁾.

Hanan : I agree. In my opinion⁽⁴⁾, playing games late at night stops you sleeping.

Lama : Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.

Hanan : If you only play games that teach⁽⁵⁾ you things in the evening, it should be fine.

Video script

Narrator:

What do you use when you want to find out the time? Do you use a watch⁽¹⁾... or do you use a clock⁽²⁾?

١- ساعة يد

٢- ساعة حائط

٣- عقارب الساعة

٤- دقائق

٥- ثواني

٦- ساعات شمسية

٧- عالم

٨- مدينة دمشق

These clocks either use numbers to tell the time... or they use hands⁽³⁾. These hands show hours, minutes and seconds⁽⁴⁾.

But how did people know the time in the past? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials⁽⁵⁾. Sundials use the position of the sun to tell the time.

Then, in the year 1524, a scientist⁽⁶⁾ from Persia⁽⁷⁾ called Taqi al-Din invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time! And some have apps, such as **Fitbit** that will give you **directions**⁽¹⁰⁾ if you are lost.

What will the watches of the future be like? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special video screen. And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.

٩- خرائط
١٠- اتجاهات

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- I used to exercise every morning when I was young.
a. make b. get c. do d. give
- Using the computer for long can you a headache.
a. make b. do c. give d. miss
- Many young people spend much time their social media.
a. looking b. playing c. checking d. wasting
- Social media is very useful, but it has too.
a. information b. ways c. dangers d. hobbies
- I look forward to from my friend.
a. hear b. hearing c. hears d. heard
- my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches. **SB**
a. From b. In c. By d. On
- Technology can be bad your health. **SB**
a. at b. to c. for d. about
- my opinion, eating too much food is bad for our health.
a. With b. On c. At d. In
- Our school held a/an which is called "Technology and pollution".
a. debate b. interview c. conversation d. article

Bit by Bit Exercises

- When I got up, it was still dark
a. countryside b. side c. abroad d. outside
- The room was large for all the students.
a. too b. so c. enough d. such

12. I _____ a jacket online and the delivery was yesterday.
 a. ordered b. wore c. tried d. gave
13. It's my habit to _____ social media to get the latest news.
 a. choose b. damage c. break d. check
14. A bike has two _____.
 a. wheels b. engines c. machines d. tools
15. This video game is useful for children _____ nine.
 a. age b. ages c. ageing d. aged
16. Salah spends a lot of time watching videos _____.
 a. online b. lines c. outline d. line
17. You should _____ enough sleep. You look really tired.
 a. check b. get c. spend d. watch

Speaking

1) Giving positive opinions

إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

-is a good idea.
 هي / هو فكرة جيدة.

Ex. Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea

- If you use ... well, it should help you + inf.

لو تستخدم ... جيدًا، ينبغي أن يساعدك أن

Ex. If you use technology well, it can help you become healthier.

- If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine.

لو لم تصبح مدمنًا على، سوف تكون بخير.

Ex. If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine.

2) Giving negative opinions

إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء يمكن أن تستخدم:

- It isn't a good idea to + inf.
 ليست فكرة جيدة أن

Ex. It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV.

- From my point of view,can + inf.
 من وجهة نظري يمكنه أن

Ex. From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

- In my opinion,is / can be bad for ...
 في رأيي، (يمكن أن يكون) ضار ب....

Ex. In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.

Grammar Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak and Shimaa are talking about technology.

Malak : What are you reading about, Shimaa?

Shimaa : ①

Malak : Are you interested in technology?

Shimaa : ②

Malak : ③?

Shimaa : I think the mobile phone is the most important.

Malak : For me, the internet is the most important.

Shimaa : ④?

Malak : Because it helps us do research and get a lot of information.

Shimaa : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mahmoud can have eye problems because he a lot of time on screens.

- a. spends b. checks c. hears d. listens

2. **A:** Why do the children spend a lot of time ?

B: They are playing basketball.

- a. seaside b. countryside c. side d. outside

3. I'd like to change this broken mobile phone a new one.

- a. in b. of c. for d. off

4. When I work on my computer for a long time, I a headache.

- a. make b. give c. take d. get

5. We didn't know the reason the manager was angry yesterday.

- a. for b. why c. what d. which

Review

Key Vocabulary

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائمًا)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	app(application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	horrible	فظيع / سيء جدًا
addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي
enough	كافي	order (ed)	يطلب / يأمر
outside	بالخارج		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	ينفق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يُخّذ المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول العاكهة	have flying cars	يملك سيارات طائرة
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
travel through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر
watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت	spend (time) on screens	يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر نوم كافي	spend hours playing	يقضي ساعات في اللعب

Verbs & Nouns

correct (ed)
invent (ed)
predict (ed)
translate (d)

يصحح - يصوب
يخترع
يتنبأ
يترجم

correction
invention
prediction
translation

تصحيح - تصويب
إختراع
تنبؤ
ترجمة



Language

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالآتي :

• نستخدم (will / won't) للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل كالآتي:

subject
فاعل (اسم / ضمير)

will = 'll
will not = won't

سوف
سوف لا

inf.
مصدر الفعل

Ex. Technology will help us in the future.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

next (week - month - year)
one day
tomorrow
in the future
soon

• نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل:

(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم
يوماً ما
غداً
في المستقبل
قريباً

Question السؤال

...مصدر الفعل inf. + فاعل + Will (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Will our life change in the future?

Yes, it will. / No, it won't.

2- (If / When) for future predictions and giving advice

• نستخدم عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي:

If / When

مضارع بسيط

will + inf.

Ex. If I find a good jacket online, I will buy it.

• يستخدم الأسلوب التالي لتقديم النصيحة:

If / When

مضارع بسيط

should / shouldn't + inf.

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell me about it.

Speaking

1) Talking about new inventions

الحديث عن الاختراعات الحديثة

- نسال ونجيب عن ما نأمله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

B: I hope..... will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that..... will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

B: I agree that will / won't be useful in Egypt!

2) Talking about technology

التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التي نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?

B: I think I am addicted to.....

A: What do you use them for?

B: I spend hours watching / playing.....

A: Do you have any problems with technology?

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

3) Giving positive opinions

إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

-is a good idea..
- If you use ... well, it should help you + inf
- If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine..

4) Giving negative opinions

إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

- It isn't a good idea to + inf.
- From my point of view,can + inf.
- In my opinion,..... is / can be bad for.....

General Exercises on Unit 7

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed is talking to Adham about a mobile.

Ahmed : Is it your new mobile?

Adham : ①

Ahmed : When did you buy it?

Adham : ②

Ahmed : ③

Adham : To study my lessons on it.

Ahmed : ④

Adham : Yes, it has a lot of games.

Ahmed : How much does it cost?

Adham : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

- My little sister is to sweets. She always wants to eat them! WB
 a. damaged b. addicted c. broken d. hated
- People need to run machines.
 a. electricity b. flash c. light d. air
- Can you the English passage into Arabic? WB
 a. translate b. transport c. invite d. reduce
- We are really hungry. We are waiting for the
 a. trip b. bus c. picnic d. delivery
- Do you think that there will be many in your English homework? WB
 a. correct b. corrections c. invent d. inventions
- The door was very heavy, so we had to it open. WB
 a. call b. pull c. lock d. look
- When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to its large gardens. WB
 a. invent b. explore c. expect d. export
- The mobile is the greatest قالبونية - طوخ 2022
 a. invitation b. discovery c. invention d. translation

9. media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online.

WB

- a. Social b. Careful c. Electric d. Expensive

Exercises on Language

10. If you want to get to the park quickly, you the bus.

WB

- a. would take b. take c. should take d. took

11. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you see Ali because he is in Luxor.

WB

- a. should b. will c. won't d. don't

12. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it very windy.

WB

- a. is b. will be c. was d. should be

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- I look forward to (see) you soon.
- You (be) fit if you do some exercise.
- If you (watched) TV for a long time, your eyes will hurt.
- I (punish) Sameh when I meet him tomorrow.
- Hala will feel happy when she (visit) her grandparents.
- The world (be) different in the future.

إدارة بلي سويف 2023

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery

- Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.
- Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you write this email?
- When was the delivery?
- What did you order?
- What was the problem?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm writing to tell you about
- I ordered
- The delivery was
- I'm still waiting for



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. It's important not to become addicted to
 a. speed b. video games c. technology d. social media
2. Try taking a every day for an hour or more.
 a. break b. headache c. game d. time

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Eman and Wafaa are talking about technology.

Wafaa : What are you reading, Eman?

Eman : ①

Wafaa : Are you interested in technology?

Eman : ②

Wafaa : ③ ?

Eman : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Wafaa : You are right, I agree with you.

C Multiple Choice

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The can fly without wings.
 a. bike b. helicopter c. taxi d. car
2. Arabic is the national in Egypt.
 a. language b. meal c. flag d. team
3. After hard work, one should a break to rest.
 a. go b. do c. make d. have
4. He has a headache, so he should some medicine.
 a. took b. takes c. take d. taking
5. You make noise if your father is reading.
 a. will b. must c. should d. shouldn't

Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In some countries, people first had televisions about 90 years ago. Before 1935, the picture on a TV screen was smaller than a post card. Most TV programmes were in black and white. In 1940s, TV companies in the USA began to make colour programmes. However, colour TVs were very expensive, so most people who had televisions watched in black and white. Although Egypt had TVs in the 1960s, the country made its first colour TV programme in 1973. Also, the first remote controls were made in 1948.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did people first have televisions?
2. Why didn't most people in the past use colour TVs?
3. How big was the picture on a TV screen before 1935?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egypt made its first colour TV in
a. 1935 b. 1973 c. 1960 d. 1940
5. Colour TV programmes were those ones in black and white.
a. during b. before c. after d. at the same time

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. He feel warmer when he wears that jacket. (.....)
2. How did technology help us to travel in the future? (.....)
3. If you feel tired, you shouldn't go to bed. (.....)
4. If you needs to be fit, you should do exercise. (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"Life in the future"

(يمكنكم من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية)

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- What do you think life will be like in the future?
 - What will people be more addicted to?
 - What will modern devices help people to do?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Life in the future will be
 - People will be more addicted to
 - Modern devices will help people to

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- Are you for or against online shopping?

Shopping online is great! Firstly, it saves time. Most people don't want to spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy the things they want in a few minutes. Secondly, they have more choices online. Also, if more people shop online, there will be fewer cars on roads and less pollution! However, some people don't like online shopping. They like to try the things they are buying first. Also, they don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

What will happen in the future? This is a question most of us ask. For me, I think travelling in time will be impossible. I don't think we will live on the moon. It's impossible. I think we'll have flying cars. I hope we will have no illnesses. I think scientists will explore the bottom of the sea. They may discover new animals and new kinds of fish. I think life in the future is still a secret.

3- Life in the future (Azhar)

Technology changes the world. People will use social media more than they do today. They will be able to travel in time by using time machines. They will have flying cars. They will live on the moon.

4- Positive and negative sides of using technology

Using technology has become very important in our life. Most of our daily activities need technology. Using technology is sometimes positive. It saves effort and time. The negative side of using technology is that it sometimes wastes our money and time. Playing computer games is an example of that. But should schools use computer games in the classroom? I think it'll be positive if that is related to teaching children. They will be more interested and excited, but this should be controlled well.

- A problem you had with an online delivery

From : mariam08@hotmail.com.

To : fatma77@gmail.com.

Subject : A problem with an online delivery

Dear Fatma,

I am writing to tell you about a problem I had with an online delivery. You know I like online shopping. It saves me time. I ordered a new laptop three weeks ago. The delivery was yesterday but I am still waiting. I need to get it as soon as possible. I emailed the seller and he/she replied that he/she would send it as soon as possible. Yours faithfully,
Mariam



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Online shopping is!
 - a. bad
 - b. light
 - c. great
 - d. heavy
2. Online shopping saves the speaker's
 - a. time
 - b. money
 - c. water
 - d. gas
3. The speaker doesn't want to spend lots of time to the shops.
 - a. walking
 - b. running
 - c. travelling
 - d. flying
4. The speaker can stay at and buy the things he/she wants in a few minutes.
 - a. farm
 - b. zoo
 - c. school
 - d. home

B Language Functions

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A presenter is talking to Mustafa about technology.

Presenter : What do you think of technology?

Mustafa : 1

Presenter : 2 ?

Mustafa : Because people can spend much time on online games!

Presenter : 3 ?

Mustafa : Yes, I do. I like playing games with my friends.

Presenter : Do you like online shopping?

Mustafa : 4

Presenter : What else do people do on the internet?

Mustafa : 5

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

James and Tom are scientists from England. They came to Egypt by plane. They stayed at the Sheraton in Cairo for four days. In Cairo, they went to Cairo University to

meet some scientists. The two scientists talked about their new invention. It was about changing roads into solar panels! This invention used strong glass that people could drive on and make electricity at the same time. The scientists at Cairo University liked the idea very much. They thought it was great.

James and Tom visited the Egyptian Museum, the Cairo Tower and the Pyramids. They also went shopping at Khan Al-Khalill. They bought some nice presents for their friends. Then, they went to Luxor and Aswan where they spent three days.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- James and Tom are from
 a. Egypt b. England c. the USA d. Turkey
- The invention would help people get
 a. air b. food c. water d. energy

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

- What was James and Tom's invention about?

- What do you think of the invention?

- How long did James and Tom spend in Cairo?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I asked my aunt to a French internet article into Arabic.
 a. build b. check c. translate d. damage
- My sister is to her phone. She always wants to use it.
 a. horrible b. addicted c. happy d. proud
- I lost my yesterday, so I couldn't listen to my favourite songs.

دائرة سرق شبرا الخيمة 2023

- a. drones b. headphones c. jacket d. app
- Do you that the weather will get hotter in the future?
 a. predict b. prediction c. invent d. invention
- It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon when the sun came out.

- a. appeared b. disappeared c. hurt d. damaged

6. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't a new lesson.

WB

- a. stay b. visit c. understand d. try

7. If I help my sister with her homework. She'll it quickly.

- a. finishing b. finishes c. finished d. finish

8. If Mai too much, she will put on weight.

بنها 2023

- a. eats b. eat c. eating d. ate

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If she exercises more, she (be) fit.

ابفاهرة 2023

2. If you (didn't) leave now, you will be late for school.

للف 2023

3. This machine won't (being) able to fly very high.

SB

4. If you (not do) sleep early, you won't get up early.

5. When you (played) online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"Positive and negative sides of using technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do you think of technology?
- What positive and negative sides of technology are?
- Do you think schools should use computer games in the classroom?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Technology is
- The positive / negative sides of technology are



**New
Hello!**



You are what you eat

Objectives

Reading:

Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island

Writing:

An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep

Listening:

A discussion about favourite snacks;

a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health

Speaking:

Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy

Language:

a lot, a little and a few

Life Skills:

Self-management

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	allergic to	لديه حساسية من
snack	وجبة خفيفة	energy	طاقة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة		

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروچاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	كيك السفنج (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونات	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاتة
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food Adjectives

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل) / حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب



Vocabulary

thirsty	عطشان	practice	تدريب
however	بالرغم من ذلك	teenager	مراهق (شخص عمره من ١٣ إلى ١٩ سنة)
type = kind	نوع	plate	طبق
netball	لعبة كرة الشبكة	power	قوة / طاقة
careful	حريص	fat	دهن
washing up	غسيل الأطباق	oven	فرن
squash	لعبة الإسكواش	describe (d)	يصف
left (adj)	متبقى	invite (d)	يدعو (لمناسبة)
athletics team	فريق ألعاب القوى	taste (d) (n)	يتذوق - مذاق

Expressions & Prepositions

go running	يمارس رياضة الجري	(be) on a team	يكون عضو في فريق
get home	يصل المنزل	food with a good taste	طعام ذو مذاق جيد
get ill	يمرض	eat with	يتناول ... مع
give energy	يعطي طاقة	eat ... for breakfast	يتناول ... على الإفطار
do the washing up	يغسل الأطباق	thanks for	شكراً على
have a rest	يستريح	invite ... to ...	يدعو ... على ...
make falafel	يطهو فلافل (طعمية)	on the way home	في الطريق للمنزل

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

جميع الأفعال غير المنتظمة مجمعة في آخر الكتاب

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

put	يضع	put	put
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
eat	ياكل	ate	eaten

Word

Meaning

Opposite

lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky	غير محظوظ
popular	شائع - محبوب	famous / known	unpopular	غير محبوب
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	terrible	سئ



Words & Meanings

قم بالتدريب في ملحق الكتاب

allergic	لديه حساسية	- having a condition ⁽¹⁾ that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	١- حالة ٢- قوة / طاقة
energy	طاقة	- something that gives you the power ⁽²⁾ to do things - the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired	
fast food	وجبات سريعة	- food that is quick and easy to buy or cook - food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaurant because it is already prepared	
juicy	كثير العصارة	full of juice	

salty	مالح tasting of salt or containing a lot of salt	٣- محتويًا على
spicy	متبل / حار containing the tastes from spices	
snacks	a small amount of food after meals.	



Language Notes

1) However

يمكن أن تستخدم (However) للربط بين فكرتين / جملتين متناقضتين :

Ex. Omar is short. However, he is good at basketball.

2) so / because

تستخدم (so) للربط بين جملتين لتوضيح
نتيجة حدث معين كما يلي:

السبب → so → النتيجة

Ex. I don't like nuts, so I won't eat that cake.

تستخدم (because) للربط بين جملتين
لتوضيح سبب حدث معين كما يلي:

السبب → because → النتيجة

Ex. Nada was sad because she failed her exam.

3) Verbs + مفعول + to + Inf.

بعض الأفعال مثل (ask - advise - tell) يمكن أن يتبعها مفعول ثم (to + inf.)

Ex. Ahmed asked me to describe my favourite snack.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- He was really ill. _____, he went to school.
a. So b. As c. Because d. However
- He put on weight, _____ he decided to join a sports centre.
a. so b. because c. to d. for
- Magid felt happy _____ he passed his exams with high marks.
a. so b. because c. to d. at
- My father advised me _____ hard.
a. study b. studying c. to study d. studied



Audioscript

SB Page (13)

استمع إلى النصوص



Speaker 1: 'Sfenj' is a kind of cake from Morocco. It has lots of sugar and fat in it and is very unhealthy, so it is not very healthy, but I love it! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a **snack**⁽⁵⁾ with some tea or a cup of coffee.

Speaker 2: In many places, people use fava beans to make falafel. They are the best! Falafel is really **delicious**⁽⁶⁾ and it is very **popular**⁽⁷⁾ in Egypt.

Speaker 3: In **Britain**⁽⁸⁾, we often buy chips from a **fish and chip shop**. People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.

Speaker 4: You can buy **samosas** on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have **vegetables** inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.

Speaker 5: 'Rojak' is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in Malaysia and people also make it at home. Rojak is very sweet and **delicious**. People use different spices in different parts of the country, but it's always delicious.

١- السفنج (فطائر)

مغربية

٢- دولة المغرب

٣- دهن

٤- حلوى الطعام

٥- وجبة خفيفة

٦- فول أخضر

٧- لذيذ

٨- محبوب / شائع

٩- بريطانيا

١٠- محل سمك

ومقرمشات

١١- السمبوسة (وجبة

هندية)

١٢- دولة الهند

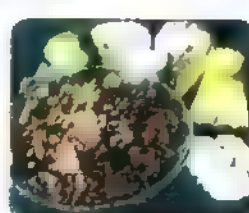
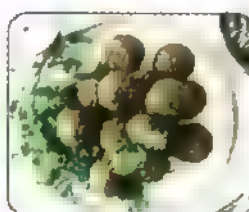
١٣- متبل / حار

١٤- الروجاك (طبق من

ماليزيا)

١٥- دولة ماليزيا

١٦- كثير العصارة



SB Page (15)

Grandmother : Would you like some more **chicken**^١ , Amal?

Amal : Yes, please, just a little.

Grandmother : And would you like some more **beans**, too?

Amal : Yes, thank you, grandmother ... stop, that's **enough**^(٢)! I mustn't eat too much.

Huda : Do you like chicken, Amal?

Amal : Yes, I love grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best!

Huda : Thank you, grandmother, that was a delicious **dinner**^٣!

Grandmother : Would you girls like some more **rice pudding** ?

Huda : No, thank you, I'm really **full**^(٤).

Grandmother : What about you, Amal?

Amal : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you have a **rest** now, grandmother? Huda and I can take the **plates**^٥ to the kitchen and we'll do the **washing up**^(٦).

١- لحم الدجاج

٢- كاف

٣- عشاء

٤- أرز باللبن

٥- ممتلئ (شبعان)

٦- راحة

٧- أطباق

٨- غسيل الأطباق

WB Page (78)

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila?

Leila : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.

Grandma : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?

Leila : Thank you, I like tea.

Grandma : Do you like sugar in your tea?

Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.

Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake!



Reading

SB page (14)

What I eat

My name's Imad. I am **allergic to**^١ 'nuts', so I must be **careful**^(٢) what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will get ill! For most of the time, this is not a problem. **However**^٣, I like sweet things, and there are a few **types**^٤ of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those.

I'm **lucky**^(٥) because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy!



١- لديه حساسية من

٢- مكسرات

٣- حريص

٤- بالترغم من ذلك

٥- أنواع

٦- محظوظ



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school **athletics team** and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me **energy**⁽⁸⁾. I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

After athletics **practice**⁽⁹⁾, my friends and I sometimes get some **fast food**⁽¹⁰⁾, like pizzas, on the way home, but I try not to eat too much!

- ٧- فريق ألعاب القوى
- ٨- طاقة
- ٩- تدريب
- ١٠- وجبات سريعة

WB Page (77)



New Message

Hi Tom,

How are you? Thanks for your **last email**. You asked me to **describe** my favourite snack. I love **hummus** and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice **beans**. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the **oven**. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks?

Describe them to me in your **next**⁽⁶⁾ email!

Best wishes,

Osama



- ١- يصف
- ٢- دواوشى
- ٣- خبز
- ٤- فرن
- ٥- قادم



WB Page (78)

Judy plays **netball** every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a **game**, she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she's playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very good for her.

- ١- لعبة الاسكواش
- ٢- لعبة كرة الشبكة

Exercises on Vocabulary

يوجد تمرينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. He doesn't enjoy eating foods. سبوتاج 2024
 a. nice b. delicious c. tasty d. spicy
2. Children like to eat between meals. كفر داود 2024
 a. snakes b. snails c. sticks d. snacks
3. means very nice to eat. المصوفية 2023
 a. Sour b. Dirty c. Delicious d. Polluted
4. I am to fish. When I eat it, it makes me ill. مختلطة 2023
 a. addiction b. popular c. allergic d. ready
5. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very SB
 a. high b. sweet c. salty d. short
6. The water in the sea is SB
 a. sweet b. spicy c. juicy d. salty
7. is an example of fast food. WB
 a. Cheese b. Pasta c. Pizza d. Cake
8. I'm to nuts, I must care about what I eat. الدرج 2024
 a. kind b. polite c. allergic d. hungry
9. Falafel is really and it is very popular in Egypt. سنة 2023 SB
 a. horrible b. terrible c. bad d. delicious
10. Many people are allergic to, so they don't eat cakes. WB
 a. pizzas b. nuts c. salad d. salt
11. I like eating fruits like watermelons and oranges. الدرج 2024
 a. spicy b. salty c. tasteless d. juicy
12. A is a small amount of food eaten between meals. سنة 2023
 a. snail b. snack c. snake d. smoke
13. Samosas have vegetables inside them. الدرج 2024
 a. plastic b. terrible c. spicy d. spring

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. I met three of my friends my way home.
 a. at b. from c. of d. on
15. Carrots and potatoes are
 a. fruit b. nuts c. vegetables d. meat

16. That piece of meat is really I can't eat it.
 a. delicious b. salty c. popular d. fast
17. food is prepared quickly and is usually unhealthy.
 a. Helpful b. Fast c. Slow d. Famous
18. I always eat fish with pasta because this gives me
 a. sugar b. snow c. sweet d. energy
19. You should put the bread in a hot for 5 minutes.
 a. oven b. fridge c. screen d. laptop
20. Habiba likes foods, so she adds much pepper to her food.
 a. sweet b. spicy c. sugar d. full



Language

A- Remember: Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns أسماء تعدد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

- نستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

pen - a door - a unit

- نستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.

umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

- جمع منتظم بإضافة (s):

a pen pen / a book books

- أسماء تنتهي ب (y) يضاف لها (ies):

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus buses

a box boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

- أسماء تنتهي ب (s) يسبقها حرف ساكن فتحذف ال (s)

ويضاف (ies):

a city cities / a lady ladies

- أسماء تنتهي ب (ss) تحذف ويضاف (ives):

a wolf → wolves / a knife → knives

- أسماء ذات جمع غير منتظم فتحفظ:

a tooth → teeth / a man → men

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعدد

- تأتي دائمًا مفردة ولا يسبقها (a / an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

من أمثلة الأسماء التي لا تعدد:

١- المشروبات وبعض الأطعمة:

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

٢- المواد الدراسية - المواد الخام - الأسماء المعنوية:

English - rubber - love

٣- أسماء أخرى:

information - news - rain - air - advice

- يمكن أن نستخدم أفعال التجزئة لتحويل الاسم الذي لا يعد إلى اسم يعد:

a piece of قطعة من

a glass of كوب من

a bottle of زجاجة من

Ex. This piece of information is useful.

Ex. These pieces of information are useful.

١- نستخدم (كثير much) مع الاسماء التي لا تعد بينما نستخدم (كثير many) مع الاسماء التي تعد (الجمع):

Ex. We have got much sugar.

Ex. They have got many books.

٢- تذكر اشهر اسماء الطعام التي لا تعد/لا تعد:

Countable nouns		Uncountable nouns	
chips رقائق بطاطس	loaves أرغفة	sugar سكر	water مياه
beans فول	grapes حبات عنب	salt ملح	butter زبد
spices توابل	lentils عدس	tea شاي	kushari كشرى
nuts مكسرات	apples تفاح	pasta مكرونة	bread خبز

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The books over there mine.

a. is b. has c. have d. are

2. The water of the Nile important for Egypt.

a. does b. has c. is d. are

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The information dad gave me (were) important.

2. Three men (is) sitting in the room now.

B- some & any

1- some بعض

• نستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I met some boys on my way home.

People often put some ketchup on their chips.

• نستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some apples / rice?

Ex. Can I have some sweets / tea?

2- any أى

• نستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I don't put any books on that table.

Ex. Is there any water in the bottle?

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I really don't have money now.
a. some b. many c. a lot d. any
- Dad bought meat on his way home.
a. any b. some c. a lot d. many

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- Is there (some) sugar in the fridge?
- We have (any) bread in the kitchen.

C- a lot of / a little / a few

1- a lot of كثيراً من

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالباً في الجملة المثبته مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. I have got a lot of oranges.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

2- a few قليل / a little قليل

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few snacks.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have a little milk.



1- تستخدم كنا من (a few / a little) بمعنى (قليل ولكنه يكفي):

Ex. There is a sandwich. You can have a sandwich.

2- تستخدم كنا من (few / little) بمعنى (قليل ولا يكفي):

Ex. There is little food. You need to buy some more.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- boys liked eating pasta.
a. A few b. A lot c. Much d. Any
- A: Did you have any sugar? B: Yes, I had
a. many b. a little c. a lot of d. a few

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- This book will take you (a few) time to read.
- (A little) students in my school visited London.

D- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحب:

like + n / v-ing / to + inf.

Ex. I like orange juice, but I don't like tea.

Ex. He likes to have (having) fava beans for breakfast.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء:

would like + n. / to + inf.

Ex. What would you like for breakfast?

(To make offers)

- I'd like (to have) some beans, please.

(To ask for things)

• نستخدم كلاهما في السؤال كما يلي:

Do / Does + subject + like + n / v-ing / to + inf.....?

Ex. Do you like (drinking) orange juice?

Ex. Does your dad like to walk to work?

Would + subject + like + n / to + inf....?

Ex. Would you like (to have) some water?

- Yes, please.



1- I like tea, but I don't like coffee.

• استخدمنا الفعل (like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن شيء نفضله بشكل عام (لا يمكن استخدام (would like) هنا).

2- A: Would you like a sandwich?

B: No, thank you.

• استخدمنا (Would like) هنا لأن الجملة تعبر عن تقديم عرض في موقف محدد وليس كلام عام عن التفضيل.

Exercises on Language

يوجد تمارين إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- The beach is not crowded today. There are people here. عقوبة 2024
 a. a few b. a little c. much d. many
- I invited of friends to my birthday party. عواصم 2024
 a. any b. much c. a lot d. a little
- Add sugar to the tea, but not too much. الرياض 2024
 a. much b. many c. a few d. a little
- boys liked eating pasta. كفر داود 2024
 a. Any b. Much c. A few d. A lot
- I have juice so I don't need to buy. المنيا 2024
 a. much b. many c. a few d. a lot
- Let's not go to the beach. There are people there today. دمناس 2024
 a. too much b. too many c. a few d. a little

7. Would you like to have tea with me?
 a. any b. many c. some d. a few سبتمبر الكوم 2024
8. The children ate of chocolate yesterday.
 a. a lot b. much c. many d. a few نوفمبر 2023
9. Sami isn't very thirsty, so he only wants water.
 a. a few b. a little c. too much d. lot نوفمبر 2023
10. There are grapes left. Would you like some?
 a. a little b. a few c. much d. a lot نوفمبر 2024
11. Would you like salt on your chips?
 a. a lot b. a little c. a few d. lots د، ر، ايه، نوفمبر 2023
12. Would you like beans?
 a. lot b. lots c. lot of d. some الغربية 2023
13. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like olives, please. **SB**
 a. a lot b. a little c. any d. a few
14. My grandmother spends time cooking in the kitchen. **SB**
 a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many
15. Has samosa got sugar or salt in it? **SB**
 a. some b. any c. a lot d. many
16. Would you like cold orange juice?
 a. a few b. lots c. few d. some نوفمبر 2023
17. Dad has time to do sport. He is very busy.
 a. a little b. a lot c. many d. a few نوفمبر 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

18. Mustafa always eats healthy snacks.
 a. a lot b. a few c. much d. a little
19. I don't have books.
 a. much b. lots c. some d. any
20. A: "There are a few oranges left. you like some?" B: "Yes, please."
 a. Had b. Were c. Would d. Are
21. I have a money.
 a. some b. lot of c. many d. any

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. She has got too (many) money, so she can't buy the phone. سبتمبر 2024
2. She wasn't very hungry, so she didn't eat (little) rice. نوفمبر 2024

3. I don't put (some) salt on my food. ملحشبة القاطر 2024
4. I think there is too (many) sugar in this coffee. مب انعم 2024
5. My mother asked me to buy bread, we don't have (some). ماهره 2024
6. Mazen bought (much) vegetables for breakfast. فور سدا 2024
7. Would you like (any) tea? البحر شين 2024
8. There are (much) chairs for the visitors. We don't need more. الجرة 2024
9. There is (a few) petrol in my car. أشموه 2024
10. Maher eats (a few) food. He wants to lose weight. السا ر سدا 2024

Speaking

1) Talking about your favourite food

الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

- نسأل ونجيب عن طعامك المفضل كالآتي:

A: What's your favourite juicy fruit? ما هي فاكهتك المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة؟	B: is my favourite juicy fruit. هي فاكهتي المفضلة المليئة بالعصارة.
A: Which is your favourite snack? أي الوجبات الخفيفة المفضلة لك؟	B: is my favourite snack. هي وجبتي الخفيفة المفضلة.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet? هل وجبتك الخفيفة المفضلة مليئة بالعصارة ام حارة ام حلوة الطعم؟	B: My favourite snack is وجبتي الخفيفة المفضلة
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy? هل هي صحية ام غير صحية؟	B: It is healthy / unhealthy. إنها صحية / غير صحية .
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it? هل مضاف إليها أي سكر أو ملح؟	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2) Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال والاجابة عما تحب وما لا تحب.

A: What would you like for breakfast? ماذا تحب على الإفطار؟	B: I'd like some beans, please. أود تناول بعض الفول، من فضلك.
A: Would you like some tea? هل ترغب في بعض الشاي؟	B: Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.

③ Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

نقديم الطعام ، المقبول و الرفض بأدب
- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل :

• Do you like? هل تحب ؟

Ex. Do you like rice?

• Would you like ...? هل ترغب في ؟

Ex. Would you like a sandwich?

- للموافقة أو الرفض نقول :

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please.	- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Thank you. I like	- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer.....
- Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- No, thank you.
	- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



يوجد تمارينات إضافية في كراسة الواجب المنزلي

① Complete the following dialogue:

سجل في 2023

Khalid and John are talking about snacks.

Khalid : What's your favourite snack, John?

John : ① What about you?

Khalid : I like chips, too, but I like falafel more.

John : ②?

Khalid : Yes, falafel is a popular snack in Egypt.

John : Is it a healthy snack?

Khalid : ③ It is made from beans and vegetables.

John : ④?

Khalid : I eat it in the morning. Would you like to eat it for breakfast tomorrow?

John : ⑤

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. It was not easy to join the school team.

- a. tests b. allergic c. athletics d. athlete

2. She offered me more food, but I was

- a. fit b. hungry c. full d. empty

3. People who do sports like to eat rice and pasta because they give them

- a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy

4. Sandwiches and pizza are examples of _____ food.

- a. thirsty b. angry c. lucky d. fast

5. I'm _____ to sweets , so I never eat them.

- a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic

إدارة طوم 2023

Exercises on Language

6. Leila likes _____ milk in her tea, but not very much.

- a. a few b. any c. a lot d. a little

إدارة طوم 2023

7. She eats _____ fish because it helps to make her strong.

WB

- a. any b. a lot of c. lots d. a lot

8. My grandmother spends _____ time cooking in the kitchen.

إدارة طوم 2023

- a. a few b. many c. a lot of d. lots

9. She drinks _____ water.

WB

- a. a little b. any c. many d. a few

10. She eats _____ sweets.

WB

- a. much b. a lot c. a few d. a little

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I don't have _____ (some) cheese in the fridge.

إدارة طوم 2023

2. There is _____ (lot) juice for breakfast.

3. Mum bought _____ (much) vegetables today.

4. There aren't _____ (some) cakes in the supermarket.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

WB

to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.

(محباب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

- Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What's your favourite snack?

- When do you often have it?

- How do you make it?

- Why do you like it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite snack is

- I often have it when

- It's easy to make

- I like it because

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



dairy products	منتجات الألبان	healthy	صحي
bone	عظمة	fresh	طازج
protein	بروتين	unusual	غير معتاد
delicious	لذيذ	butter	زبد
sense	حاسة		

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن
see	يرى	taste (d)	يتذوق
touch (ed)	يلمس	eye	العين
		smell	يشم
		hand	اليد
		tongue	اللسان
		nose	الأنف

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق / يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلّ	(eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم «طعام / شراب»	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	أومليت	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
chamorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاته)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تويو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان (في منطقة جنوب آسيا)



Vocabulary

quiz	إختبار قصير	instructions	تعليمات
piece	قطعة	fork	شوكة
humans	البشر	soup	حساء (شوربة)
fridge	ثلاجة	square	مربع
dining room	غرفة الطعام	soft	لين (طري)
chopped	مُقطّع	recipe	وصفة طهي / طريقة للطبخ
bowl	سلطانية	call (ed)	يسمى
frying pan	مقللة (طاسة القلى)		

Expressions & Prepositions

smell terrible	ذو رائحة فظيعة	serve ... with	يقدم ... مع ...
sleep well	ينام جيدًا	beat ... with	يخفق ... مع ... / باستخدام ...
be full	يشعر بالشبع	add ... to ...	يضيف ... إلى ...
have strong bones	لديه عظام قوية	take ... out of ...	يُخرج ... من ...
have a taste	له طعم	on the inside / outside	في الداخل / الخارج
look unusual	يبدو غير معتاد	different from	مختلف عن
keep food	يحفظ الطعام	chop ... into	يقطع ... إلى
taste delicious	ذو طعم لذيذ	pour ... into...	يصب ... في ...
under the ground	تحت الأرض	pour ... over ...	يصب ... على ...

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
beat	يخفق / يضرب	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelled / smelt	smelled / smelt
grow	ينمو	grew	grown

Word

Meaning

Opposite

unusual	غير معتاد	strange	usual	معتاد
heat	يسخن	warm up	cool	يبرد



Definitions

beat	يخفق	mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon ⁽¹⁾ , etc.
bone	عظمة	one of the hard parts of the skeleton ⁽²⁾ inside a person or animal
chop	يقطع	cut something into small pieces

١- ملعقة خشبية
٢- هيكل عظمي

dairy products	منتجات الألبان	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter
protein	بروتين	- one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong
fry	يقلّي	cook something in hot oil or fat
pour	يصب	make a liquid (flow) out of or into something such as a cup or bowl
serve	يقدم «طعام/شراب»	provide ⁽⁵⁾ food or drinks
smell	يشم	know what something is using your nose
taste	يتذوق	know what something is when you put it in your mouth
unusual	غير معتاد	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising ⁽⁶⁾ or interesting
delicious	لذيذ	very nice to eat

٣- سائل

٤- ينساب / يتدفق

٥- يلود بـ / يقدم

٦- مذهش / مفاجئ



Language Notes

1) Verbs + adjectives

بعض الأفعال يليها صفة (وليس حال) مثل:

smell / look / feel / be / taste

Ex. This food **smells** bad.

رائحته كريهة.

Ex. I think the cake **tastes** delicious.

مذاقه لذيذ.

كما يمكن أن تستخدم بعض هذه الأفعال كاسماء:

smell	رائحة	taste	مذاق	look	منظر
-------	-------	-------	------	------	------

Ex. Century eggs have a **salty** taste.

لهم طعم مالح.

2) It + be + adjective + to + inf.

يستخدم هذا الأسلوب لوصف حدث معين:

Ex. It is sweet and salty to mix sweet and salty things together.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I think that food smells
 a. nicely b. nice c. nicer than d. as nice
- It is usual falafel in Egypt.
 a. to eat b. to eating c. eats d. ate



Reading

SB Page (16)

استمع إلى النصوص



A healthy food quiz⁽¹⁾

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat
 a. only fruit and vegetables
 b. a lot of meat and cheese
 c. some of all types of food
2. We need to drink glasses of water every day.
 a. eight b. two c. four
3. Dairy products⁽²⁾ like milk and cheese help us to
 a. have lots of hair b. have strong bones c. run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein⁽³⁾ in them and we need protein to
 a. sleep well b. move fast c. have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar
 a. makes it difficult to sleep b. is bad for your teeth
 c. makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are
 a. fruit and nuts b. chocolate and sweets c. salty chips
7. People need to eat pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
 a. one to two b. five to ten c. one
8. People often like fast food because
 a. it has lots of fat and sugar in it b. it gives you energy
 c. you can eat a lot of it and not feel full
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is
 a. expensive b. fresh⁽⁵⁾ c. from a big supermarket

١- اختبار قصير

٢- منتجات الألبان

٣- عظام

٤- بروتين

٥- طازج

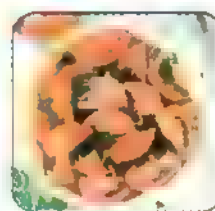
Answers:
 One point for each correct answer:
 1c 2d 3b 4c 5b 6d 7b 8d 9b
 Score 7-9: Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
 Score 4-6: Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy!
 Score 1-3: Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

How to make an omelette

1. Beat⁽¹⁾ two eggs in a bowl⁽²⁾ with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. Heat⁽³⁾ some butter⁽⁴⁾ in a frying pan⁽⁵⁾.
4. Pour⁽⁶⁾ the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve with⁽⁷⁾ salad.

**How to make a tomato salad**

1. Take two big tomatoes and half⁽⁸⁾ an onion⁽⁹⁾.
2. Chop⁽¹⁰⁾ all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.



* bowl * تنطق هذه الكلمة مثل كلمة (good) مع اختلاف الصوت الأول فقط.

- ١- يخفق
- ٢- سلطانية
- ٣- يسخن
- ٤- زبد
- ٥- مقلاة
- ٦- يصب
- ٧- يقدم مع
- ٨- نصف
- ٩- بصلة
- ١٠- يقص

Unusual⁽¹⁾ but delicious

Some food smells bad or looks unusual- but still tastes good! 'Durian fruits'⁽²⁾ grow in Indonesia⁽³⁾ and Malaysia⁽⁴⁾. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard⁽⁵⁾ and green on the outside⁽⁶⁾, but soft⁽⁷⁾ and yellow on the inside⁽⁸⁾. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible⁽⁹⁾, but they are very healthy and taste delicious⁽¹⁰⁾. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup⁽¹²⁾.



In the Philippines⁽¹¹⁾, people eat something called 'champorado'⁽¹³⁾ with 'tuyo'⁽¹⁴⁾ for breakfast. 'Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines!

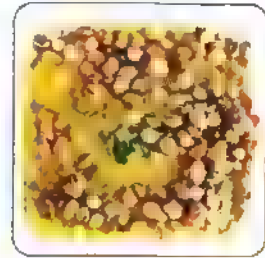


In China⁽¹⁵⁾, people eat eggs that are months or years old! They are called century eggs⁽¹⁶⁾ and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.

- ١- غير معتاد
- ٢- يندو
- ٣- فاكهة دوريان
- ٤- دولة إندونيسيا
- ٥- دولة ماليزيا
- ٦- صلب
- ٧- الخارج
- ٨- لين
- ٩- الداخل
- ١٠- فظيخ
- ١١- مذاقه لذيق
- ١٢- شوربة
- ١٣- دولة الفلبين
- ١٤- أرز بالشيكولاتة
- ١٥- سمك مملح
- ١٦- دولة الصين
- ١٧- بيض القرن

How to make **foul mudammas**⁽¹⁾

1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water and salt to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it **boils**⁽²⁾.
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.



١- فول مدممس
٢- يغلي



Audioscript



- Ashraf** : I'm Ashraf. I really like trying unusual food because I like to taste new things.
- Dina** : My name's Dina. When I was younger, I thought vegetables didn't taste nice at all. Now I like them. I eat a lot of them because I know they are healthy.
- Heba** : I'm Heba. Yesterday I ate fesikh. This is a dry salty fish. It doesn't taste nice at all, and it smells horrible!
- Basel** : My name's Basel. I love the smell of cakes when they are cooking, but I never eat cakes at all. I'm allergic to nuts.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I was hungry so my mother _____ me some eggs in the pan. الخبز 2024
 a. cried b. fried c. dried d. tried
2. Durian fruits are hard and green _____ the outside. 2024
 a. on b. with c. at d. for
3. Please _____ some tea into my cup. لبدرسين 2024
 a. hear b. pull c. beat d. pour
4. We _____ food with our tongue. شرق طبط 2024
 a. hear b. smell c. see d. taste
5. Eating _____ food makes you strong. الراوية الحمراء 2024
 a. spicy b. healthy c. unhealthy d. salty

- 2023-2024**

74

Language

Imperative

صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

1- صيغة الأمر المثبت

- inf. + باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل
- Always + inf. + باقي الجملة

2- صيغة الأمر المنفي

- Don't + inf. + باقي الجملة
- Never + inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the tomatoes! Don't chop them too small!

Ex. Add salt. Don't add too much salt!

- يستخدم الفعل (be) في صيغة الأمر كما يلي:

- Be + باقي الجملة
- Don't be + باقي الجملة

Ex. Be careful when you boil the water.

Ex. Don't be late for school.

Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Sameer, _____ play in the street. الميلاد 2024
 a. doesn't b. didn't c. mustn't d. don't
2. Take the omelette and _____ it with salad. SB
 a. serving b. serves c. serve d. doesn't serve
3. _____ the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork. SB
 a. To put b. Puts c. Putting d. Put
4. _____ the beans in the water until it boils. WB
 a. Heat b. Heats c. Heated d. Heating
5. _____ some lemon juice over the hot beans. WB
 a. Pours b. Pour c. Poured d. Pouring
6. _____ sauce over the pasta. I want it without sauce, please. إذا سكبوا سالتا 2023
 a. Pour b. Don't pour c. Pours d. Pouring
7. _____ the light off before you sleep. إدارة أبو البركات 2023
 a. Turning b. Turns c. Turned d. Turn

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. To be healthy, _____ all types of food.
 a. eating b. eat c. eats d. ate

9. the eggs into the frying pan now.
a. Pours b. Poured c. Pour d. Pouring
10. out alone without telling your parents.
a. Go b. Never go c. Doesn't go d. Goes
11. enough fruits and nuts. They are healthy snacks.
a. Get b. Don't get c. Never get d. Gets
12. Don't fry the eggs. them.
a. Boil b. Boils c. Boiling d. Boiled
13. fast food because it has lots of fat.
a. Eating b. Eats c. Eat d. Never eat
14. your aunt today. She's really ill.
a. Visited b. Visit c. Visiting d. Visits
15. me some fresh food. It is really healthy.
a. Don't get b. To Get c. Getting d. Get

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
2. (Doesn't) play in the street.
3. Wait a little. (Not pour) the eggs now.
4. (Adds) some water and salt to the beans.
5. Chop the tomatoes, but (didn't) chop them too small.
6. Don't (touching) electric wires.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. (Learning) English. It is really useful.
8. Please, (heats) the beans now.
9. (Having) breakfast early. It will make you feel fresh.
10. (Not keep) food in the fridge for a long time. It's not healthy.

1 Giving opinion about food

- لإبداء رأينا في الطعام نقول:

• I think that tastes + (صفة) أعتقد أن طعمه

Ex. I think that fried chicken tastes good.

• In my opinion, smells + (صفة) في رأيي رائحته

Ex. In my opinion, fish smells horrible.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



① Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Samy are talking about snacks.

اميلب 2024

Ali : What is your favourite snack, Samy?

Samy : ①

Ali : I like kushari, too but I prefer pizza.

Samy : ②?

Ali : As it is very delicious.

Samy : ③?

Ali : I eat it in restaurants.

Samy : What else do you eat?

Ali : ④

Samy : How often do you eat fruits?

Ali : ⑤

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Follow these to use the tablet well.

اميلب 2022

- a. pieces b. advice c. bowls d. instructions

2. products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.

SB

- a. Dairy b. Dairy c. Dry d. Wet

3. The soup is cold. Shall we it?

اميلب 2023

SB

- a. cool b. freeze c. heat d. wash

4. My mum some tea into my cup.

- a. chopped b. beat c. boiled d. poured

5. I liked the perfume so much. It really nice.

- a. smelt b. fried c. boiled d. served

6. Which of these is not a dairy product?

WB

- a. milk b. rice c. cheese d. butter

7. Do you prefer to boil or your eggs?

SB

- a. wash b. pour c. serve d. fry

8. My grandparents always lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.

SB

- a. serve b. do c. wash d. play

9. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?

WB

- a. sugar b. rice c. eggs d. chocolate

Exercises on Language

10. To have healthy teeth, sure you eat dairy products.
 a. being b. are c. is d. be
11. some beans and put them in a pan. WB
 a. Wash b. Washing c. Washes d. To wash
12. come to school on time.
 a. Never b. Always c. Not d. Don't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. (Serving) it with warm bread. WB
 2. (Doesn't forget) to add a little salt.
 3. (Not) boil oil more than one time.
 4. Please, (stopped) eating too much chocolate.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"Some unusual food that you have tried"

مجبب عنه في آخر الوحدة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What was the unusual food you have tried?
- How did it smell?
- How did it taste?
- How did it look?
- Would you like to eat it again?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I tried
- It was called
- It looked / smelt / tasted
- I would / wouldn't to eat

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

exercise	تمارين	cake	كعكة / تورتة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	متعب



Vocabulary

athletics club	نادي ألعاب قوى	upset	يضايق / يزعج - متضايق
conclusion	خاتمة	furthermore	علاوة على ذلك
perhaps	ربما	What sort...?	ما نوع...؟
amount	كمية - مقدار	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
art school	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	introduce (d)	يقدم
drawing	الرسم بالرصاص / بالفحم	revise (d)	يراجع
painting	الرسم بالألوان / لوحة فنية	surprise (d)	يفاجئ
situation	موقف	conclude (d)	يختتم (كلامه)
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	relax (ed)	يسترخي
reason	سبب	own (ed)	يملك

Expressions & Requests

feel hungry	يشعر بالجوع	make sure	يتأكد من
have energy	لديه طاقة	text friends	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	serve ... on a plate	يقدم في طبق
do some drawing	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	How about + V-ing...?	ما رأيك في ...؟
try + V-ing.	يجرب ..	depend on	يعتمد على
as you can see	كما ترى	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
eight hours' sleep	نوم لثماني ساعات	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
that's why	لهذا السبب	in the oven	في الفرن

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

upset	يزعج
sleep	ينام
bring	يحضر
mean	يعنى

Past simple

upset
slept
brought
meant

Past Participle

upset
slept
brought
meant

Word

Meaning

Opposite

tired	مُتعب	uncomfortable	comfortable	مستريح
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately	لحسن الحظ



Definitions

spinach

نبات السبانخ

a vegetable with **wide** ⁽¹⁾ **dark** ⁽²⁾ **green leaves** ⁽³⁾ that go soft when you cook them

١- عريض
٢- قاتم اللون
٣- أوراق النبات
٤- بذور

pepper

فلفل

a kind of vegetables that is usually green, red or yellow, with **seeds** ⁽⁴⁾ in the middle

diet

نظام غذائي

the kind of food that you eat every day

sweet potato

بطاطا

a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste



Language Notes

① Possessive ('s) or (')

- تستخدم ('s) للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم المفرد والجمع غير المنتظم:

- the **boy's** bag- the **men's** bags

- تستخدم (') للتعبير عن الملكية للاسم الجمع المنتهي بـ (s):

- the **boys'** bags

② The present continuous

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مرتب له في المستقبل:

Ex. Your aunt **is coming** to visit us next week. It's arranged.

③ too many / much

• too many + اسم جمع [للعدد] كثير جدًا

Ex. Mustafa eats **too many** cookies.

• too much + اسم مفرد لا يعد [للكمية] كثير جدًا

Ex. Mo'men doesn't have **too much** money.

Check on Language Notes

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That is the room. They aren't here now.
a. girl's b. girls c. girl d. girls'
2. I a party next week.
a. has b. am having c. having d. had
3. My mother gives me food.
a. too many b. too few c. too much d. so many



Audioscript

SB Page (19)

استمع إلى النصوص



Ali : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The **cook**⁽¹⁾ is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always **trying**⁽²⁾ them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough exercise, but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.

Eman : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very **healthy diet**⁽³⁾. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after **athletics club**⁽⁴⁾. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early! I want to have more **energy**⁽⁵⁾.

Tamer : I'm Tamer. I want to go to **art school**⁽⁶⁾ when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to **upset**⁽⁷⁾ her, so I can't tell her it's too much!

١- طبباخ

٢- بجررب

٣- نظام غذائي صحي

٤- نادى ألعاب القوى

٥- طاقة

٦- مدرسة لتعليم

الرسم

٧- يزعج



Reading

SB Page (19)

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between **meals**⁽¹⁾, it's a good **idea**⁽²⁾ to have a snack. How about **bringing**⁽³⁾ a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have athletics club? If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta? **Perhaps**⁽⁴⁾ you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

١- وجبات

٢- فكرة

٣- إحضار

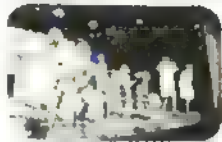
٤- ربما

The Okinawan diet

I come from Okinawa in Japan and the diet on my island^{*} is very healthy.

This is for three^{*} . Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, ^{*} and yellow vegetables like spinach^{**}, ^{*} and ^{*}. ^{*}, we don't have much fat in our diet: we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have soup with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why ^{*} live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island!



sweet potato



yellow pepper



spinach



Say it
correctly

* island

* spinach

⦿ لاحظ أن حرف (s) لا ينطق في هذه الكلمة.
⦿ لاحظ أن الجزء الملون في هذه الكلمة ينطق مثل نطق الجزء الملون من كلمة (cheese) مع عدم نطق حرف (a).

- ١- خاص بجزيرة
- ٢- أوكيناوا باليابان
- ٣- جزيرة
- ٤- رئيسي
- ٥- أسباب
- ٦- أرجواني اللون
- ٧- نبات السبانخ
- ٨- بطاطا
- ٩- علاوة على ذلك
- ١٠- شعب جزيرة
- أوكيناوا

Lelia : Is there any cheese in the fridge? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

Devi : I think there is a little cheese. I'm going shopping now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market?

Leila : Yes, please! Could you get a few tomatoes, too? I don't have enough for the salad.

1- Your cousins are coming to visit on Saturday next week. They always make wonderful cakes and sweets for you and you want to make something for them. ^{*}, you do not know how to cook!

2- You are studying for exams at the moment and you are ^{*}. ^{*} and eating a lot of chocolate and ^{*}. You do not do any exercise and you spend your free time ^{*} your friends. You feel ^{*} and unhealthy.



Say it
correctly

* biscuits

⦿ لنطق هذه الكلمة نقسمها الى نصفين (bis - cuits) وينطق النصف الأخير (kits)

- ١- لسوء الحظ
- ٢- يسهر لوقت متأخر
- ٣- بسكويت
- ٤- يرسل رسائل نصية
- ٥- مُتعب

WB Page (81)

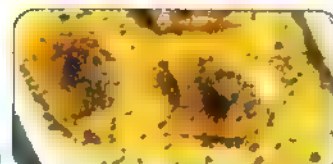
How much sleep should we have? The answer depends on⁽¹⁾ your age. Very small babies sleep for about 14 or more hours a day! Children aged⁽²⁾ six to seventeen should sleep for about⁽³⁾ ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18-65 need about eight hours' sleep.



- ١- تعتمد على
- ٢- بالغ من العمر
- ٣- حوالي

WB Page (82)

A healthy diet



It may surprise⁽¹⁾ you to know that West African countries⁽²⁾ have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this?

Firstly, people in countries such as Senegal⁽³⁾, Mali⁽⁴⁾, and Sierra Leone⁽⁵⁾ eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

Another important point⁽⁶⁾ is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.

To conclude⁽⁷⁾, a healthy diet means⁽⁸⁾ eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

- ١- يدهش
- ٢- دول غرب أفريقيا
- ٣- دولة السنغال
- ٤- دولة مالي
- ٥- دولة سيراليون
- ٦- نقطة
- ٧- حتماً
- ٨- يعني

WB Page (83)

A recipe for pizza



- Firstly, chop some tomatoes.
- Then put the tomatoes onto the pizza bread.
- Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil⁽¹⁾.
- Cook the pizza in the oven⁽²⁾ for ten minutes.
- Add a few olives and a little salt.
- Serve with a fresh salad.

- ١- زيت زيتون
- ٢- فرن

Videoscript

SB Page (19)

Narrator:

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. ⁽¹⁾ like kushari⁽²⁾ and rozzme'amar⁽³⁾ are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport?

Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually

- ١- أصناف طعام
- ٢- كشرى
- ٣- أرز معمر

eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread something called carbohydrate⁽⁵⁾. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or athletics⁽⁶⁾?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like cake⁽⁷⁾ and kahl⁽⁸⁾. But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your health.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains protein? Protein is something that helps our body to recover⁽⁹⁾ after exercise.

Meat, fish and dairy products, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like kahl⁽¹⁰⁾ salmon⁽¹¹⁾ or chicken⁽¹²⁾ after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

٤- يحتوى على

٥- مواد كربوهيدراتية

٦- يمارس ألعاب القوى

٧- البسبوسة

٨- الكعك

٩- يتعافى

١٠- كفتة

١١- أرز صيدانية

١٢- الشكشوكة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- Following a healthy keeps you strong and fit.
a. date b. dot c. diet d. data
- I used to exercise every morning when I was young.
a. make b. get c. do d. give
- Heba was because her husband was late at work.
a. busy b. spicy c. pleased d. upset
- I don't like as they have lots of sugar in them.
a. vegetables b. sweets c. spices d. fish
- My mother was worried me when I came home late.
a. about b. of c. with d. for
- You should sure that you eat all types of healthy food.
a. say b. take c. do d. make
- is a vegetable that is very healthy. **WB**
a. Sugar b. Salt c. Spinach d. Apple
- When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel **SB**
a. big b. hungry c. salty d. cheap
- A/An can be green, red or yellow. **WB**
a. pepper b. diet c. omelette d. spinach
- Your is the kind of food that you eat every day. **WB**
a. work b. exercise c. diet d. homework

إدارة مركز الفهم 2023

11. Try to have a / an diet to keep you healthy.
a. balanced b. long c. bad d. old

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. is important as it gives us energy.
a. Cotton b. Cloth c. Ice d. Food
13. The sailor decided to live the island.
a. of b. on c. for d. with
14. You should add a/an of olive oil to the food.
a. number b. amount c. mount d. age
15. I felt really because I didn't get enough sleep.
a. hungry b. full c. tired d. fresh
16. To add a good taste to the salad, you should add some yellow
a. paper b. pepper c. diet d. salt
17. potato has a nice taste.
a. Salty b. Bad c. Liquid d. Sweet
18. Ali felt really after 14 hours of hard work.
a. tired b. relaxed c. active d. comfortable
19. Gamila eats too many cakes, but she doesn't do enough
a. snacks b. exercise c. picnics d. trips
20. If you feel, you should have a meal at a restaurant.
a. angry b. full c. careful d. hungry

Speaking

إسداء النص (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

Giving advice (about being healthy)

- لإسداء النص نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

- It's a good idea that you إنها فكرة جيدة أن

Ex. It's a good idea that you don't eat fast food.

- It's a good idea to + inf إنها فكرة جيدة أن

Ex. It's a good idea to have a snack.

- How about + V-ing ? ما رأيك في ؟

Ex. How about bringing a few healthy snacks to school?

- Why don't you + try + V-ing ? لم لا تجرب ؟

Ex. Why don't you try eating fruit that gives you energy?

- You could + inf يمكنك أن

Ex. You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



السنة الأولى 2024

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr is ordering kebab at a restaurant

- Waiter : How can I help you?
 Amr : ①
 Waiter : OK. Here is the menu. What would you like to have?
 Naser : ②
 Waiter : ③ ?
 Naser : Yes, I'd like some soup first.
 Waiter : ④ ?
 Naser : I'd like some orange juice.
 Waiter : Anything else!
 Naser : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. How about healthy food?
 a. have b. has c. had d. having
2. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy
 a. sleep b. exercise c. snacks d. restaurants
3. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good
 a. idea b. food c. meal d. diet
4. I like eating , it's very healthy.
 a. painting b. spinach c. conclusion d. plate
5. It is important to have a balanced, healthy
 a. trip b. view c. diet d. journey
6. A: I'm really bored. B: How going to the zoo?
 a. many b. much c. deep d. about
7. To is to cut something into small pieces.
 a. pour b. heat c. shop d. chop
8. Serve four mudammas warm bread.
 a. to b. with c. for d. of

السنة الأولى 2024

SB

WB

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on: WB

"Egyptian food"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What do people usually eat in Egypt?
- What are the most popular dishes?
- Are they healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- People in Egypt usually eat - There are many dishes in Egypt.
- The Egyptian food is healthy / unhealthy because

Key Vocabulary

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	cake	كعكة / تورتة
snack	وجبة خفيفة	allergic to	لديه حساسية لـ
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	energy	طاقة
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	fresh	طازج
bone	عظمة	unusual	غير معتاد
protein	بروتين	butter	زبد
exercise	تمارين	sense	حاسة
food	طعام	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
hungry	جائع	spinach	نبات السبانخ
sleep	نوم	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا	tired	مُتعب

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروچاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنجل (فطائر حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونات	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار

Food and Snacks

delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل) / حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن
see	يرى	eye	العين
touch (ed)	يلمس	hand	اليدين
		taste (ed)	يتذوق
		smell	يشم
		tongue	اللسان
		nose	الأنف

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق / يضرب (eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع (meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلّي (eggs - chicken)
pour (ed)	يصب (water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن (beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل (beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم «طعام/ شراب» (food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي / يسلق (water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف (salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette (أكلة تحتوي على البيض وإضافات)	أومليت	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
chamorado (أرز بالشيكولاتة)	الشامبرادو	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo (سمك مملح صغير)	تويو	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان



Language

1- Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١- أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

a pen - a door - a unit

a(n) umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢- أسماء جمع كالتالي:

a pen → pens / a book → books

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تأتي دائماً مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread - water - cheese - milk

English - rubber - love

information - news - rain - air

2- some & any

• تستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We saw some friends on our way home.

Ex. Dad always puts some salt on his food.

• تستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب.

Ex. Would you like some oranges / pasta?

Ex. Can I have some beans / milk?

• تستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We don't buy any books from that shop.

Ex. Is there any water in the fridge?

3- a lot of / a little / a few

• تستخدم (a lot of) غالبًا في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have a lot of snacks.

Ex. They eat a lot of rice and pasta.

• تستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. I eat a few oranges.

• تستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. They have a little milk.

4- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضل:

Ex. They like coffee but they don't like tea.

• تستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء:

Ex. What would you like for dinner?

Ex. I'd like (to have) some meat, please.

5- Imperative صيغة الأمر

• تستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

صيغة الأمر المنهية -

→ inf. + باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل

→ Always + inf. + باقي الجملة

→ Don't + inf. + باقي الجملة

→ Never + inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. Chop the cucumbers! Don't chop them all!



Speaking

① Talking about your favourite food

الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

أسئلة

A: What's your favourite juicy fruit?	B: is my favourite juicy fruit.
A: Which is your favourite snack?	B: is my favourite snack.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?	B: My favourite snack is
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy?	B: It is healthy / unhealthy.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it?	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2) Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال عما تحب وما لا تحب

A: What do you like to eat?	B: I'd like some beans, please.
A: Do you like ...?	B: Yes, please. or No, thank you.

3) Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام، القبول والرفض بأدب

- عرض الطعام على شخص نسال:

- Do you like? / • Would you like ...?

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Yes, please. - Thank you. I like - Yes, please, just a few / a little. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Thank you, but I'm really full. - No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer..... - No, thank you. - Thank you, but I really couldn't. |
|--|---|

4) Giving opinion about food

إبداء الرأي في طعام

- لإبداء الرأي في الطعام، يقول:

- I think that tastes + (صفة)
- In my opinion, smells + (صفة)

5) Giving advice (about being healthy)

إسداء النصيحة بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة

- لإسداء النصيحة نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| • It's a good idea that you | • It's a good idea to + inf |
| • How about + V-ing | • Why don't you try + V-ing? |
| • You could + inf | |

General Exercises on Unit 8

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Marwa has just come from school.

Marwa : What did you cook for lunch, mum?

Mum : ①

Marwa : Wow! I like kushari very much.

Mum : I know.

Marwa : ②?

Mum : Yes, I made some salad.

Marwa : ③?

Mum : I made rice pudding.

Marwa : ④ Thanks, mum.

Mum : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

- I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like food. **SB**
 a. sweet b. big c. fast d. salty
- Watermelon is very sweet and It contains a lot of juice.
 a. salty b. allergic c. spicy d. juicy
- If we don't use sugar to make food, what other things can we use? **SB**
 a. sweet b. fast c. salty d. juicy
- There is not protein in **WB**
 a. meat b. milk c. fish d. apples
- You need to the tomatoes into small pieces. **SB**
 a. beat b. heat c. chop d. fry
- First, the eggs in the bowl.
 a. hit b. beat c. cut d. chop
- I'm really tired and I don't have the to go out.
 a. energy b. light c. electricity d. muscle

Exercises on Language

- Would you like more beans? **WB**
 a. some b. lot c. lot of d. lots

9. _____ the salad with the omelette.

SB

- a. Serves b. Didn't serve c. Serve d. Serving

10. _____ the butter in the frying pan now. Wait a minute.

- a. Heating b. Don't heat c. Heats d. Doesn't heat

11. She didn't cook _____ meat last night.

شروق بشرى 2023

- a. any b. some c. many d. a lot

12. "_____ you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."

SB

- a. Are b. Were c. Would d. Had

13. Do you have _____ money in your wallet?

- a. lots b. any c. a lot d. many

14. I'd like _____ cheese, please.

SB

- a. a lot b. a few c. many d. a little

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Would you like _____ (a few) tea?

إدارة بشرى 2023

2. There aren't _____ (some) cakes in the supermarket.

إدارة بشرى 2023

3. My sister cooked _____ (a lot) pasta and rice.

4. _____ (To add) a little salt to the chips.

5. I couldn't find _____ (some) water in the fridge.

6. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and _____ (cooking) it in the butter.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

SB / WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Indian diet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the country you are talking about?
- What do people usually eat there?
- Is their diet healthy or unhealthy? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm from The diet in my country is very healthy.
- People in usually eat
- Our diet is healthy / unhealthy because



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- Fava beans and falafel are very in Egypt.
a. unknown b. popular c. dirty d. unpopular
- People in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for
a. breakfast b. dinner c. lunch d. supper

B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ola is talking to her mom.

Mom : Would you like some cake, Ola?

Ola : ① But only a little.

Mom : Why do you want a little?

Ola : ②

Mom : ③ ?

Ola : Thanks, I like tea. I don't like coffee with cake.

Mom : OK, I will make a hot cup of tea.

C Usage

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Don't presents from strangers.
a. accepted b. accepting c. accepts d. accept
- I don't put salt on salad.
a. some b. any c. many d. few
- Let's sit down and a rest.
a. do b. go c. have d. make
- You should eat healthy food to get the you need.
a. energy b. speed c. diary d. juicy
- He doesn't do exercise.
a. a b. many c. enough d. few

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Ahmed was born into a **rich** family. He spent a short **happy** childhood. But his mother died when he was three years old. His father's sadness over his wife made him ill. He was at hospital for a long time, so he lost all his money. Ahmed had to work at an early age. He worked as a driver, a **cook** and builder. He liked films, so he always went to the cinema. One day, he met a famous film star who took him to work in a film. Since that time he has become famous and rich.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. He was Ahmed's childhood?
.....
2. Why did Ahmed's father lose all his money?
.....
3. Where did Ahmed always go?
.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**cook**" means a person who food.
a. takes b. finds c. cleans d. makes
5. The opposite of the word "**rich**" is
a. poor b. famous c. sad d. late

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. A: "**Would** you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea." **SB** (.....)
2. Ramy likes **a few** sugar in his tea, but not too much. **دارهالك على 2023** (.....)
3. There are too **much** people in the market today. **2023 في السوق** (.....)
4. Does Ahmed have **a little** friends? **2023 في صديق** (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

[محتاج عنه في، بر لوحده]

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Is healthy food important for everyone?
- How does healthy food help us?
- What should we eat to be healthy?
- What are healthy snacks?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Healthy food is
- Healthy food helps us to
- If you want to be healthy, you should eat
- are healthy snacks.

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- Some unusual food I have tried

Once I travelled abroad with my friends. We decided to have lunch at a famous restaurant. We tried a very interesting snack. It was called "Durian fruits". "Durian fruits" grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. They're soft and yellow on the inside. We liked to eat them very much. They were very healthy and tasted delicious. Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.

2- Egyptian food

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. They usually eat beans for breakfast. They like falafel as well. Egyptian people like kushari. It contains rice, pasta, onions and tomatoes. They eat it at home or at special restaurants. People in Egypt eat kebab and kofta. It's a very popular meal. It's very delicious. They eat them with salad and bread. Tourists who come to Egypt like to try Egyptian food. It's very popular in many countries all over the world.

3- Indian diet

I'm from India. The diet in my country is very healthy for many reasons. Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables. We eat green, purple and yellow vegetables. Furthermore, we don't have much fat in our diet. Another important thing is that we eat very healthy breakfast. This gives us lots of energy to start the day. That's why Indians live long lives. We don't eat much meat and dairy products. Our food is usually spicy. Many people all over the world like to try Indian food.

4- What I can eat to stay healthy

Healthy food is really important for everyone. We should eat all types of food. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

5- My favourite meal

My favourite food is cheese omelette. It's very delicious. I found the recipe on the internet. I liked to try it very much. I asked my mother about it. She knew the meal and helped me make it. I make it by beating eggs in a bowl. I use some cheese. I heat the eggs in a pan. I don't add salt because the cheese is salty enough. I can eat the meal with tomatoes and hot bread. It tastes delicious. Why don't you try it?

Email

- My favourite snack

From : judy88@hotmail.com.

To : hanaa77@gmail.com.

Subject : My favourite snack

Dear Hanaa,

How are you? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack. I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious! Do you have any favourite snacks? Describe them to me in your next email! Best wishes.

Yours,

Judy



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and
 a. England b. Malaysia c. Egypt d. France
2. Some fruits can becentimetres long.
 a. thirty b. forty c. fifty d. sixty
3. Durian fruits are hard and on the outside.
 a. yellow b. blue c. green d. white
4. Durian fruits are very and taste delicious.
 a. good b. nice c. well d. healthy

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is talking to Nada about a meal in a restaurant.

- Nada : Hello Mona, ①?
- Mona : I'm going to the restaurant.
- Nada : Do they serve fast food?
- Mona : ② They serve healthy food.
- Nada : ③?
- Mona : I usually eat chicken and salad.
- Nada : Is it expensive?
- Mona : ④ It's cheap.
- Nada : Can I come with you?
- Mona : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Our bodies need food like meat, rice, fruit, salt and sugar to be healthy. Food gives us energy, but we need a healthy diet to give us the right quantities of energy. When we do sports, our bodies use more energy and need more food than when we watch

TV. To be healthy, the quantity of food that we eat should be the same as the energy which our bodies use.

If we often eat much fast food, we will start to put on weight. Every day we should eat fruit and vegetables.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We put on if we eat much fast food.
a. height b. high c. length d. weight
2. Our bodies need kinds of food.
a. all b. little c. few d. no

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why do our bodies need food?

4. What should we eat every day?

5. How much energy do our bodies use when we do sports?

6. What is the main idea of the text?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I should buy some products from the supermarket.
a. day b. diary c. dairy d. paper
2. A : "..... you like a little sugar in your coffee?"
B : "No, thank you."
a. Would b. Are c. Does d. Were
3. I can't do my homework because I'm
a. happy b. active c. tired d. clever
4. Many people are to nuts, so they shouldn't eat any of them.
a. addicted b. popular c. allergic d. ready
5. Putting too much sugar makes food
a. sweet b. spicy c. salty d. juicy
6. We should have a diet to be healthy.
a. translated b. horrible c. balanced d. bitter

WB

2023 لدرجتي

2023 لدرجتي

2023 لدرجتي

7. We sometimes eat sfenj with tea.

SB

- a. an b. some c. many d. a lot

8. We things when we put them in our mouths.

SB

- a. see b. smell c. taste d. hear

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Hassan eats (a lot) fava beans every day.

2. Dad got (any) food from the market.

3. (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.

SB

4. We haven't got (some) juice.

5. (Not) worry, everything will be all right.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

WB

"Your favourite meal"

(محب عنه قبل الاختبار)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's your favourite meal?
- Where did you find the recipe?
- How do you make it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- My favourite meal is
- I found the recipe
- I make it by
- I use to make this meal.



**New
Hello!**



Watch, listen and make

Objectives

Reading:

An Internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film

Writing:

A short review; a paragraph on a musician

Listening:

A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone

Speaking:

Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere

Language:

Talking about ability: *can, know how to and be able to*

Life Skills:

Collaboration; respect for diversity

Key Vocabulary



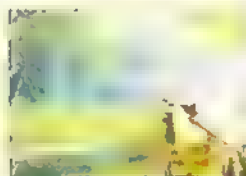
استمع إلى المفردات

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر)	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (الوجه إنسان)	free	مجاني / حر
pottery	أواني فخار	think (thought)	يعتقد
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	recommend (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح

Activities

painting scenery

رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»



sewing costumes

خياطة أزياء (ملابس)



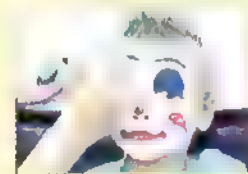
playing instruments

عزف على آلات موسيقية



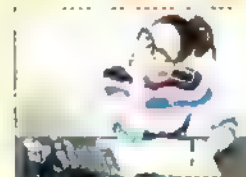
doing make-up

عمل تجميل (مكياج)



writing a script

كتابة نص (سيناريو)



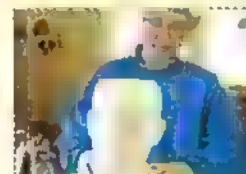
acting in a play

تمثيل في مسرحية



make sculptures

ينحت تماثيل



make pottery

يصنع أواني فخارية



take photos

يلتقط صور



do calligraphy

يدرس فن الخط





Vocabulary

concert hall	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	colourful	زاهى الألوان / كثير الألوان
theatre	مسرح	normal	عادى / طبيعى
end-of-year	نهاية العام	recommendation	توصية / ترشيح
drama club	نادى التمثيل	TV programme	برنامج تليفزيونى
review	مقال نقدى	ancient	قديم / ائرى
statue	تمثال	musical	موسيقى
painting	لوحة مرسومة	calligraphy	فن الخط
preference	تفضيل	act (ed)	يمثل (فى فيلم / مسرحية)
Islamic area	المنطقة الإسلامية	paint (ed)	يرسم / يلون
textile	نسيج		

Expressions & Prepositions

such as	على سبيل المثال	help with	يساعد فى
get ready	يستعد	(be) able to	قادر على
make me feel happy	يجعلنى أشعر بسعادة	the best at	الأفضل فى
It sounds fun.	يبدو ممتعاً	interested in	مهتم بـ
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما	famous for	مشهور بـ
talk to	يتحدث إلى	from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

pay	يدفع	paid	paid
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
sew	يخيط	sewed	sewed / sewn
show	يعرض	showed	shown
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Word

Meaning

Opposite

famous	مشهور	popular / well known	unknown	غير معروف
normal	عادى	ordinary	abnormal	غير عادى
ancient	قديم / ائرى	very old	modern	حديث



Definitions

cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري [ساخر]	a funny ⁽¹⁾ drawing usually showing people or animals	
costume	زى (ملابس لمناسبة خاصة)	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else	١- مضحك ٢- صلصال
script	نص مكتوب (سيناريو)	the words of a film or play which the actors learn	٣- اصباغ ٤- شئ
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	the type of art you need a camera to do	٥- خلفية ٦- خشبة المسرح
artist	رسام / فنان	a person who paints or draws for a job	٧- إبرة
free	مجاني	without paying money	٨- أداء
portrait	لوحة فنية (الوجه [إنسان])	a painting or photograph of a person's face	
pottery	أواني فخار	things that are made from clay ⁽²⁾ , such as cups and plates ⁽³⁾	
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things	
cool	رائع	great, fantastic	
Instrument	آلة موسيقية	an object ⁽⁴⁾ that is used for playing music	
make-up	تجميل (مكياج)	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different	
recommend	يوصي بـ / يشرح	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it	
scenery	خلفية لخشبة المسرح	the painted background ⁽⁵⁾ of a theatre stage ⁽⁶⁾	
sew	يخيط	join two pieces of material together using a metal needle ⁽⁷⁾	
show	عرض	a play or performance ⁽⁸⁾ for people to watch	



Language Notes

① time / times

• time (n)

وقت (لا يعد)

Ex. What's the time?

• times

مرات / عصور

Ex. I have seen that film three times.

Ex. The pyramids were built in ancient times.

② clothes / costume

• clothes (n)

ملابس (جمع دائماً)

Ex. This shop sells expensive clothes.

• costume (n) زي ترتديه للبدو في هيئة معينة في مناسبة معينة (حفلة/مسرحية)

Ex. The clown is wearing a colourful costume.

③ scenery / scene / view

• scenery (n) منظر طبيعي (الاسم لا يُعد) (تستخدم للحديث عن خلفية خشبة المسرح / الأماكن الطبيعية التي تراها من حولك وخاصة عندما تكون جميلة)

Ex. The scenery behind the actors of the play was wonderful.

Ex. They drive slowly down the road to enjoy the scenery.

• scene (n) مشهد في مسرحية / موقع جريمة (الاسم يُعد)

Ex. The final scene of the play was very funny.

Ex. The police arrived at the scene of the crime.

• view (n) مشهد / منظر (الاسم يُعد)

(تستخدم للحديث عن الأشياء التي يمكن أن تراها من مكان ما)

Ex. The view of the Nile from the Cairo Tower is fantastic..

④ help

• help + object مفعول + (to) + inf. يساعد أن

Ex. I helped my mother (to) make the birthday cake.

يمكن أن نستخدم (to) بعد المفعول أو نحذفها

• help with + اسم يساعد في

Ex. Will you help me with my homework?

⑤ cartoon / carton

• cartoon رسم كاريكاتيري (رسم ساخر) / فيلم كارتون

Ex. This magazine includes funny cartoons.

Ex. Mickey Mouse is a cartoon character.

• carton عبوة من ورق مقوى (كرتونة)

Ex. This carton contains some books.

Ex. We need to buy a carton of eggs.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What _____ do you get up?
a. times b. time c. timing d. a time
- The actors are wearing colourful _____
a. costumes b. instruments c. customs d. scenes
- This painting shows a lovely _____ of the sea coast.
a. scene b. scenery c. review d. tool
- Jana helped a blind man _____ the street.
a. crossed b. to crossing c. crosses d. cross
- My kids like Disney _____ characters.
a. cartoon b. cart c. carton d. car



Reading

SB page (23)

استمع إلى اللصوص



Habiba

Mrs Medhat says we can have an end-of-year **show**⁽¹⁾! It will be about the **play**⁽²⁾ we read in the English class. I'm very **excited**⁽³⁾, but I need help! Can anyone **act**⁽⁴⁾ or write **scripts**⁽⁵⁾? We also need people who are able to do **make-up**⁽⁶⁾, **sew*** **costumes**⁽⁷⁾, **paint scenery**⁽⁸⁾ and **play instruments**⁽⁹⁾.

Cool! I can talk to the people at **drama club**⁽¹⁰⁾ about **acting**⁽¹¹⁾.

Lamar



Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!



Azza

YES!! I can do make-up.



Lara



I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia?



Manal

Yes, I can play the music! **It sounds fun**⁽¹²⁾. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script?

Talia



Habiba



OK, I can try to write something... You are all amazing!!! Thanks so much!



تتطابق هذه الكلمة مثل نطق كلمة **go** مع اختلاف نطق الحرف الأول (g) **sew**

Review⁽¹⁾ of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

By Wagdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art⁽²⁾ in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art⁽³⁾, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries⁽⁴⁾.

From my point of view, the artists⁽⁵⁾ were really good because they showed⁽⁶⁾ what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits⁽⁷⁾ of both important and normal⁽⁸⁾ Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons⁽⁹⁾ were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures⁽¹⁰⁾, both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting⁽¹¹⁾ called *Al Madina* by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful⁽¹²⁾.

The best thing about the museum is that it is free⁽¹³⁾ to visit! I recommend⁽¹⁴⁾ visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.



- ١- مقال نقدي
- ٢- متحف الفن المصري المعاصر
- ٣- فن قديم
- ٤- قرن [١٠٠ عام]
- ٥- رسامين / فنانين
- ٦- عروضاً
- ٧- لوحات فنية (لوجه إنسان)
- ٨- عادي
- ٩- رسم كاريكاتيري
- ١٠- منحوتات
- ١١- لوحة فنية
- ١٢- زاهي الألوان
- ١٣- مجاني
- ١٤- يوصى بـ

Say it correctly

* sculpture

ينطق حرف **u** الأول في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة **cup** وينطق المقطع **ture** مثلما ينطق في كلمة **nature**

Review of the Textile Museum In Cairo

by Injy Zaki

Last month, I visited the Textile Museum⁽¹⁾ in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times⁽²⁾ in history. I thought⁽³⁾ the clothes from Ancient Egypt⁽⁴⁾ were fantastic. From my point of view, the statues⁽⁵⁾ showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past. My favourite⁽⁶⁾ thing was the Islamic⁽⁷⁾ area where you can see different kinds of calligraphy⁽⁸⁾. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, such as Iran⁽⁹⁾. They are very interesting. If you want to take photos, it is a good idea⁽¹⁰⁾ to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark⁽¹¹⁾.



- ١- متحف النسيج
- ٢- عصور
- ٣- اعتقدت
- ٤- مصر القديمة
- ٥- تماثيل
- ٦- مفضل
- ٧- إسلامي
- ٨- فن الخط
- ٩- دولة إيران
- ١٠- فكرة
- ١١- مظلم إلى حد ما

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. My favourite hobby is _____, I have a good camera. لديك 2024
 a. painting b. drawing c. sewing d. photography
2. The flute is a musical _____. الدفوف 2024
 a. tool b. instrument c. machine d. band
3. It took her a long time to be able to _____ costumes. أخميم 2024
 a. do b. sew c. see d. say
4. The opposite of famous is _____. خفر داود 2024
 a. popular b. known c. weird d. unknown
5. My mother is good at _____ costumes. الزوت بغيرا 2024
 a. cooking b. sewing c. baking d. growing
6. Mayar is very happy because she is going to _____ in a play next summer. نصبا العدة 2024
 a. add b. act c. make d. save
7. Sara is good at _____ make-up. القاهرة 2024
 a. giving b. making c. doing d. having
8. He was very _____ when he won the first prize. أسر 2024
 a. annoyed b. sad c. ancient d. excited
9. My dress is damaged, so my mother is _____ it. نصبا العدة 2024 **WB**
 a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
10. There are many amazing _____ of people in this museum. نصبا العدة 2024
 a. sculptures b. pottery c. scripts d. views
11. A _____ is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals. **WB**
 a. cartoon b. costume c. script d. carton
12. The children all wore funny _____ to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter! الطيرة 2024 **WB**
 a. contents b. costumes c. concerts d. customs
13. Which _____ can you play? **WB**
 a. device b. tool c. instrument d. concert

14. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her WB
 a. scenery b. museum c. wake up d. make-up
15. A is the words for a play. بلى سوف 2023
 a. trip b. step c. script d. scenery
16. A/An is a person who draws or paints as a job. إدارة نو المرسى 2023
 a. vet b. cartoon c. artist d. scientist
17. The which the actors are wearing are wonderful. إدارة صوح 2023
 a. costumes b. instruments c. customs d. scenes
18. means without paying money. إدارة رشيد 2023
 a. Tree b. Free c. See d. Be

Bit by Bit Exercises

19. The starts at 10:00 p.m. on Channel Two today.
 a. show b. portrait c. sculpture d. check
20. The art museum includes sculptures, and paintings.
 a. pottery b. poetry c. century d. country
21. You don't need to pay for this pen. It is
 a. busy b. free c. expensive d. cheap
22. This magazine has lots of funny
 a. cartons b. carpets c. carts d. cartoons
23. Osama painted a fantastic of his wife's face.
 a. costume b. portrait c. show d. sculpture
24. My father will take us to the funfair next month. It fun.
 a. talks b. acts c. plays d. sounds



Language

Ability

القدرة

Affirmative

الإثبات

• للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

مصدر الفعل + **can + inf.** + فاعل

know(s) how to + inf. + فاعل

am/is/are able to + inf. + فاعل

Ex. I **can paint** scenery.

Ex. Ola **knows how to write** scripts.

Ex. The girls **are able to sew** costumes.

Negative التنفي

• للتعبير عن عدم القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

مصدر الفعل + **can't (cannot) + inf.** فاعلفاعل + **don't / doesn't know how to + inf.**فاعل + **am not / isn't / aren't able to + inf.**Ex. I **can't** do make-up.Ex. Ola **doesn't** know how to play instruments.Ex. The girls **aren't** able to act.Question السؤال

• للسؤال عن القدرة في المضارع نستخدم الصيغ الآتية:

.....? مصدر الفعل + **Can + inf.** فاعل**Do/Does + فاعل + know how to + inf. ..?****Am/Is/Are + فاعل + able to + inf. ..?**Ex. **Can** you do make-up?Ex. **Does** Ola know how to play instruments?Ex. **Are** the girls **able to** act?Exercises تمارين on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Ahmed and I how to speak English well.

- a. knows b. know c. known d. knowing

2. She is a bad actor. She to act.

- a. able b. isn't able c. can d. can't

3. She is seven years old, but she to read yet.

- a. can b. can't c. isn't able d. could

4. I don't to cook rice.

- a. know how b. able c. can d. can't

5. Mariam and I know sew costumes.

- a. how b. by c. how to d. on

6. My friend is blind. He to see.

- a. is able b. can't c. can d. is not able

7. I cannot believe that you say these words. It is easy.

- a. aren't able to b. can c. know how to d. don't know

8. My little cousin play the guitar.

- a. can b. able to c. knows d. don't

القاهرة 2024

9. Soha knows cook meat.

- a. how b. how to c. able to d. too

القاهرة 2024

10. you able to speak French? Yes, I am.

- a. Can b. Were c. Are d. Do

الغربية 2024

11. Ayman able to play basketball. He's very tall.

- a. are b. can c. is d. will

البحر - وادي البحريون 2022

12. Do you know to use a computer?

- a. what b. who c. how d. which

WB

13. you able to speak French?

- a. Do b. Can c. Can't d. Are

WB إدارة بورس 2023

14. A: you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do.

- a. Do b. Are c. Is d. Does

SB

15. We travel to another country without a passport.

- a. can b. are able to c. can't d. know how

إدارة صوح 2023

16. I talk to people at the drama club about acting.

- a. Is able to b. can c. am able d. able

إدارة أبو حماد 2023

17. you able to carry the heavy box?

- a. Do b. Is c. Are d. Can

إدارة ببا 2023

18. I know how a review about a story.

- a. writing b. writes c. wrote d. to write

إدارة ابدرستى 2023

Bit by Bit Exercises

19. your father able to drive a car?

- a. Does b. Are c. Is d. Can

20. Hens have got wings, but they fly.

- a. can't b. able to c. can d. aren't able

21. My sister how to cook. She is too young.

- a. can't b. isn't c. doesn't know d. knows

22. I able to play well today. I trained well yesterday.

- a. can b. can't c. know how d. am

23. A: you able to swim? B: No, I'm not, but I can play tennis.

- a. Can b. Are c. Do d. Is

24. This artist how to paint scenery.

- a. can't b. can c. is able d. knows

25. She is able her bedroom. Don't help her.

- a. to tidy b. tidying c. to tidying d. tidy

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. (Be) you able to make a plan?

الشرق الأوسط 2024

2. The child isn't (can) to wear his shoes alone.

3. I (be) able to ride a bike.

4. The mechanic knows how (fixing) cars.

5. (Be) you able to do sport?

الشرق الأوسط 2024

6. Razan is (can) read English.

القاهرة 2024

7. (Be) your brother able to drive a car?

8. A clever student knows how (pass) an exam easily.

9. He (doesn't) able to use this computer.

10. I can (playing) the guitar.

البحيرة - شمال البحيرة 2022

11. A firefighter (are) able to stop fires.

WB

12. Yousef (can) do exercise because he is too ill.

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. Do you know how (use) the internet?

14. Are you (ability) to understand this lesson?

Speaking

1) Asking and answering about ability

السؤال والإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

A: Can you + inf.? هل تستطيع أن؟	B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.
A: Do you know how to + inf.? هل تعرف كيف؟	B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
A: Are you able to + inf.? هل أنت قادر على؟	B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can

• ارجع الى الشرح بالتفصيل في جزء القواعد اللغوية.

2) Talking about preferences

الحدث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v-ing	أفضل
- I'd rather + inf.	أفضل أن
- My favourite (thing) is	أفضل (شيء) لى هو
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n	أنا مهتم بـ

Ex. Watching a film is a good idea, but I prefer (watching) a play.

Ex. I'd rather stay at home tonight.

Ex. My favourite sport is football.

3) Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب وإعطاء توصيات

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالاتي:

- Would you recommend + v-ing / n?	هل توصي بـ / ترشح؟
- What do you recommend + v-ing?	ماذا توصي بـ / ترشح؟

Ex. Would you recommend an action film or an adventure film?

Ex. What do you recommend reading, a book or a magazine?

• لإعطاء توصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) + فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n	أوصي أن
- The best thing about is that	أفضل شيء عن هو أن
- It's a good idea to + inf	إنها الفكرة جيدة أن

Ex. I recommend that we watch an action film.

Ex. I recommend (visiting) the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art.

Ex. It's a good idea to watch Oliver Twist.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy is talking about his favourite football player.

Magdy : What sport do you prefer to practise, Samy?

Samy : ①

Magdy : ② ?

Samy : My favourite footballer is Mohammed Salah.

Magdy : ③ ?

Samy : Because he always smiles and he is friendly, too.

Magdy : Does he play for Egypt?

Samy : ④

Magdy : ⑤

Samy : You are right, we should do our best to be like him.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

- This artist makes fantastic using stone and wood.
a. calligraphy b. photos c. drama d. sculptures
- Mum asked my sister to help her the housework.
a. at b. on c. with d. about
- The is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains! **WB**
a. century b. scenery c. make-up d. costume
- are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else. **WB**
a. Costumes b. Scripts c. Cartoons d. Artists
- I want to know how to clothes in the holidays. **البصرة - البصرة 2022**
a. cook b. sew c. sing d. think
- I you this film to watch. **إدارة شرق ليبيا 2023**
a. request b. decide c. recommend d. invite
- This famous paints nice portraits.
a. player b. actor c. artist d. archaeologist

Exercises on Language

- When I was ten, I was able to ? **إدارة لمطرية 2023**
a. swim b. swimming c. swims d. swam

9. I recommend this restaurant.

- a. visit b. to visit c. visiting d. to visiting

الحيرة - شمال الجزيرة 2022

10. Amany do her English homework alone.

- a. can b. are able to c. know how to d. able to

11. Mum how to make cakes at home. We don't buy any.

- a. is able to b. can c. knows d. know

12. Do you know this mobile?

- a. fix b. how fix c. how to fixing d. how to fix

المبوية - السادات 2022

13. A film star knows how well.

- a. to act b. acting c. act d. acts

WB

14. The team to win this game.

- a. can b. able c. is able d. know

إدارة ولدا القمح 2023

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I recommend (plays) football in a club.

البحيرة 2021

2. (Are) your father able to lift this heavy weight?

البحيرة 2022

3. My father can (repairs) things easily.

4. Samy can (did) karate.

القليوبية - قها 2022

5. Can you (sewing)?

WB

6. Maher is able (play) musical instruments.

WB

7. (Able) you play football or tennis?

WB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on: WB

(محادثة، مقال في أحد الموضوعات)

A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- When did you visit the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?

- What's it famous for?

- Why were the artists really good?

- What was your favourite thing?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Last week, I visited - It's famous for

- The artists were really good because

- My favourite thing is



استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	concert	حفل موسيقى
musician	موسيقيار	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفي / يختفي
blind	كفيف (اعمى)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
deaf	اصم (اطرش)	cry (ied)	يبكى
disabled	معاق / من ذوي الهمم	hug (ged) (n)	يعانق (يحضن) / عناق
play	مسرحية		

Musical instruments

violin
آلة الكمان



piano
آلة البيانو



flute
آلة الناي



clarinet
آلة المزمار



guitar
آلة الجيتار



trumpet
آلة البوق



cello
آلة التشيللو



trombone
آلة الترمبون



Vocabulary

object	شيء	relationship	علاقة
wheelchair	كرسي متحرك (للمعاقين)	rival	منافس / ند
stairs	درجات السلم	painter	رسام
character	شخصية (في رواية)	proud	فخور
newspaper / a paper	جريدة	recently	حديثاً - مؤخرًا

traffic lights	إشارة المرور (جمع دأفأ)	difficulties	صعوبات
Braille	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	practise (d)	يمارس
special school	مدرسة لأفوف الهمم	imagine (d)	يتخيل
classical	كلاسيكي / قديم	shout (ed)	يصيح / يصرخ
strange	غريب	join (ed)	يلضم إلى / يلتحق بـ
radio reporter	مراسل إذاعي	reply (ied)	يرد
skill	مهارة		

Expressions & Prepositions

play music	يعزف موسيقى	on public transport	في المواصلات العامة
have difficulties	لدية صعوبات	in a wheelchair	على كرسي متحرك
give a hug	يعانق (يضم)	come into	يدخل إلى
make notes	يدون ملاحظات	throwdown	يلقي بـ ... أرضاً
have a good relationship	لديه علاقة جيدة	hide behind	يختبئ خلف
read music with hands	يقراء موسيقى باستخدام الأيدي	proud of	فخور بـ
practise instruments	يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية	jump up	يقفز لأعلى
		at the end	في النهاية
		shout at	يصيح على

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

find	يجد
leave	يغادر - يترك
throw....down	يلقي أرضاً

found
left
threw down

found
left
thrown down

Word

Meaning

Opposite

special	خاص / مميز	particular	ordinary	عادي
hide	يختفي	disappear	appear	يظهر
classical	كلاسيكي / قديم	traditional	modern	حديث



Definitions

wonder	يتساءل	think about something and want to know why it is true	
hide	يخفي / يختفي	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found	
cry	يبكي	produce water from your eyes usually because you are sad, angry or hurt	
hug	يعانق	to put your arms around someone and hold them closely , usually because you love them	
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	not able to see	١- الأذراعين
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	not able to hear	٢- عن قرب
disabled	معاق	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can	
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together	
musician	موسيقي	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job	



Language Notes

① feel / fall / fill / fail

• feel (felt / felt)

يشعر

Ex. How do you **feel** when your father hugs you?

• fill (ed)

يملأ

Ex. Mona **filled** her bag with books.

• fall

سقط

يسقط / يقع

Ex. Snow began to **fall** from the sky

• fail (ed)

يفشل / يرسب

Ex. He **failed** his maths test.

② start + v-ing / to + Inf.

يأتي بعد الفعل (start) إما (to + inf.) أو (v-ing) بدون فارق في المعنى

Ex. She sat down and **started to read** / **reading** the story.

③ paper

• a paper = a newspaper (جريدة (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Many people like to read **papers** / **newspapers**.

• paper

ورق (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. We use **paper** in writing letters.

4) must + be

تستخدم (must + be) بمعنى (الابد وأنه ... / من المؤكد أنه....) لعمل استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع.

Ex. It **must be** very difficult to read music with your hands.

5) the + adj

علما نضع (the) أمام بعض الصفات فإنها تفيد الاسم الجمع ممن يتصفون بهذه الصفة.

blind	كفيف (اعمى)	→	the blind	المكفوفين
deaf	أصم (اطرش)	→	the deaf	الصم
disabled	معاق	→	the disabled	المعاقين / ذوي الهمم
poor	فقير	→	the poor	الفقراء

6) orchestra / band

• orchestra (اوركسترا)
(مجموعة كبيرة من العازفين لموسيقى كلاسيكية.)

Ex. I play the flute in an **orchestra** in the Opera House.

• band
(فرقة موسيقية (تعزف موسيقى شعبية)

Ex. There was a nice **band** in my sister's wedding.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I happy when I get high marks in my exams.
a. fill b. fall c. feel d. fail
- After dinner, I started TV.
a. to watch b. to watching c. watch d. watched
- A reporter wrote about the accident in a daily
a. papers b. pipe c. pepper d. paper
- He always gets high marks. He clever.
a. mustn't be b. must be c. won't be d. can't be
- should help poor people.
a. Rich b. A rich c. The rich d. Riches
- This plays lovely pop music.
a. band b. bomb c. pond d. tool



Audioscript

SB Page (26)

استمع إلى النصوص



Radio reporter⁽¹⁾:

Today I'm visiting a very **special** school in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their **normal** subjects in the morning and then **practise** their instruments in the afternoon.



Many of the students at this school **join** an **orchestra** called the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays **concerts** in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are **blind**!

The orchestra plays international **music** and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music using **Braille**, a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the **musicians**.

١- مراسل إذاعي

٢- خاص

٣- معتاد

٤- يمارس

٥- ينضم إلى

٦- أوركسترا (فرقة

موسيقية)

٧- حفلات موسيقية

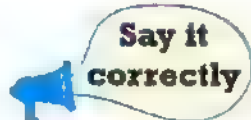
٨- كفيف (اعمى)

٩- كلاسيكي

١٠- طريقة برايل

للمكفوفين

١١- موسيقيين



ينطق المقطع الملون من هذه الكلمة مثل نطق المقطع (ion) + musician

WB Page (86)

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo. Eman Badr is one of the **musicians**. She is able to play the **violin** very well. She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. **Recently**, she visited **Qatar** and France with the orchestra.

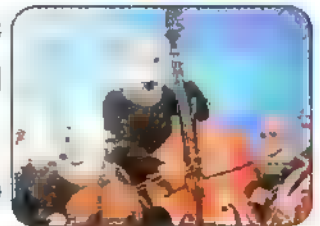
I think the orchestra is **amazing**. It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

١- آلة لكمان

٢- حديثاً

٣- دولة عُمان

٤- مدهش





Reading

SB page (28)

Little Women By Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were sewing when Jo came into⁽¹⁾ the room with a newspaper⁽²⁾. She sat down and started to read it.

"Anything interesting?" asked Meg.

"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.

"What's it called?"⁽³⁾ asked Beth. She wondered⁽⁴⁾ why Jo was hiding behind⁽⁵⁾ the newspaper.

"It's called *The Rival Painters*⁽⁶⁾," said Jo.

"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.

Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was crying⁽⁷⁾ a little.

"Isn't it strange⁽⁸⁾ that the characters⁽⁹⁾ are called two of our favourite names?"

Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.

Jo jumped up, threw the paper down⁽¹⁰⁾ and said, "Your sister!"

"You?" shouted⁽¹¹⁾ Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.

"I knew it! I knew it! Oh, I am so proud⁽¹²⁾!" said Beth, hugging⁽¹³⁾ her sister.



- ١- يدخل إلى
- ٢- جريدة
- ٣- ما اسمها؟
- ٤- يتساءل
- ٥- تختبئ خلف
- ٦- الرسامون
- المتنافسون
- ٧- تكي
- ٨- غريب
- ٩- شخصيات
- ١٠- ألقت بالجريدة أرضاً
- ١١- صاحت
- ١٢- فخور
- ١٣- تعانق

Say it correctly

* wonder ينطق حرف (O) في هذه الكلمة مثل نطق حرف (U) في كلمة {cup}

Videoscript

SB Page (27)

Narrator:

Can you sing⁽¹⁾? Do you know to dance? Perhaps you can act⁽²⁾. But are you able to sing and act at the same time? Actors⁽³⁾ who appear⁽⁴⁾ in opera⁽⁵⁾ can do all of these things. An opera is a type of play⁽⁶⁾ in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special 'theatre' called an opera house⁽⁷⁾, like this famous one in Sydney.

There are many famous operas, such as *Carmen*, *The Barber of Seville* and *Tosca*. Opera singers such as *Maria Callas*, *Placido*

- ١- يغنى
- ٢- يمثل
- ٣- ممثلون
- ٤- يظهر
- ٥- الأوبرا
- ٦- مسرحية
- ٧- مسرح
- ٨- دار الأوبرا

Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti are able to sing really well.

Giuseppe Verdi was an Italian who wrote some important operas in the 19th century. One of his most famous operas is called *Aida*.

Aida is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier⁽⁹⁾ who loves a princess⁽¹⁰⁾. It was first performed⁽¹¹⁾ at the *Khedivia Opera House* in *Cairo*⁽¹²⁾ in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world.

It was destroyed⁽¹³⁾ in a fire⁽¹⁴⁾ in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the *Cairo Opera House*. This is a beautiful building on *Gezira Island*.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances⁽¹⁵⁾, such as *ballet*⁽¹⁶⁾ or music.

Do you like opera?

٩- چندی

١٠- أميرة

١١- يؤدي

١٢- دار الأوبرا الخديوية

بالقاهرة

١٣- يدمر

١٤- حريق

١٥- عروض مسرحية

١٦- باليه

Exercises on Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- Many people read the music using Braille. مدى 2024
a. deaf b. mute c. strange d. blind
- My sister likes playing musical شرق طنطا 2024
a. costumers b. instruments c. uniforms d. shows
- Sara opened her arms and gave her mother a big مسند مصر 2021
a. harm b. half c. hug d. huge
- Your marks are good. I why you are sad. البحر 2024
a. wander b. agree c. expect d. wonder
- A person is the person who can't hear. لبنان 2023 WB
a. blind b. fast c. tall d. deaf
- My little sister started to after she fell and hurt her hand. WB
a. smile b. hide c. laugh d. cry
- Lara always gives her grandmother a big when she sees her. WB
a. skill b. fire c. hug d. concert
- The is my favourite musical instrument. البحر 2022
a. carriage b. ruler c. violin d. hammer
- A person is the person who is not able to see. WB
a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
- The violin, the piano and the guitar are musical شرق مصر لدمية 2023
a. tools b. instruments c. machines d. materials
- He had a terrible accident that left him حدائق الغنم 2023
a. disabled b. messy c. happy d. noisy

12. My sister is a/an in the orchestra. إدارة التدريس 2023
 a. pair b. musician c. owner d. musical
13. Try to help people by solving the problems that they have. إدارة التدريس 2023
 a. sleepy b. lazy c. disabled d. brave
14. Ahmed was behind the door, so as not to be seen. إدارة التدريس 2023
 a. hiding b. escaping c. coming d. playing

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Samah played the cello in the last night.
 a. court b. country c. century d. concert
16. We have a good with our neighbours.
 a. relative b. relationship c. transport d. difficulty
17. Amr likes to play the guitar in a large
 a. character b. orchestra c. object d. musician
18. The opposite of "hide" is
 a. disappear b. leave c. appear d. disobey
19. He can't walk, so he uses a
 a. chair b. wheel c. wheelchair d. mirror
20. I how the ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids.
 a. wander b. promise c. advise d. wonder
21. The robbers went behind the building to from the policemen.
 a. hide b. show c. hit d. appear
22. The trumpet and are musical instruments.
 a. trombone b. tram c. tomb d. team
23. He is a famous He plays music in a big orchestra.
 a. magician b. architect c. musician d. dentist

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

مركز امتحانات 2024

Mohammad asks Ahmed about his favourite hobby.

Mohammad : What is your favourite hobby, Ahmed?

Ahmed : ①

Mohammad : What musical instruments do you play?

Ahmed : ②

Mohammad : ③ ?

Ahmed : I started playing the violin last year.

Mohammad : ④ ?

Ahmed : No, it's very easy to play.

Mohammad : Could you teach me how to play?

Ahmed : ⑤ Let's start tomorrow.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The girl is She can't hear you. البدريش 2023
 a. blind b. deaf c. strong d. rich
2. The guitar is a musical مينا الفمخ 2023
 a. instrument b. tool c. show d. concert
3. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started مينا الفمخ 2022
 a. hiding b. laughing c. crying d. wondering
4. Al Nour Wal Amal is amazing. It plays nice music. مينا الفمخ 2022
 a. orchestra b. reporter c. object d. game
5. To get a good job, you should have many مينا الفمخ 2022
 a. skulls b. skills c. scales d. score
6. A/An person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can. مخامخه العربيه 2023 WB
 a. excited b. delighted c. interested d. disabled
7. The company put many advertisements in the
 a. carton b. paper c. box d. notebook
8. Nada her father when he gave her a new mobile.
 a. hugged b. hated c. hanged d. harmed
9. My cousin is He uses sign language.
 a. blind b. tired c. strong d. deaf

3 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

WB

to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com
- Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com

(مجاوب عليه في آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Who is the person you're proud of?
- What does he / she do?
- Is he/she famous?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm so proud of
- He / she is a famous
- Many people know him/her

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

theme park	متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	adventure film / story	فيلم / قصة مغامرات
action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدي	escape (d)	يهرب

Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	star (n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه / موقف سيارات	park (v - ed)	يركن سيارة



Vocabulary

actor	ممثل	reviewer	ناقد
invitation	دعوة (المناسبة)	main	رئيسي
request	طلب	picnic	نزهة في الهواء الطلق
offer	عرض	table tennis	لعبة تنس الطاولة
information	معلومات	wonderland	أرض العجائب
event	حدث هام	schoolboys	طلاب مدرسة
dinosaur	ديناصور	recycle (d)	يعيد تصنيع / يعيد تدوير
exciting	مثير	die (d)	يموت
scary	مخيف	land (ed)	يهبط
real	حقيقي / واقعي		

Expressions & Prepositions

present a summary	يقدم ملخص	nearly dark	شبه مظلم
look very real	يبدو واقعي جداً	How's it going?	كيف تجري الأمور؟
make a film	يصنع فيلماً	instead of	بدلاً من
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	on the radio	في الراديو
See you then!	أراك حينها.	live on an island	يعيش على جزيرة
enjoy his time	يستمتع بوقته	from the top of.....	من على قمة.....
stop fires	يطفئ حرائق	think about	يفكر في

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

bring

يُحضِر

brought

brought

ride

يركب (دراجة / آلة)

rode

ridden

Meaning

Opposite

real

واقعي / حقيقي

true

unreal

غير واقعي / غير حقيقي

exciting

مثير / شيق

interesting

boring

ممل

main

أساسي / رئيسي

major

minor

غير أساسي



Definitions

action

أحداث (فيلم / رواية)

the things that happen in a film

١- يقدم

٢- آلات

escape

يهرب

- leave a place that you should stay in
- succeed in leaving a place where you
don't want to be

٣- يركب (آلة)

٤- تجربة حياتية

review

مقال نقد

present a summary, opinion and recommendation of a film,
book or play

theme park

متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)

a large park that you usually pay to go in, with big machines
to ride on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc.

adventure

مغامرة

an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience

adventure film

فيلم مغامرات

a film that has a lot of exciting events



Language Notes

① ride / drive

• ride (rode / ridden)

يركب (آلة - حيوان - دراجة)

Ex. The children like riding the wheel in
the theme park.

Ex. Tarek always rides his bike to school.

• drive (drove / driven)

يقود (سيارة مثلاً)

Ex. Do you know how to drive your
father's car?

② enjoy

• enjoy + V-ing / Noun

يستمتع بـ

Ex. I enjoy (reading) adventure stories.

3) scary / scared

• scary (adj)

مخيف

Ex. This film is about **scary** dinosaurs.

• scared (adj)

خائف / مرعوب

Ex. Noura always feels **scared** of insects.

4) nearly / nearby

• nearly (adv)

تقريباً

Ex. I **nearly** finished my homework.

• nearby (adj)

قريب

Ex. My father works in a **nearby** school.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Can you a bike, Ayman?
a. drive b. wave c. ride d. read
- Children usually enjoy cartoons.
a. watch b. to watch c. to watching d. watching
- I couldn't sleep after I watching film.
a. scary b. scared c. funny d. nice
- Amira is 13 years old now.
a. near b. nearby c. nearly d. rarely



Audioscript

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص



Rawia : Hi, Warda!

Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going?⁽¹⁾

Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you?

Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was **wondering** if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film?

Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch *Little Women*?

Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I bring some drinks or **snacks**?⁽³⁾

Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some **fruit juice**?⁽⁴⁾

Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come?

Warda : About 7 p.m?

Rawia : Great! See you then.



١- كيف الأحوال؟

٢- اتساءل

٣- وجبات خفيفة

٤- عصير فواكه

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were **busy**⁽¹⁾ tonight.

١- مشغول
٢- فكرة جيدة

Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why?

Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music?

Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything?

Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too?

Omar : **Good idea**⁽²⁾! What time should I come?

Sami : About 8 p.m. See you then!



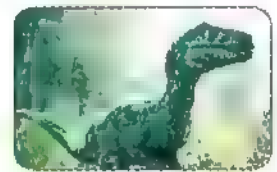
Reading

SB P. (30)

A review⁽¹⁾ of Jurassic World

_____ is an _____. The **stars**⁽²⁾ of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a **theme park**⁽³⁾ where _____ have helped **dinosaurs**⁽⁴⁾ to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs _____. What will happen?

I thought the _____ was _____ and my favourite thing was the _____ dinosaurs; they look very **real**⁽⁵⁾. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I **recommend** this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.



- ١- مقال نقدي
- ٢- العالم الجوارسي (المن وجود الديناصورات)
- ٣- فيلم مغامرات
- ٤- نجوم سينما
- ٥- متنزه ترفيهي «مدينة ملاهي»
- ٦- علماء
- ٧- ديناصورات
- ٨- يهرب
- ٩- أحداث فيلم / رواية
- ١٠- مثير
- ١١- مخيف
- ١٢- حقيقي / واقعي

Salem : Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

Nader : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it?

Salem : Yes, he's got _____ in the garden. Would you like to play?

Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls?

Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food? We'll have a **picnic**⁽¹⁾.

Nader : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come?

Salem : We're leaving my house at 10 a.m.

Nader : Great! See you then.

- ١- لعبة تليس الطاولة
- ٢- نزهة في الهواء الطلق

A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies⁽¹⁾ is an adventure story⁽²⁾. It is by the British writer⁽³⁾ William Golding.

It is about some schoolboys⁽⁴⁾ who have to live on an island⁽⁵⁾ after their plane lands⁽⁶⁾ in the sea and the pilot⁽⁷⁾ dies. How will the boys live on the island, and will they escape?

I thought the action was exciting and many amazing⁽⁸⁾ things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion⁽⁹⁾, some of the children are horrible⁽¹⁰⁾ and I did not like them.

I recommend the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.



- ١- أمير الذباب «اسم رواية»
- ٢- قصة مغامرات
- ٣- كاتب بريطاني
- ٤- طلاب مدرسة
- ٥- جزيرة
- ٦- تعبط
- ٧- طيار
- ٨- مدهش
- ٩- في رأيي
- ١٠- فظيخ / سيء جدًا

Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. We should all our plastic to use again. (مراجعة 2024)
 a. damage b. recycle c. burn d. throw
2. I don't like watching films. I really feel frightened. (استعراض 2024)
 a. funny b. comic c. scary d. historic
3. The things that happen in a film are called (سينما الحكومة 2024)
 a. pottery b. portrait c. sculpture d. actions
4. To means to leave a place that you should stay in. (مغادرة 2024)
 a. paint b. escape c. sew d. review
5. I read a film to know what the film is about. (المسرح 2024)
 a. review b. view c. interview d. revision
6. Don't your car outside the school. WB
 a. bark b. land c. mark d. park

7. is the things that happen in a film. WB
 a. Action b. Nation c. Review d. Picnic
8. Let's go to the I want to play and fly our kites. إدارة سند 2023
 a. work b. bank c. park d. market
9. Every night I see a lot of in the sky. إدارة سند 2023
 a. stars b. reviews c. parks d. picnics
10. The actor became a after he was in that famous film. WB
 a. thief b. star c. park d. review
11. A park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc. WB
 a. thin b. same c. scene d. theme
12. The lions in the zoo were very النسبة 2022
 a. scary b. proud c. difficult d. friendly
- Bit by Bit Exercises**
13. The scenery in this painting looks very I like it.
 a. real b. horrible c. scared d. boring
14. Policemen were everywhere, so the thief wasn't able to
 a. park b. present c. offer d. escape
15. The big wheel is a wonderful machine you can at the funfair.
 a. drive b. read c. ride d. land
16. I will my friends to my house for dinner.
 a. die b. invite c. invent d. recycle
17. I have read a of an adventure film. It showed that it is a good film.
 a. star b. park c. picnic d. review
18. I want to live an island with my family.
 a. about b. off c. on d. form
19. I think the thief from the policemen.
 a. invited b. recycled c. enjoyed d. escaped
20. Many people like to watch films.
 a. memory b. adventure c. invitation d. rough
21. I hope we will our time at the park tomorrow.
 a. recycle b. escape c. enjoy d. invite

Speaking

1) Making invitations

نقديم الدعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. اريد ان ادعوك إلى
- I'd like you to + inf. اريدك ان
- Would you like to + inf.? هل تريد ان
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. كنت اتساءل إذا كنت تريد ان

- I'd love to. احب ذلك.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible. أسف، سيكون ذلك غير ممكن.
- That / It sounds great. (ذلك) يبدو رائعاً.	- I'd love to, but I can't because اود ذلك، ولكني لن أستطيع لأن
- OK, with pleasure. حسناً، بكل سرور.	

Ex. A : I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.

B : I'd love to. / I'm afraid. It won't be possible.

2) Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن وانداء الرأي

• نسال عن الرأي كالاتي:

- Do you think (that)? هل تعتقد (أن).....؟
- What do you think of / about? ما رأيك في.....؟
- What is your view of / about? ما هي وجهة نظرك في.....؟

• للتعبير عن الرأي نقول:

- In my view,...../ From my point of view..... من وجهة نظري.....
- In my opinion, في رأيي.....
- I think اعتقد
- No, I don't think so. لا، لا اعتقد ذلك.

Ex. A: What do you think about the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art?

B: In my view, the paintings are really good.

3) Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf.? هلا؟
 - Would you like me to + inf.? هل تريدني أن؟

Ex. Shall I bring some food for the picnic?

Ex. Would you like me to play music?

4) Making requests

تقديم الطلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf.? هل يمكنك أن؟
 - I was wondering if you could + inf. كنت أتساءل هل يمكنك أن؟

Ex. Could you bring some food for the picnic?

Ex. I was wondering if you could bring some food for the picnic.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1) Complete the following dialogue:

الحيرة - مشيه القاطر 2024

Habiba is talking to Shahd who went to the Egyptian Museum yesterday.

Habiba : Hello, Shahd. How are you?

Shahd : Hello, Habiba. ①

Habiba : ②?

Shahd : I went to the Egyptian Museum.

Habiba : ③?

Shahd : I went in a taxi.

Habiba : What did you see there?

Shahd : ④

Habiba : Did you enjoy your visit?

Shahd : ⑤

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. This encourages me to read the book.

a. accident

b. park

c. review

d. invention

2. **A:** What do you think "Lord of the Flies"?

B: I think it's a fantastic story.

- a. in b. on c. at d. about

3. **A:** Who should we to my birthday party?

B: All your friends.

- a. invite b. invent c. discover d. call

4. "Jurassic World" is an exciting film. I always enjoy watching it.

- a. review b. adventure c. camera d. theme

5. my point of view, this artist is not very good.

- a. From b. On c. In d. For

6. I felt afraid because the film was

لمصيا 2024

- a. scary b. awesome c. exciting d. nice

7. my opinion, chess is an interesting game.

- a. On b. To c. From d. In

8. What do you think travelling abroad?

- a. of b. with c. about d. a&c

9. I'd like to you to my birthday party.

- a. invent b. invite c. recycle d. star

10. I like films because they have exciting actions.

- a. comedy b. boring c. adventure d. lazy

11. you lend me some money, Hazem?

- a. Are b. Has c. Could d. Was

12. Would you like me this bag for you?

- a. carry b. to carry c. to carrying d. carrying

Key Vocabulary

show	عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
cool	رائع	point of view	وجهة نظر / رأي
cartoon	رسم كاريكاتيري / رسوم متحركة	art	الفن
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	artist	رسام / فنان
photography	تصوير فوتوغرافي	favourite	مفضل
drawing	الرسم بالقلم	idea	فكرة
portrait	لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان)	free	مجاني / حر
pottery	أواني فخار	concert	حفل موسيقي
sculpture	تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	adventure film / story	فيلم / قصة مغامرات
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية / (وركسترا)	think (thought)	يعتقد
musician	موسيقيار	hide (hid / hidden)	يخفي / يختفي
blind	كفيف (أعمى)	recommend (ed)	يوصي بـ / يرشح
deaf	أصم (أطرش)	wonder (ed)	يتساءل - يتعجب
disabled	معاق (من ذوي الهمم)	cry (ied)	يبكي
theme park	متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	hug (ugged)	يعانق (يحضن) / عناق
action	أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	invite (d)	يدعو (المناسبة)
review	مقال نقدي	escape (d)	يهرب
play	مسرحية		

Activities

painting scenery	رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»	sewing costumes	خياطة أزياء (ملابس)
playing instruments	عزف على آلات موسيقية	doing make-up	عمل تجميل (مكياج)
writing a script	كتابة نص (سيناريو)	acting in a play	تمثيل في مسرحية
make sculptures	ينحت تماثيل	make pottery	يصنع أواني فخار
take photos	يلتقط صور	do calligraphy	يدرس فن الخط

Musical instruments

violin	آلة الكمان	guitar	آلة الجيتار
piano	آلة البيانو	trumpet	آلة البوق
flute	آلة الناي	cello	آلة التشيللو
clarinet	آلة المزمار	trombone	آلة الترمبون

Words with different meanings

star (n)	نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور	star (n)	نجم (في السماء)
view (n)	وجهة نظر / رأي	view (n)	منظر
park (n)	متنزه / موقف سيارات	park (v - ed)	يركن سيارة



Language

Ability القدرة

can + inf

Ex. I can play music.

**am
is
are** } **able to + inf.**

Ex. The boys are able to act.

**know(s)
how to + inf**

Ex. Aml knows how to sew clothes.

Negative

can't + inf.

Ex. I can't swim.

**am
is
are** + **not** } **able to
+ inf.**

Ex. The girls aren't able to drive cars.

**don't know how to
doesn't know how to** } **+ inf.**

Ex. Ola doesn't know how to write scripts.

Can

+ فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Can you ride a bike?

Am / Is / Are

+ فاعل + able to + inf...?

Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Does \ Do

+ فاعل + know how to + inf...?

Ex. Does Ola know how to paint scenery?

Speaking

1 Asking about and answering about ability

السؤال الإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

A: Can you + inf.? B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

A: Do you know how to + inf.? B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

A: Are you able to + inf.? B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can.....

2 Talking about preferences

الحديث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v-ing
- I'd rather + inf.
- My favourite (thing) is
- I'm interested in + v-ing / n.

3 Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب واعطاء توصيات

• نسال عن التوصيات كالآتي:

- Would you recommend (n / v-ing)
- What do you recommend + v-ing.?

• لعمل التوصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) فاعل + inf. / v-ing / n
- The best thing about + noun is that
- It's a good idea to + inf.

4 Making invitations

تقديم الدعوات

• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf.
- I'd like you to + inf.
- Would you like to + inf.?
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf.

- I'd love to.	- I'm afraid. It won't be possible.
- That / It sounds great.	- I'd love to, but I can't because
- OK, with pleasure.	

5 Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن وادعاء رأي

• نسال عن الرأي كالآتي:

- Do you think (that)?
- What do you think of / about?
- What is your view of / about?

• للتعبير عن الرأي نقول:

- In my view, / From my point of view,
- In my opinion,
- I think
- No, I don't think so.

6) Making offers

تقديم عروض

• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf.? - Would you like me to + inf.?

7) Making requests

تقديم طلبات

• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf.? - I was wondering if you could + inf.

General Exercises on Unit 9

1) Complete the following dialogue:

2023

Ali is asking Ahmed about his favourite hobby.

Ali : What's your favourite hobby, Ahmed?

Ahmed : 1

Ali : What musical Instrument do you play?

Ahmed : 2

Ali : 3

Ahmed : I started playing the violin last year.

Ali : 4

Ahmed : No, it's very easy to play.

Ali : Could you teach me how to play it?

Ahmed : 5 Let's start tomorrow.

2) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

- There is a of the king at the entrance of the museum.
a. sculpture b. skill c. view d. show
- This museum was built in the 18th
a. country b. concert c. century d. character
- It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an
a. star b. review c. sun d. picnic
- The blind man is not able to the traffic lights.
a. hear b. smell c. see d. taste
- Mr Ali gave his children a quick, then he got into his car.
a. hug b. hair c. heart d. head
- We want to eat outside. Which restaurant do you?
a. burn b. recover c. mend d. recommend

WB

WB

7. Is it all right to my car here?
 a. mark b. park c. bark d. escape
8. Children like to watch movies.
 a. cartoon b. musical c. carton d. scary

Exercises on Language

9. A clever student knows how an exam easily.
 a. to pass b. pass c. to passing d. passes
10. Our teacher explain the lessons wonderfully. WB
 a. is able b. can c. knows how d. able to
11. you read this English word; I can't read it?
 a. Does b. Does c. Can d. Are
12. you help me answer these difficult questions?
 a. Is b. Does c. Can d. Are
13. I know to make coffee.
 a. whose b. what c. which d. how
14. you able to speak English? ادارة بنى سويف 2023
 a. Are b. Do c. Is d. Can

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I (can) go to school on foot; it's too far.
2. (Be) they able to write scripts? البنى سويف 2023
3. (Do) your brother know how to fly a kite?
4. Mr Ashraf (can't) speak English very well. He is very good at it.
5. Do your sisters know how (sewing) clothes?
6. (Do) you able to speak German? البنى سويف 2023
7. Mother is able (play) basketball.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

WB

"Difficulties that disabled people have"

[مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة]

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:
- Who are disabled people? - How can we help them?
 - How should we treat them?
 - Are they important to our country? How?
- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:
- Disabled people can't
 - We can help disabled people by
 - We should treat them



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Eman Badr is a/an

- a. mechanic b. electrician c. musician d. engineer

2. She started playing the violin when she was

- a. six b. seven c. sixteen d. eight

B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Taha is telling Salah that his team are playing a match next week.

Taha : We are going to play a match next week?

Salah : ①

Taha : We are going to play against the Red team.

Salah : ② ?

Taha : The match will be at the National Club.

Salah : Will it be cool?

Taha : ③

C Usage

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can't go out with you. I am very

- a. lazy b. easy c. busy d. free

2. He likes music. He wants to be a / an

- a. engineer b. musician c. waiter d. writer

3. I can't eat this food. It's

- a. delicious b. nice c. horrible d. healthy

4. I don't know do this exercise.

- a. what to b. how to c. how for d. who to

5. I can this heavy box.

- a. carries b. carry c. carried d. carrying

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did the writer visit the museum?

.....

2. What was the writer interested in?

.....

3. What did the artists show?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egypt is famous for its art.

a. old

b. new

c. bad

d. terrible

5. The writer visited the museum last

a. year

b. month

c. week

d. day

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. Do he able to do his homework?

.....

2. Rana is able tidy her room

.....

3. You can speak English?

.....

4. I know how sew costumes.

.....

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's the name of the film?

- What's it about?

- What do you think of it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I watched a film called

- The film is about

- In my opinion, the action is / the story is

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات انشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- A review of a museum I know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

Last week, I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It is in Cairo. It's famous for art in Egypt from the 20th and 21st centuries. The artists were really good. They showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. The cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures. My favourite thing was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. I recommend it to all my friends.

2- Difficulties that disabled people have

We see disabled people around us. There are blind people who can't see. There are deaf people who can't hear. There are some people who can't walk. They are useful to our country. Some of them do important jobs. Try to help disabled people. Do not leave bags on the floor on public means of transport. Tell a blind person about objects on the street. Shout at a person if you think they can't hear you. Ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. We should all treat them as normal people like us.

3- A review of a film I have just watched "Jurassic World" (Azhar)

I watched a film called "Jurassic World." It is an adventure film. I think the action is exciting. But, in my opinion, the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films.

Ex-105

1- Someone in my family that I'm proud of

From : ramypost@gmail.com
To : salah666@yahoo.com
Subject : Someone in my family that I am proud of

Dear Salah,

How are you? How is your family? I write this email to tell you about my family. My grandparents live with us. I am so proud of my grandfather. He doesn't work now. He was a famous musician in the past. He played the violin. He played in a famous orchestra. Many people know him. They like his music very much. You can see his shows on YouTube. I'd like to know about your family, too. Write to me soon. With my best wishes.

Yours,
 Ramy

2- An invitation to my birthday

From : hassanpost@gmail.com
To : emad666@yahoo.com
Subject : An invitation

Dear Emad,

How are you and your family? It's a pleasure to tell you that my birthday is next Sunday. I was wondering if you could come to my house on that day. I'll be very happy if you come. All our friends will be there. We are having a big party. We will spend a nice time. We will eat cakes, play games and have fun. The party will start at 8 p.m. Please, don't be late.

Yours,
 Hassan



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. The speaker visited a last month.
 a. theatre b. museum c. pyramid d. temple
2. The place that the speaker visited was in
 a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Luxor d. Giza
3. Egypt is famous for its ancient
 a. music b. history c. art d. monuments
4. The speaker was interested in seeing art by
 a. Americans b. Africans c. Japanese d. Egyptians

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Galal is inviting Mustafa to the zoo.

Galal : Hi, would you like to go to the zoo with us?

Mustafa : ❶

Galal : We can spend a nice time there.

Mustafa : ❷?

Galal : No, but could you bring some fruit?

Mustafa : Of course. ❸?

Galal : At 7 a.m.

Mustafa : Where will we meet?

Galal : ❹

Mustafa : OK. Goodbye! ❺

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I read a review of the story "Oliver Twist". The story is about a child whose mother died when he was born. Oliver was a sad boy. He worked hard when he was a child and he had no money. He escaped to London. In London, he met Fagin, the leader of some thieves, who taught children how to steal. Luckily, Oliver found people who took good care of him and helped him. My favourite character is Mr Brownlow, who took care of Oliver and loved him.

In my opinion, the story is very exciting. I liked the fact that Fagin tried to change Oliver, but Oliver continued to be a good boy. I liked the end of this story.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Oliver's mother when he was born.
 a. married b. worked c. escaped d. died
2. The underlined pronoun "him" refers to
 a. the writer b. Fagin c. Oliver d. Mr Brownlow

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What is the passage about?

4. Who was Fagin?

5. Why do you think Oliver escaped?

6. What does the expression "TAKE CARE OF" in the text mean?

D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my, Egypt has the finest weather.
 a. vision b. view c. review d. revision
2. I play music, but I can't paint.
 a. can't b. am not able to
 c. don't know how to d. am able to
3. people cannot walk. الحيرة - شمال الحيرة 2022 WB
 a. Disabled b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
4. My father knows how his car himself.
 a. repair b. repairing c. to repairing d. to repair
5. Many famous act in that new film. I recommend it.
 a. moons b. stars c. writers d. reviewers
6. My little child is skillful at, he uses a pencil.
 a. drawing b. sewing c. painting d. acting
7. Manal opened her arms and gave her mother a big
 a. harm b. half c. hug d. hit
8. This deaf boy is not able to me. WB
 a. see b. talk c. walk d. hear

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. All the students in my class know how writing in English. (.....)
2. I can read this English word. I'll ask Mr Ali to help me. (.....)
3. Miss Walaa are able to teach young children cleverly. (.....)
4. you know how to do any of the types of arts? (.....)
5. Eman knows to make cakes. Her cakes are delicious. (.....)

2 Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB (مكتبة عبد الله الاستاذ)

to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

-Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com

-Your friend's email address is emad666@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

-يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you send this email?
- What do you invite your friend to?
- Who will be in the party?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- It's a pleasure to tell you that
- I was wondering if you
- The party will start at

Review C

SB pages 32 - 33 WB pages 91 - 92

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



play	مسرحية	mistakes	أخطاء
acting	تمثيل	ruler	حاكم
Julius Caesar	يوليوس قيصر	mask	كمامة
COVID 19	مرض فيروس كورونا «كوفيد 19»	committee	لجنة
safely	بأمان	food stall	كشك لبيع الطعام
mostly	غالباً	Handball World Championship	بطول العالم لكرة اليد
medical	طبي		



Reading

SB page (32)

استمع إلى النصوص



Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship

- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the stadium⁽¹⁾ through the correct doors.
- Take a test for COVID 19⁽²⁾ every 72 hours.
- Only players do not need to wear a mask⁽³⁾.
- Only online interviews⁽⁴⁾ after games.



- ١- استاد
- ٢- فيروس كورونا
- ٣- كمامة
- ٤- مقابلة شخصية

SB Page (32)

There will be a lot of players at the 2021 Men's Handball World Championship⁽¹⁾. The Championship's medical committee⁽²⁾ want to make sure that all the people at the competition are able to play together safely⁽³⁾. For that reason⁽⁴⁾, they want only a few people to use the doors to the stadium at the same time. People who are not playing need to wear a mask. You can find a lot of these just outside the stadium and they are free⁽⁵⁾ to use. All players should know how to get a COVID 19 test⁽⁶⁾ every 72 hours.



- ١- بطولة
- ٢- لجنة طبية
- ٣- بأمان
- ٤- سبب
- ٥- مجاني
- ٦- فحص / اختبار

Review of Julius Caesar

Last night, I went to see *Julius Caesar*. It's a **play**⁽¹⁾ by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a Roman **ruler**⁽²⁾. Caesar's **costume**⁽³⁾ made him look very important! The **scene**⁽⁴⁾ was amazing and it really looked like Ancient Rome.

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the **actor**⁽⁵⁾ who played Caesar was the best but all the **acting** was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much **action**: it was mostly talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the **script**⁽⁶⁾ is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.



- ١- مسرحية
- ٢- حاكم
- ٣- زي
- ٤- منظر طبيعي
- ٥- خلفية
- ٦- ممثل
- ٧- حركة / أحداث
- ٨- نص / سيناريو

HELP WITH SPECIAL CONCERT AT CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL!

You don't need to know how to play an **instrument**⁽¹⁾ or sing, but we need people who can paint scenery, help with make-up and costumes and help the children before and after the **concert**⁽²⁾.

Email Mr Zaki, the music teacher, if you would like to help.



- ١- آلة موسيقية
- ٢- حفلة موسيقية

(1) Review for a play

The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the costumes are very good, but the person who painted the scenery did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend**⁽¹⁾ this.

(2) Review for a magazine

The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**⁽²⁾, too. I really like the **cartoons**⁽³⁾ because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

(3) Review for a museum

From my point of view, this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **exhibitions**⁽⁴⁾ of people and some amazing old technology. I loved the big, old **phones**⁽⁵⁾!

(4) Review for a book

The story was very slow and there was very little action. I didn't really enjoy it because it **makes**⁽⁶⁾ me feel sad. The **best**⁽⁷⁾ thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

- ١- يوصي بـ
- ٢- صور فوتوغرافية
- ٣- رسوم كاريكاتير
- ٤- ملحوظات
- ٥- هواتف
- ٦- تجعل
- ٧- أفضل



Audioscript

SB Page (33)



١- فلافل (طعمية)

طازجة

٢- كشك لبيع الطعام

Heba : What's your favourite food, Sara? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to decide".

Sara : I like fruit too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, fresh falafel⁽¹⁾. There is a food stall⁽²⁾ near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

Heba : What things do you know how to cook, Sara? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you?

Sara : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara : Good idea, Heba!

WB Page (91)

Amal : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

Dalida : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

Amal : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette?

Dalida : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal?

Amal : OK.

Dalida : Shall I beat the eggs? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use?

Amal : Thanks. Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

Dalida : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal.

Amal : Of course.

Dalida : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

Amal : How long should it cook for?

Dalida : We'll leave it for a few minutes.

Amal : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot please.

Dalida : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased!

Test

on Units



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. The articles in the book are always
a. boring b. interesting c. bad d. horrible
2. The articles have fantastic, too.
a. stories b. news c. writings d. photographs
3. The speaker really likes the
a. cartoons b. papers c. men d. writers
4. The cartoons make the speaker
a. cry b. study c. laugh d. speak

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Hossam are talking about a play.

Adel : Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar.

Hossam : What is it?

Adel : ①

Hossam : ② ?

Adel : The English writer William Shakespeare.

Hossam : ③ ?

Adel : It's about a Roman ruler.

Hossam : What do you think about it?

Adel : ④ The story is very sad.

Hossam : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day a crow picked up a piece of cheese from the ground in its beak. It flew up into a tree. A hungry fox saw the crow with the cheese.

The fox wanted to make the crow get away from the cheese. He looked up and smiled at the crow. "What a beautiful bird you are," he said.

The crow said nothing.

"What lovely feathers you have got," the fox said.

The crow said nothing.

"Have you got a beautiful voice as well?" the fox asked.

The crow opened its beak to sing so that she could show the fox. It fell to the ground. The fox ate it up greedily.

"Thank you," said the fox and ran off.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "It" refers to the
 a. fox b. crow c. cheese d. ground
- In the end, the fox the piece of cheese.
 a. got b. lost c. threw d. sold

B. Answer the following questions :

- What did the crow do after it picked the piece of cheese?

.....

- What did the fox want?

.....

- Do you think the crow had a beautiful voice?

.....

- What do you think of the fox?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you meet other people, you stand 1.5 metres away from them. **SB**
 a. will b. should c. are d. have
- There are people on the bus. **WB**
 a. a few b. much c. a lot d. any
- The in that magazine really make me laugh.
 a. rulers b. screens c. cartoons d. cartons
- We watched really amazing at the museum.
 a. trips b. sculptures c. picnics d. beds

5. That film isn't very interesting. I'd never it.
 a. hate b. dislike c. comment d. recommend
6. The best part of the play was the fantastic
 a. camera b. scenery c. cartoon d. screen
7. All of us should wear to help stop COVID19.
 a. masks b. glasses c. trousers d. caps
8. This shows all the details of an old man's face.
 a. portrait b. crop c. script d. scenery

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you (not study) well, you will get low marks.
2. If you know how to cook, you (work) in a restaurant. **SB**
3. There were not (some) students at school yesterday.
4. This player (can't) run fast, but he can't score goals.
5. (Never) study hard before your exams.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

"A review of something you enjoyed"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**New
Hello!**



We are what we wear

Objectives

Reading:

An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert

Writing:

An advert to sell something

Listening:

People talking about their clothes;
a conversation in a clothes shop

Speaking:

Discussing and describing clothes;
shopping for clothes

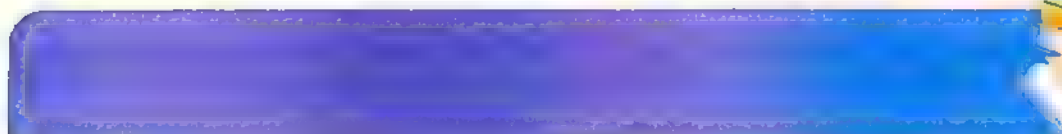
Language:

Adjective order; one, ones

this / that, these / those (revision)

Life Skills:

Respect for diversity



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 34 - 37 WB pages 93 - 94

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



belt

حزام



headscarf

(headscarves)

غطاء للرأس (حجاب)



scarf (scarves)

شال / وشاح / كوفية



handbag حقيبة يد (حريمي)



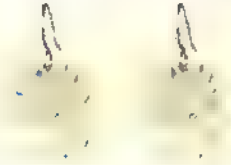
trainers

حذاء رياضي



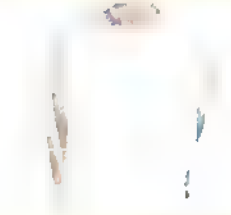
earrings

قرط (حلق)



galabeya

جلباب



sunglasses

نظارة شمس



sandals

صندل



Adjectives for clothes

smart

أنيق / مهندم

traditional

تقليدي

comfortable مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)

uncomfortable

غير مريح

loose

فضفاض / واسع

strange

غريب

pretty

جميل

colourful

زاهي الألوان / كثير الألوان

casual*

غير رسمي (ملابس)

nice

لطيف

simple

بسيط

striped*

مقلم / مخطط

Clothes and materials

shirt	قميص	cotton	القطن
jumper	بلوفر	linen	الكتان
trousers	بنطلون	gold	الذهب
skirt	حبيبة	metal	المعدن
shorts	شورت	leather	الجلد المدبوغ
jeans	بنطلون جينز	glass	الزجاج
		plastic	البلاستيك
		wool	الصوف



Vocabulary

sheet	ملاءة	a bit	قليلاً
material	مادة خام	necklace	عقد
boot	حذاء برقبة (بوت)	similar	مشابه/متشابه
shoes	حذاء	differently	بشكل مختلف
climate	مناخ	flat	شقة
relaxed	مسترخي/مسترخ	electric	كهربائي (يعمل بالكهرباء)
style	نمط/أسلوب	wooden	خشبي
size	حجم/مقاس	protect (ed)	يحمي
clothing	الملابس (الملبس)	dress (ed)(n)	يرتدي / فستان
jewellery	مجوهرات		

Expressions & Prepositions

look like	يشبه	with a belt	بحزام
keep warm / cool	يحتفظ بالدفء/بالبرودة	look for	يبحث عن
most of the time	معظم الوقت	protect.... from	يحمي..... من
the same as	مثل	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
feel relaxed	يشعر بالراحة	dress in a traditional style	يرتدي زي تقليدي
look smart	يبدو أنيقاً	type of	نوع من
(be) made of	مصنوع من		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

wear	يرتدي
buy	يشترى
make	يصنع

Past simple

wore
bought
made

Past Participle

worn
bought
made

Meaning

Opposite

loose	واسع / فضفاض	baggy	tight	ضيق
heavy	ثقل	weighty	light	خفيف
cheap	رخيص الثمن	inexpensive	expensive	غالي الثمن
similar	متشابه	alike	different	مختلف



Definitions

cotton	قطن	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers etc.
glass	زجاج	a hard⁽¹⁾ material which is used to make windows, bottles and other objects
gold	ذهب	made of a very valuable⁽²⁾ yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery
leather	جلد مذبوغ	a material made from an animal, used to make shoes, bags, clothes etc.
linen	كتان	a strong material made from part of the flax plant⁽³⁾
plastic	بلاستيك	an artificial⁽⁴⁾ material which has many different uses
metal	معادن	a hard, strong material often used to make bridges, the inside of buildings, etc
wool	صوف	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals
handbag	حقيفة يد (حريمي)	a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make-up, etc.
casual	غير رسمي	casual clothes are not formal or not suitable⁽⁵⁾ for special occasions⁽⁶⁾
galabeya	جلباب	a long, loose piece of clothing
earring	قرط (حلق)	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on an ear
headscarf	غطاء رأس (حجاب)	material that women wear to cover their hair
jewellery	مجوهرات	objects that you wear on your clothes or body that are usually made from valuable stones or metals, such as gold and silver

belt	حزام	a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration.
sandals	صندل	open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather.
scarf	شال	a long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders.
smart	أنيق	looking clean and tidy.
sunglasses	نظارة شمس	dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes from the sun.
trainers	حذاء رياضي	light, comfortable shoes that people wear for sport.



Language Notes

① cloth / clothes / clothing

- **cloth** قماش (اسم مفرد لا يعد)

Ex. The tailor showed me several rolls of **cloth**.

- **clothing** ملابس/ثياب (مفرد لا يعد)

SB 37 تشير إلى الملابس بصفة عامة أو أنواع معينة من الملابس مثل winter / warm clothing وردت في

Ex. My favourite item of **clothing** is the jumper.

- **clothes** الملابس (اسم جمع دائماً)

• تشير إلى الأشياء التي يرتديها الناس مثل (البطولون - السترة)

Ex. My **clothes** are new.

② shoes / trousers / earrings / sandals / trainers / sunglasses

- تتكون بعض الملابس من جزئين غير منفصلين مثل (**sunglasses - trousers**) وتكون دائماً جمع.

- أو جزئين منفصلين مثل (**earrings - shoes**) وهذه الكلمات جمع إذا قصدنا الجزئين ويمكن الإشارة إلى جزء واحد منهما مثل (**earring - shoe**).

Ex. My new **trousers** are loose. I like wearing **them**.

Ex. These **earrings** are made of gold.

- ونستخدم (زوج من **a pair of**) أمام الكلمات السابقة ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد.

Ex. I have a lovely **pair of boots**.

Ex. A **pair of sandals** is good in hot weather.

③ wear / dress / put on

• wear (wore / worn)

يرتدي (ملابس / مجوهرات / اكسسوارات... الخ)

Ex. I wear trousers and a T-shirt to school.

Ex. Women usually wear jewellery to look beautiful.

• dress (ed)

يلبس (لا يأتي بعدها ملابس)

Ex. Every morning, I wash, dress and go to school.

• put (put / put) on

يرتدي (قطعة من الملابس / نظارة / قبعة الخ...)

Ex. I felt cold, so I put on my jacket.

Ex. Mr Ali put on his glasses to read the letter.

④ glass / a glass / glasses

• glass (n) زجاج (مادة خام) (اسم لا يُعد)

Ex. The window is made of wood and glass.

• a glass (n) كوب زجاجي (اسم يُعد)

Ex. Give me a glass of water, please.

• glasses (n) نظارة (جمع دائماً)

Ex. He can't read without his glasses.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I bought some nice to make new kitchen curtains.

a. cloth

b. clothing

c. clothes

d. clothings

2. Whose sunglasses these?

a. are

b. is

c. was

d. have

3. This pair of boots useful when it rains.

a. were

b. is

c. are

d. have

4. We sunglasses on sunny days.

a. dress

b. dressed

c. get dressed

d. wear



Audioscript

SB Page (26)

1. Narrator: Huda

I'm Huda. These are the types of clothes I usually wear. I like to be **comfortable**⁽¹⁾ and **feel relaxed**⁽²⁾ in my clothes. These **sunglasses**⁽³⁾ were a **present**⁽⁴⁾ from my Mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days!

١- مستريح

٢- مسترخي

٣- نظارة شمس

٤- هدية

٥- ملابس تقليدية

٦- يحمي

٧- نمط تقليدي

٨- ذو ملابس زاهية

٩- عطاء رأس (حجاب)

١٠- وجبة مميزة

١١- ينظرون حيل

١٢- يبدو أنيقاً

2. Narrator: Tarek

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these **traditional clothes**⁽⁵⁾ keep me cool and **protect**⁽⁶⁾ me from the sun when I'm working.

3. Narrator: Sara

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a **traditional style**⁽⁷⁾ but I like to be **colourful**⁽⁸⁾. My **headscarf**⁽⁹⁾ is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it?



4. Narrator: Adam

My name's Adam and I'm going for a **special meal**⁽¹⁰⁾ with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear **jeans**⁽¹¹⁾. I quite like **looking smart**⁽¹²⁾, but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!



Reading

SB Page (28)

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In **Ancient Egypt**⁽¹⁾, men and women wore **similar**⁽²⁾ clothes. They both wore **loose**⁽³⁾, white, **linen**⁽⁴⁾ clothes with a **belt**⁽⁵⁾. Most **of**⁽⁶⁾ the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive **leather sandals**⁽⁷⁾. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear **heavy**⁽⁸⁾, metal **jewellery**⁽⁹⁾. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful **gold necklaces**⁽¹⁰⁾ and other jewellery.



١ - مصر «في العصر

القديم»

٢ - يرتدي

٣ - متشابه

٤ - فضفاض / واسع

٥ - كتان

٦ - حزام

٧ - معظم

٨ - صندل من الجلد

٩ - ثقيل

١٠ - مجوهرات

١١ - عقود ذهبية

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. People like travelling by plane because it is
a. tiring b. traditional c. boring d. comfortable
2. Famous players usually wear expensive to help them run fast
a. skirts b. necklaces c. earrings d. trainers
3. My galabeya is loose in
a. size b. shape c. colour d. material
4. Adel always wears to protect his eyes from the sun.
a. sandals b. trainers c. sunglasses d. earrings
5. His new trousers are a bit loose, so he wears a
a. scarf b. tie c. belt d. galabeya
6. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of
a. metal b. wood c. leather d. wool
7. The garden was full of and fascinating flowers.
a. active b. ugly c. funny d. colorful
8. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very
a. strange b. smart c. long d. intelligent
9. It's a long, blue You wear it around your neck. SB
a. belt b. handbag c. sandals d. scarf
10. Are his clothes smart or? WB
a. greedy b. casual c. clever d. snowy
11. Do her clothes look or uncomfortable? WB
a. comfortable b. similar c. gold d. electric
12. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of were popular. SB
a. oil b. plastic c. linen d. wheat
13. are jewellery that women wear around their necks. SB
a. Handbags b. Headscarves c. Galabeyas d. Necklaces
14. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't very differently. SB
a. call b. dress c. cost d. press
15. I cover my bed with a nice made of linen.
a. sheet b. skirt c. belt d. shell

16. My daughter likes to wear _____ dresses.

عشر يناير 2024

- a. lose b. loose c. lost d. jewelry

17. Before going to the club, I wear my _____ to do sports.

الخميس 29/23

- a. necklace b. trainers c. skirt d. sandals

18. Your watch isn't expensive. It's made of _____.

من شوف 2023

- a. wool b. plastic c. linen d. gold

19. There are a lot of _____ flowers in the park in spring.

الخميس 2023

- a. ugly b. colourful c. colourless d. funny

Bit by Bit Exercises

20. _____ clothes are usually comfortable.

- a. Tight b. Wooden c. Lost d. Loose

21. Rasha couldn't wear these _____ because her ears hurt.

- a. trainers b. sandals c. earrings d. trousers

22. My grandfather likes to wear loose _____ in hot weather.

- a. galabeyas b. handbags c. sheets d. jumpers

23. _____ are usually made of leather.

- a. Scarves b. Belts c. Galabeyas d. Jewellery

24. My new pair of shoes _____ black.

- a. were b. is c. are d. have



Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

• عندما نريد وصف شيء بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نضع الصفات في الترتيب الصحيح لها كالآتي:

Size / Description المقاس / الوصف	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة	Noun اسم الشيء
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

• لاحظ استخدام الفواصل (,) commas بين الصفات عند الترتيب.

Ex. The ancient Egyptians wore

Description

beautiful,

Material

gold,

Noun

necklaces.



١- هناك إضافات أخرى للصفات مثل (الكمية / Amount / العدد / Number)

Ex. I have got

Number	Description	Shape	Age	Material	Noun
one,	beautiful,	square,	old,	brick,	house.

٢- أحياناً يمكن استخدام مسميات أخرى للوصف مثل:

Description = Opinion رأي

ادرس هذا الجدول الذى يوضح الصفات المستخدمة فى كل مسمى:

Description / opinion	Size	Shape	Age	Colour	Material
beautiful	big	long	old	pink	cotton
pretty	small	loose	modern	green	linen
colourful	large	striped	new	red	wooden
expensive	medium	short	traditional	purple	plastic
cheap				colourful	gold
strange					
nice					
smart					

٣- عند وجود صفتان من نفس التصنيف يمكن أن تبدأ بأى منهما:

لاحظ الأمثلة الآتية من كتاب الطالب:

Ex. I love wearing my **new cotton** galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. (WB 94)

Ex. She's also wearing a **loose long** dress with flowers on it. (WB 115)

٤- تعامل الصفة **electric** كنوع **type** وتأتى فى آخر الترتيب:

Ex. Hoda's father has bought a **new red electric** car. (WB 94)

٥- الصفة **(colourful)** يمكن أن تأتى (Description) أو تأتى (Adjective).

Ex. These **colourful, modern** carpets look amazing.

Ex. We saw a **big colourful** bird.

٦- الصفة **(cool)** بمعنى رائع لوصف (الملابس/ الأثاث) وتعتبر هنا صفة (Adjective).

Ex. A **cool, old** wooden chest of drawers. (WB 98)

٧- **(cool)** بمعنى رطب لوصف (الملابس والمشروبات) بالأخص فى وقت الحر وتعتبر صفة (حالة مادية) تأتى بعد الشكل.

Ex. **loose, cool** clothes for the day. (SB 64)

٨- منشأ أو بلد الشيء **(origin)** بعد اللون وقبل المادة الخام.

Ex. **Luxury, Egyptian** cotton (SB 65)

٩- يتم استخدام **(and)** فى حالة استخدام صفتين من نفس المجموعة.

Ex. It's a **beautiful brown and orange** necklace. (SB 37)

١٠- أو يمكن الاستغناء عنها.

Ex. A **big, old, traditional** flat in Aswan. (WB 94)

٩- الصفتان (light and heavy) تدرج تحت (size).

Ex. Heavy metal jewellery.

(SB 36)

Ex. It's a light blue, wool scarf.

(SB 43)

١٠- الصفة (thin) صفة شكل (shape).

Ex. She is wearing a long, thin, leather belt.

(SB 43)

Exercises on Language

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. These are shoes.

قبا - 2024

- a. strange, leather, big
- c. strange, big, leather

- b. leather, big, strange
- d. leather, strange, big

2. Do you have enough money to buy this belt?

المسئلة - 2024

- a. long, black, leather
- c. black, leather, long

- b. leather, long, black
- d. long, leather, black

3. I love wearing galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer

٢٥ مايو 2024

- a. long, loose, cotton
- c. cotton, loose, long

- b. cotton, long, loose
- d. loose, long, plastic

4. I bought jacket yesterday.

المسئلة - 2024

- a. brown, wool, nice
- c. wool, brown, nice

- b. nice, brown, wool
- d. nice, wool, brown

5. What a blouse!

سوهاج - اكتوبر 2022

- a. nice, cotton, long
- c. long, nice, cotton

- b. nice, long, cotton
- d. cotton, long, nice

6. It's a

SB

- a. beautiful necklace brown and orange
- c. beautiful, brown and necklace orange

- b. necklace beautiful, brown and orange
- d. beautiful, brown and orange necklace

7. It's a scarf.

SB

- a. striped, cotton, pink
- c. pink, striped, cotton

- b. striped, pink, cotton
- d. cotton, striped, pink

8. It's a skirt.

SB

- a. beautiful, new, blue
- c. beautiful, blue, new

- b. blue, beautiful, new
- d. blue, new, beautiful

9. The American tourists were wearing sunglasses.

استشرقية أبو حماد 2023

a. big, plastic, red

b. red, plastic, big

c. big, red, plastic

d. plastic, big, red

10. Ahmed bought a suit.

جدائق العبة 2023

a. black, nice, silk

b. wool, nice, black

c. nice, black, silk

d. black, nice, wool

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. My son likes wearing



a. colourful, modern clothes

b. modern, colourful, clothes

c. a and b

d. clothes modern colourful

12. They loved to wear

a. metal, heavy jewellery

b. heavy, jewellery, metal

c. heavy, metal jewellery

d. jewellery heavy, metal

13. This rich woman is wearing a necklace.

a. beautiful, modern, gold

b. modern, beautiful, gold

b. gold, beautiful, modern

d. beautiful, gold, modern

14. Yesterday, I bought a shirt.

a. linen, loose, white

b. white, loose, linen

c. loose, linen, white

d. loose, white, linen

15. Manal's mother has bought a dress.

a. green, new, smart

b. green, smart, new

a. smart, new, green

d. new, smart, green

16. I always wear my sunglasses.

a. big, black, plastic

b. black, plastic, big

c. plastic, black, big

d. plastic, big, black

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Mai bought a (cotton, red, new) skirt.

موريسنا 2024

2. I need a/an (black, amazing, cotton) jacket.

د علقبة 2024

3. It's a (linen, new, blue) skirt.

الغاهرة 2024

4. It is a (green, pretty, new) dress.

عسوهاج 2024

5. I like this (cotton, red, smart) T-shirt.

الدلجات 2024

6. It's a/an (cotton, old, striped) scarf.

SB

7. Look at that (pretty, gold, long) necklace.

WB

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Ancient Egyptians wore (linen, white, loose) clothes.
 9. My grandfather usually wears a (green, long, cotton, loose) galabeya.
 10. This poor man is wearing a/an (old, wool, simple) shirt.

Speaking

Describing clothes

وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع الترتيب (ارجع الى شرح هذا الموضوع في Grammar)

- It's a **striped, pink, cotton** scarf.
- It's a **beautiful brown and orange** necklace.

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This shirt is **the smartest**. هذا القميص هو الأكثر أناقة.
- That dress is **the nicest**. ذلك الفستان هو الأجمل.
- These trousers are **the most comfortable**. هذا البنطلون هو الأكثر راحة.
- That scarf is **the most colourful**. ذلك الوشاح هو الأكثر ألواناً.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

معدرساتى 2023

Mona is talking to Soha about scarves.

- Mona : Your scarf is very pretty ①.....?
- Soha : Yes, it is new.
- Mona : What is it made of?
- Soha : ②.....?
- Mona : Cotton! ③.....?
- Soha : I bought it from the clothes shop near our house.
- Mona : ④.....?
- Soha : It is 80 pounds.
- Mona : Great! Are there any more scarves like this there?
- Soha : ⑤.....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Women like to wear _____ round their necks. الخبرة 2024
 a. earrings b. sandals c. shoes d. necklaces
2. When it is hot, I wear my _____ to protect my eyes. المصا 2024
 a. sunglasses b. sandals c. trousers d. earrings
3. They would like to wear _____ clothes to keep cool in summer. المصا 2024
 a. heavy b. wool c. leather d. loose
4. This cloth is made from a mixture of _____ and cotton. WB
 a. wood b. electricity c. plastic d. linen
5. I usually wear a cotton _____ inside the house.
 a. earrings b. galabeya c. handbag d. trainers
6. The opposite of "loose" is _____.
 a. heavy b. cheap c. light d. tight
7. I always _____ relaxed when I wear these clothes.
 a. feel b. fall c. fail d. fill

Exercises on Language

8. Hoda's father has bought a/an _____ car. WB
 a. red, new, electric b. new, red, electric
 c. electric, red, new d. red, electric, new
9. I like this _____ T-shirt. البدريشيني 2023
 a. cotton, red b. red, smart, cotton
 c. small, red, cotton d. cotton, smart
10. The snake is _____ not spotted. المصوفيه 2023
 a. striped b. fast c. slow d. thick
11. Eman has a / an _____ jacket.
 a. brown, strange, old b. old, strange, brown
 c. strange, old, brown d. old, brown, strange
12. My grandparents live in a _____ house on the beach.
 a. big, new, wooden b. new, big, wooden
 c. wooden, big, new d. new, wooden, big

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. They are the (more expensive) sunglasses in the shop. المصنعة 2024
2. Karma bought a (brown, leather, beautiful) bag. الـ رئيس 2023
3. I like this (cotton, smart, red) T-shirt. لب 2023
4. It's a/an (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress. WB
5. It's a (blue, cotton, beautiful) skirt. المصنعة عويصة 2023
6. She is wearing a/an (gold / expensive / long) necklace. SB
7. It's a (purple, nice, wool) jumper. المصنعة - انسدادات 2022 SB

④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

(مخاطب عنه في آخر لوحده)

to your friend Ihab describing the clothes you usually wear.

-Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer505@yahoo.com

-Your friend's email address is ihabomar22@gamil.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What do you usually wear?
- Do your clothes look comfortable or uncomfortable?
- Are they smart or casual?
- Do you like what you wear? Why / Why not?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I usually wear
- My clothes are
- I like clothes.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 - 40 WB pages 95 - 96

Key Vocabulary

special occasion	مناسبة خاصة
luxury	شيء فخم / فاخر
industry	صناعة
perfect	مثالي (في أحسن حال)
environment	البيئة
famous	مشهور
size	مقاس / حجم

soft
chemical
crop
borrow (ed)
pick (ed)
protect (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات



ناعم / لين
مادة كيميائية
محصول
يستعير / يستلف
يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
يحمي

Vocabulary

school uniform	زي مدرسي موحد
school day	يوم دراسي
wedding	حفل زفاف
family member	فرد في العائلة
factory	مصنع
clothes shop	محل ملابس
soil	تربة زراعية
greener future	مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة
relatives	أقارب
device	جهاز
sewing	الخطاطة

teenager	مراهق
basket	سلة
bamboo	نبات الخيزران (البامبو)
pollution	التلوث
sports clothes	ملابس رياضية
process	عملية إجرائية
change (d)	يغير / يتغير
cause (d)	يسبب
own (ed)	يمتلك
shop (ped)	يتسوق
produce (d)	ينتج

Expressions & Prepositions

make a lot of money	يجني مال كثير	instead of	بدلاً من
We are the same size.	نرتدي نفس المقاس	amazing at	مدهش في
grow crops	يزرع محاصيل	good / bad for	مفيد / غير مفيد لـ
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	perfect for	مثالي لـ
protect the environment	يحمي البيئة	famous for	مشهور بـ
use less water	يستخدم ماء أقل	for special occasions	لمناسبات خاصة
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	used to own	اعتاد أن يمتلك
cause pollution	يسبب تلوث	by the Nile	بجوار النيل
keep the cotton soft	يحافظ على نعومة القطن	give ... back	يرد (شيء/ مال)
as good as (it is) possible	جيد قدر المستطاع	from time to time	من وقت لآخر

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

give

يعطي

sell

يبيع

Past simple

gave

sold

Past Participle

given

sold

Word

Meaning

Opposite

protect

يحمي

keep

damage

يتلف

perfect

مثالي

excellent

bad

سيئ

near

قريب

close

far

بعيد

Definitions

soft

ناعم

not hard to **touch**⁽¹⁾

١- يلمس

luxury

شيء فخم / مترف

something expensive and of good **quality**⁽²⁾

٢- جودة

٣- يقطع... من

٤- ثلث

pick

يقطف

break flowers or fruit **off**⁽³⁾ a plant

٥- عملية علمية

٦- يرد

crop

محصول

a large amount of plants that are **grown**⁽⁴⁾ to be sold

٧- فترة من الوقت

chemical

مادة كيميائية

something produced by a **scientific process**⁽⁵⁾

special occasion

مناسبة خاصة

an important event for you

perfect

مثالي

as good as it is possible to be

industry

صناعة

- a business making things to sell
- the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area

borrow

يستعير / يستلف

get something from someone that you plan to **give back**⁽⁶⁾ after a **period of time**⁽⁷⁾

size

مقاس / حجم

how big or small something is

environment

البيئة

the people and things around you in your life



Language Notes

1) chemical / chemistry

• chemical (adj)

صفة بمعنى كيميائي

Ex. This **chemical** liquid kills insects.

• chemical (s)

اسم يعد بمعنى مادة / مواد كيميائية

Ex. Farmers shouldn't use **chemicals**, they're harmful.

- **chemistry (n)** اسم لا يعد بمعنى الكيمياء

Ex. We study **chemistry** at the school this year.

② borrow.. (from) / lend... (to)

- **borrow... (from)** يستعير/يستلف... من

Ex. I sometimes **borrow** clothes **from** my brother.

- **lend... (to)** يعير/يسلف... إلى

Ex. Do you usually **lend** money **to** people?

③ soil / land / ground / floor

- **soil** تربة زراعية (الطبقة العليا التي نزرع فيها)

Ex. The climate and **soil** in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton.

- **ground** أرض (خارج المنزل) (أرضية الشارع)

Ex. My mobile fell to the **ground** and broke.

- **land** اليابسة

Ex. The ship reached **land** after sailing for ten days.

- **floor** أرضية الحجرة/طابق في مبنى

Ex. She cleaned the **floor** with water and soap.

Ex. The library is on the first **floor**.

④ a / an

- نضع (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن ونضع (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك.
a uniform / a university - an hour

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Medicines usually contain many
a. chemicals b. chemistry c. chemical d. chemically
- Could I your dictionary, please?
a. lend b. burn c. park d. borrow
- The by the Nile is very good for growing crops.
a. floor b. roof c. soil d. wall
- Mr Hamdy is honest man.
a. a b. no article c. these d. an



Reading

SB Page (38)

استمع إلى النصوص



What do you wear?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.

Noha : I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but I'm trying to buy **fewer**⁽¹⁾ clothes. Clothes factories **cause**⁽²⁾ a lot of **pollution**⁽³⁾, so they are bad for the **environment**⁽⁴⁾. So sometimes I **borrow**⁽⁵⁾ my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the same **size**⁽⁶⁾.



Ayman : These **trainers**⁽⁷⁾ were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like doing sport and these trainers are **much better**⁽⁸⁾ than the ones I **used to**⁽⁹⁾ wear. I usually wear sports clothes because they are **comfortable**⁽¹⁰⁾.



Dalida : This is my **school uniform**⁽¹¹⁾. I have to wear it every **school day**⁽¹²⁾. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's **wedding**⁽¹³⁾. She's **amazing at**⁽¹⁴⁾ sewing. She always makes us clothes for **special occasions**^{*(15)}.



Say it correctly

* **occasion** تنطق بحروف (cc) مثل حرف (k) في هذه الكلمة وينطق حرف (S) مثلما ينطق في كلمة (television)

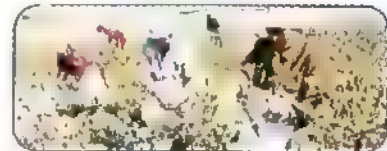
- ١- أقل
- ٢- يسبب
- ٣- التلوث
- ٤- البيئة
- ٥- يستلف
- ٦- مقاس
- ٧- حذاء رياضي
- ٨- أفضل كثيراً
- ٩- اعتاد أن
- ١٠- مريح
- ١١- زي مدرسي موحد
- ١٢- يوم دراسي
- ١٣- حفل زفاف
- ١٤- مدهش في
- ١٥- مناسبات خاصة

SB Page (40)

Egyptian linen and cotton

1- Linen in the past

Egypt is famous for **growing crops**⁽¹⁾ to make **netoria**⁽²⁾. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants **by the Nile** to make **linen**⁽³⁾. **Almost**⁽⁴⁾ everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make **baskets**⁽⁵⁾.



- ١- زراعة المحاصيل
- ٢- مادة خام
- ٣ الكتان
- ٤- تقريباً
- ٥- سلال «جمع سلة»

2- Modern cotton

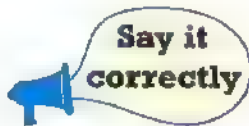
Today, Egypt an cotton⁽⁹⁾ is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury^{*} clothes⁽¹⁰⁾ and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry⁽¹¹⁾, from farmers⁽¹²⁾ to people making or selling⁽¹³⁾ clothes and material.

3- Why cotton is grown in Egypt

The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect⁽¹⁴⁾ for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked⁽¹⁵⁾ by hand to keep it soft⁽¹⁶⁾.

4- A greener future

When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals⁽¹⁷⁾. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect⁽¹⁸⁾ the environment and use less water⁽¹⁹⁾.



* luxury

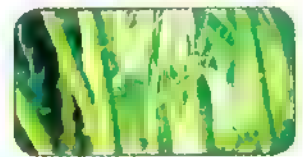
◀ ينطق حرف (u) الأول في هذه الكلمة مثلما ينطق في كلمة (but)
بينما ينطق حرفي (xu) مثلما ينطق المقطع (clio) في كلمة (action)

- ٦- القطن المصري
- ٧- ملابس فخمة
- ٨- صناعة
- ٩- مزارعين
- ١٠- يبيع
- ١١- مثالي
- ١٢- يقطع
- ١٣- ناعم
- ١٤- مواد كيميائية
- ١٥- يحمي
- ١٦- ماء أقل

WB Page (96)

Is bamboo the new cotton?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo⁽¹⁾ instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result⁽²⁾, it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.



- ١- الخيزران
- ٢- بدلاً من
- ٣- نتيجة لذلك

Videoscript

SB Page (39)

Narrator:

Do you have to wear any special clothes⁽¹⁾ for school? Do your parents have to wear any special clothes when they go to work?

Many people wear a uniform. This is so people know what school they go to or what job they do.

Some workers wear special clothes to keep them safe⁽²⁾ at work.

- ١- ملابس خاصة
- ٢- آمن

These men are repairing a road. They are wearing bright yellow jackets so that car drivers can see them easily. This is a hard hat. Construction workers⁽³⁾ wear these strong, plastic hats to protect their heads.

٣- عمال البناء
٤- رجال الاطفاء
٥- خوذة
٦- قفازات

Firefighters⁽⁴⁾ also wear special clothes while they are working. The jacket and trousers that they wear are made from a material that protects firefighters from the dangerous, hot temperatures. The helmet⁽⁵⁾ protects a firefighter's head and eyes from the fire and the gloves⁽⁶⁾ protect their hands.

Do you know of any other jobs in which the workers have to wear special clothes?

Exercises on Vocabulary

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- Bamboo is an important _____ in China. البامبو 2024
a. cotton b. linen c. place d. crop
- The rich family live in a _____ big house. البحيرة 2024
a. nature b. industry c. luxury d. hard
- We need good _____ to grow many crops. اخصبهم 2024
a. soil b. topic c. planet d. industry
- My sister's _____ is a happy occasion for us. عيد القوم 2024
a. sewing b. wedding c. weeding d. accident
- _____ means expensive and of good quality. مسا، قيمه 2024
a. Break b. Weak c. Poisonous d. Luxury
- Mohamed Salah is a/an _____ sports star. البدريين 2024
a. unknown b. famous c. weak d. low
- Egyptian cotton is used to make _____ clothes. لراوية الحمير 2024
a. heavy b. loose c. luxury d. cheap
- My dress is damaged so my mother is _____ it. لديفعله 2024
a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
- My father likes to wear a suit on _____ occasions. اوقات 2024
a. private b. special c. general d. public

بنی سويف 2023

10. The desert is a difficult to live in!

- a. park b. city c. village d. environment

11. The cotton makes cotton clothes.

النشرفية - أبو حماد 2023

- a. electricity b. industry c. occasion d. environment

12. If something is a special, it means it is an important event for you. **WB**

- a. size b. environment c. hobby d. occasion

13. When you wear the same clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes. **WB**

- a. size b. occasion c. price d. environment

14. are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold. **SB**

- a. Chemicals b. Baskets c. Crops d. Soils

Bit by Bit Exercises

15. Can I your pen, please?

- a. advise b. build c. cause d. borrow

16. It's not good to flowers from a garden.

- a. pick b. borrow c. shop d. protect

17. Using fewer chemicals may help the environment.

- a. protect b. borrow c. damage d. pick

18. The soil in Egypt is for growing crops. That's really wonderful.

- a. luxury b. modern c. bad d. perfect

19. We don't use many on our farm these days.

- a. chemicals b. classical c. electrical d. fruits

20. Cotton is a material.

- a. hard b. rough c. wet d. soft

21. Eating much fat is bad your health.

- a. at b. on c. from d. for

Language

1- one / ones

• نستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الأسماء التي ذكرت سابقاً في الجملة:

Ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.

Ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

• يمكن أن يسبق (one) كلمة (another) بمعنى (أخر).

Ex. This handbag is small. Please, show me another one.

• يمكن أن يسبق (ones / one) كلمة (the other) بمعنى (الأخر / الآخرون).

Ex. This is my friend Omar. The other one is his brother.

Ex. These books are Class 1B books. Please, get the other ones.

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I don't like this T-shirt. Please, show me another

- a. one b. only c. once d. ones

2. Sameh has got new CDs and old

- a. one b. none c. ones d. no one

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. This is my seat. Would you sit on another (ones)?

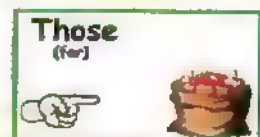
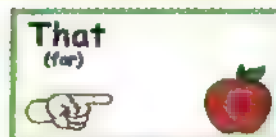
2. My glasses are broken. I need new (one).

2- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة this / these عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء القريبة منا.

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة that / those عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

this	these	that	those
هذا/هذه (للمفرد القريب)	هؤلاء (للمجمع القريب)	تلك/ذلك (للمفرد البعيد)	اولئك (للمجمع البعيد)



Ex. Take this book, it's yours.

Ex. These books on the shelf are my dad's.

Ex. That car over there is mine.

Ex. Can you see those people standing there?



الكلمات **news/information/advice/equipment** etc. هي كلمات لا تُعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد ولذلك يأتي قبلها **this/that**.

Ex. I hope you will find **this information** useful.

Ex. Are you sure **this news** is true?

تستخدم **this / that** مع التعبير (زوج من **pair of**)

Ex. I like **this pair of shoes**.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. You must answer all _____ questions. الامتحان - رتبة العامة 2024
 a. this b. thus c. these d. that
2. This TV is modern but that _____ is old. الامتحان 2024
 a. ones b. it c. won d. one
3. These trousers are very big. Do you have smaller _____? الامتحان 2024
 a. one b. ones c. once d. these
4. A: Is _____ your pen? B: I found it under the desk. الامتحان 2024
 a. this b. they c. these d. those
5. These books are funny, but those _____ are very boring. الامتحان 2024
 a. one b. once c. ones d. only
6. Shall I buy these black jeans or those _____? الامتحان 2024
 a. any b. some c. one d. ones
7. Those black shoes are _____ I like them so much. الامتحان 2024
 a. the one b. their c. them d. the ones
8. _____ birds are flying very high. WB الجيرة - شمال الجيرة 2022
 a. These b. This c. Those d. That
9. Should I buy the red chairs or the black _____? WB
 a. ones b. once c. one d. twice
10. I bought _____ shoes last week. SB
 a. that b. this c. these d. they
11. I really like _____ pairs of trousers. WB العربية - رتبة 2023
 a. these b. this c. that d. a
12. I like _____ smart, red, cotton T-shirt. SB
 a. these b. those c. that d. some

13. How much are _____ necklaces in the window?

- a. this b. that c. a d. those

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. Don't do these exercises, do the other _____.

- a. once b. it c. ones d. one

15. This bag is yours. The other _____ is mine.

- a. ones b. one c. bags d. none

16. _____ pair of black boots is better than the brown pair. I'll take it.

- a. Those b. This c. These d. They

17. These shoes are small, can I try the other _____?

- a. one b. once c. ones d. none

18. _____ is my car.

- a. These b. This c. Then d. Those

19. Which of _____ books would you like?

- a. those b. that c. this d. then

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Those earrings are the _____ (one) my mum gave me. مناسبة ارفياض 2024

2. Nada likes _____ (those) pair of earrings.  الدلائج 2024

3. I lost my socks, I need to buy new _____ (one). العاهرة 2024

4. Those bags are the _____ (one) that my father loves. اسد رسي 2024

5. This book is the only _____ (ones) that I prefer. حيرة 2024

6. I lost my glasses, I need to buy new _____ (one). المهلبه 2024

7. _____ (This) bags are very nice. الدقهلبه 2024

8. I don't know _____ (these) people over there.

9. Wear _____ (that) sunglasses to protect your eyes from the sun.



Speaking



Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التي يمتلكها/ يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) do you have/ own? كم عدد (زوج من) التي تمتلكها؟
 - Which is / are your favourite? أي هو/ هم المفضل/ المفضلون لديك؟

- How many shirts / pairs of shoes do you have / own?

- Which one / ones is / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have about four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones.

أمتلك حوالي أربعة أزواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائي الرياضي هو المفضل لدى.
 ونسأل عن المحل الذي تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes store do you like? Which one is your favourite?

أي محلات الملابس تحب؟ أيهما المفضل لديك؟

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya wants a dress for a special occasion.

مهاجرة - فهد - المصطفى - 2023

Assistant : How can I help you?

Aya : ①

Assistant : What special occasion do you want a dress for?

Aya : ②

Assistant : Congratulations! ③

Aya : I'd like pink, please.

Assistant : ④

Aya : Oh! It's wonderful. I'll take it.

Assistant : Anything else?

Aya : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. When you ... something from a friend, you take something and give it back. WB

- a. give b. borrow c. check d. lend

2. The ... is the people and things around you in your life. SB

- a. crop b. environment c. industry d. wedding

3. ... means expensive and of good quality.

مهاجرة - فهد - المصطفى - 2023

- a. Week b. Strong c. Luxury d. Silly

4. Chemicals the environment. We don't have to use them. القهره - اراوية الحمراء 2023
 a. collect b. protect c. pollute d. pick

Exercises on Language

5. Where did you get sunglasses? SB
 a. those b. that c. this d. then
6. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black? SB
 a. once b. one c. two d. ones
7. are my dad's shoes. They are brown. البنوفية - بنسداد 2022
 a. This b. That c. Those d. It
8. Can I buy earrings in the window? SB
 a. an b. that c. this d. those

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I don't like this meal, I want the other (ones). عاهرة - هارون لرصيد 2023
2. Samir has got a blue bag. I have a red (ones). البنوفية - مويلا 2023
3. Which socks are you going to wear? These (one) or those ones? SB
4. I like (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new? SB
5. This is my seat. Would you sit on another (ones)? صوم 2023

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words: WB (محاب عنه في احر الوحدة)

to your friend about a description of a room in your house.

- Your name is Reda and your email address is redamail@gmail.com.
- Your friend's name is Hani(a) and his/ her email address is hani(a)@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What room do you want to describe?
- How does it look?
- Where are things put?
- What is there on the floor?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I want to describe
- My room looks
- The first thing you see in it is

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41 - 42 WB pages 97 - 98

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



customer	زبون	cool	رائع
chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج	useful	مفيد
fantastic	رائع	help (ed)	يساعد
jacket	جاكيت	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
tool	أداة (يدوية)	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس
headphones	سماعات الرأس		



Vocabulary

What colour..?	مالون...؟	changing room	حجرة تغيير الملابس
advert (advertisement)	إعلان	great-grandfather	الجد الأكبر
extra	زائد / إضافي	(be) interested	مهتم
shopkeeper	بائع في محل	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
socks	جوارب (شرابات)	include (d)	يتضمن / يشتمل على
perfectly	بشكل متقن	email (ed)	يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني

Engage & Interact

What type....?	ما نوع.....؟	buy online	يشترى عبر الإنترنت
get married	يتزوج	for sale	للبيع
looks nice	يبدو لطيفاً	for more information	لمزيد من المعلومات
a bit big	كبير بعض الشيء	look for	يبحث عن
move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)	keep things in	يحفظ بالأشياء بداخله
discuss the price	يناقش السعر	in + colour	ملون باللون.....
Let me look.	دعني انظر / أبحث.	at the top	في أعلاه / قمته

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

take

ياخذ

Past simple

took

Past Participle

taken

fly

يطير

flew

flown

Word

Meaning

Opposite

useful

مفيد

helpful

useless

غير مفيد

boring

ممل

dull

interesting

شيق

big

كبير

large

small

صغير



Definitions

changing room

حجرة تغيير الملابس

a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop

fit

يناسب / يلائم

be the correct size or **shape**¹ for someone or something

try .. on

يقيس ملابس

put on² a piece of **clothing**³ to **check**⁴ if it fits you or if you like it

١- شكل
٢- يرتدي
٣- الملابس
٤- يتأكد



Language Notes

1) Adjectives ending in (-ed) or (-ing)

- تستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) والصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) لوصف العاقل وغير العاقل.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) إلى أن الموصوف يشعر أو لديه هذه الصفة.

Ex. If you are **interested**, email me and we can discuss the price.

- تشير الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) إلى من / ما يسبب الصفة.

Ex. The shop has got good clothes. They are very **interesting**.



- The lion was **frightening**.

- The lion was **frightened** when it saw the hunters.

- في المثال الأول الأسد مخيف (هو من يسبب الصفة).

- في المثال الثاني الأسد خائف (هو من يشعر بالصفة).

② would ('d) like

• would ('d) like to = want to + inf. / n يرغب - يود أن / يريد أن

Ex. I would('d) like / want to go shopping tonight.

Ex. I would('d) like / want tea, please.

③ Which

- نسأل بكلمة الاستفهام (Which) للتخيار بين شيئين أو عدة أشياء.

Ex. Which shirt would you like to buy, the blue one or the green one?

Ex. Which bag is yours?

④ tool / device

• tool أداة تحملها في يدك لعمل شيء
(فأس / شاكوش / مقص الخ..)

Ex. Carpenters use tools like hammers and saws.

• device آلة أو جهاز (العمل وظيفة معينة)

Ex. Scientists use different devices in laboratories.

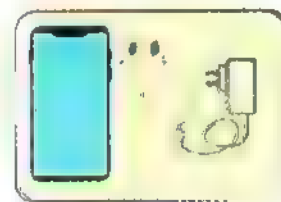
⑤ contain / include

• contain يحتوي على: (بداخله - شيء داخل شيء)

Ex. The box contains a mobile, charger and headphones.

• include يشتمل على (من ضمن محتوياته - معه - ليس بداخله)

Ex. The phone includes a charger and headphones.



Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Wafaa showed Maha her new dress, but Maha wasn't
a. interest b. interested c. interesting d. interests
- What would you like for lunch?
a. eating b. eat c. to eat d. to eating
- colour do you like most?
a. Where b. Whose c. Who d. Which
- Carpenters use different like hammers and saws.
a. devices b. tools c. pools d. advice
- The list my name.
a. consists b. contains c. includes d. writes



Audioscript

[SB Page (41)]

استمع إلى النصوص



Shopkeeper⁽¹⁾ : Hello, can I help you?

Eman : Hi, yes, I'm looking for a dress for a special occasion⁽²⁾. It's my brother's birthday party⁽³⁾ next week.

Shopkeeper : Oh, nice. What type⁽⁴⁾ of dress would you like?

Eman : I'd like something like this one.. but do you have a different colour? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper : We have this one in blue⁽⁵⁾.

Eman : That's beautiful! Could I try it on⁽⁶⁾?

Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room⁽⁷⁾ is here... What do you think? Does it fit⁽⁸⁾?

Eman : It's a bit⁽⁹⁾ big. Do you have a smaller size⁽¹⁰⁾?

Shopkeeper : Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman : Thank you. It fits perfectly⁽¹¹⁾, I'll take it!

Shopkeeper : Great!



- ١- بائع في محل
- ٢- مناسبة خاصة
- ٣- حفلة عيد ميلاد
- ٤- ما نوع
- ٥- باللون الأزرق
- ٦- يقيس ملابس
- ٧- حجرة تغيير الملابس
- ٨- يناسب / يلائم
- ٩- قليلاً
- ١٠- مقاس
- ١١- بشكل مثالي

[WB Page (97)]

Shopkeeper : Hello, can I help you?

Ayman : Hi, yes, I'm looking for a jacket for a special occasion. My cousin is getting married⁽¹⁾ next week.

Shopkeeper : That's nice. What type of jacket would you like?

Ayman : I'd like something loose⁽²⁾ but smart.

Shopkeeper : We have this black jacket, or that red one in the window.

Ayman : They're both nice. Could I try on the blue one?

Shopkeeper : Of course⁽³⁾. The changing room is there.

Ayman : What do you think? Does it fit?

Shopkeeper : It's bit big. I have a smaller one you can try on.

Ayman : Thank you. Yes, this one fits perfectly. I'll take it!

Shopkeeper : Good.

- ١- سيتزوج
- ٢- فضفاض
- ٣- بالتأكيد



Reading

[SB Page (42)]

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag. It was a present⁽¹⁾ for my birthday⁽²⁾ but I already have one that is the same! It is very large⁽³⁾ and perfect for work or school. The price⁽⁴⁾ is LE500. Email⁽⁵⁾ me for more information⁽⁶⁾.



- ١- هدية
- ٢- عيد ميلاد
- ٣- كبيرة الحجم
- ٤- سعر
- ٥- يرسل رسالة بريد إلكتروني
- ٦- معلومات

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Customer : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first?

Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is over there.

Customer : Thank you.

Shopkeeper : Do they fit you?

Customer : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size?

Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.

Customer : They're great. I'll take them.

I'm selling a cool, old wooden chest of drawers⁽¹⁾. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather⁽²⁾! It's large and perfect for keeping things in, but we have moved house⁽³⁾ and our new home is too small for it. If you are interested⁽⁴⁾, email me and we can discuss the price⁽⁵⁾.

Would you like to buy a really useful tool⁽⁶⁾?

I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables⁽⁷⁾ - and the price is not expensive⁽⁸⁾.

It's very cheap!

Email me if you are interested.



- ١- خزانة ذات ادراج
- ٢- الجد الأكبر
- ٣- ينتقل من المنزل (يعزل)
- ٤- مهتم
- ٥- يناقش السعر
- ٦- أداة مفيدة
- ٧- يزرع الخضروات
- ٨- غالي الثمن

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing casual clothes such as⁽¹⁾ T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70th birthday! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a pretty⁽²⁾ pair of earrings.

Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

- ١- مثل
- ٢- جميل

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exams Exercises

1. My father gave me one to listen to my favourite songs. الربيع الحمراء 2024
 a. cup b. app c. motorbike d. headphone
2. That shirt doesn't you. You need a bigger one. بلقاس، 2024
 a. save b. stay c. fit d. work
3. The shops are very busy today. There are too many بلعاس 2023
 a. assistants b. customers c. shopkeepers d. sellers

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. There is a big chest of in my room.
 a. adverts b. drawers c. drums d. drawings
5. The prices in that shop are I can buy many things.
 a. useless b. terrible c. fantastic d. loose
6. We wear in winter to keep warm.
 a. jackets b. earrings c. sandals d. glasses
7. I succeeded because I followed your advice.
 a. bad b. careless c. useless d. useful
8. When I the dress on, I found it very big.
 a. kept b. tried c. helped d. tired
9. There are many rooms in that clothes shop.
 a. changing c. charging d. choosing d. sharing
10. A hammer is one of a carpenter's قلوب 2023
 a. devices b. programs c. machines d. tools
11. These trousers don't me very well. They are too tight.
 a. fit b. try c. check d. discuss
12. The shopkeeper gave the the right size.
 a. concert b. custom c. customer d. costume
13. colour do you want the jacket?
 a. Who b. What c. Why d. Whose

Speaking

At a clothes shop

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| - Can I help you? | هل أستطيع مساعدتك؟ |
| - Does it fit you? | هل يناسبك المقاس؟ |
| - The changing room is there. | حجرة تغيير الملابس هناك. |
| - It's pounds. | ثمانها جنيهًا. |

– العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

أريد مثل هذا.
هل أستطيع قياسها؟
هل لديك مقاس أصغر؟
كم ثمنها؟
سوف أخذها.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

SB

Ali is at a clothes shop.

Shopkeeper : Hello sir, can I help you?

Ali : ① I want a T-shirt like this, please.

Shopkeeper : Here you are, sir.

Ali : ② ?

Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is there.

Ali : It's a bit big. ③ ?

Shopkeeper : ④ ?

Ali : How much is it?

Shopkeeper : ⑤ ?

Ali : OK! I'll take it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is using to listen to music.

شهر 2023

- a. glasses b. time machines c. bowls d. headphones

2. The shopkeeper asked me to try the shirt in the changing room.

- a. of b. on c. off d. over

3. book is Sameh's?

- a. Which b. When c. Who d. Where

4. My parents married twenty years ago.

- a. included b. gave c. got d. took

5. If you are interested, email us and we can the price.

WB

- a. talk b. speak c. discuss d. skip

6. I was talking to Ali, but he wasn't in my talk.

- a. interested b. interest c. interests d. interesting

Key Vocabulary

belt	حزام	chemical	مادة كيميائية
headscarf	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	crop	محصول
scarf	شال / وشاح / كوفية	customer	زبون
handbag	حقيبة يد (حريمي)	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
trainers	حذاء رياضي	fantastic	رائع
earrings	قرط (حلق)	jacket	جاكيت
galabeya	جلباب	tool	أداة (يدوية)
sunglasses	نظارة شمس	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sandals	صندل	cool	رائع
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	useful	مفيد
luxury	شيء فخم / فاخر	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
industry	صناعة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
perfect	مثالي (في أحسن حال)	protect (ed)	يحمي
environment	البيئة	help (ed)	يساعد
famous	مشهور	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
soft	ناعم / لين	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس

Adjectives for clothes

smart	انيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
traditional	تقليدي	colourful	زاهي الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملاسن) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual	غير رسمي (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
cheap	رخيص	striped	مقلم / مخطط
expensive	غالي الثمن	heavy	ثقيل
strange	غريب		



Language

1- Adjective order

ترتيب الصفات

• يراعى الترتيب الآتي عند وصف شيء:

Size / Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	Noun
big / lovely	square	new	black	leather	bag

Ex. He wore a long, green, cotton shirt.

2- one / ones

• نستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الأسماء التي ذكرت سابقاً في الجملة:

Ex. This watch is the one my father bought me.

Ex. These books are the ones I borrowed from the library.

3- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء القريبة منا.

this هذا/ هذه (للمفرد القريب) these هؤلاء (للمجمع القريب)

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

that تلك/ ذلك (للمفرد البعيد) those أولئك (للمجمع البعيد)

Speaking

1 Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التي يمتلكها/ يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) do you have / own?
- Whichis / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have four pairs of socks, but the yellow pair is my favourite.

- ونسال عن المحل الذي تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:

- Which clothes shops do you like? Which one is your favourite?

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- Does it fit you?
- The changing room is there.
- It's pounds.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like like this.
- Could I try it on?
- Do you have a smaller size?
- How much is it / does it cost?
- I'll take it.

General Exercises on Unit 10

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is at a shoe shop to buy a pair of shoes.

Shopkeeper : Hello! Can I help you?

Adam : ①

Shopkeeper : ②

Adam : Size 39

Shopkeeper : ③

Adam : Black.

Shopkeeper : Here you are. Do you like them?

Adam : ④ How much are they?

Shopkeeper : ⑤

Adam : Ok. Thanks. Here is the money.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. Plastic, linen and glass are all

- a. foods
- b. plants
- c. subjects
- d. materials

2. The price is not it's very cheap.

- a. funny
- b. inexpensive
- c. expensive
- d. loose

3. I can't find clothes to me in this shop.

- a. keep
- b. fit
- c. hit
- d. try

4. We house to a bigger one last week.

- a. grew
- b. turned
- c. moved
- d. helped

5. I'm saving these clothes for a special

- a. occasion
- b. crop
- c. industry
- d. equipment

بدرشيل 2023

WB

Exercises on Language

6. We went to the island in a/an boat. SB
 a. long, old, wooden b. wooden, long, old
 c. old, wooden, long d. old, long, wooden
7. We saw a / an statue in the museum. WB
 a. old, gold, big b. big, gold, old
 c. gold, big, old d. big, old, gold
8. market it amazing! There are so many cool things here. SB
 a. These b. That c. Those d. They
9. The man wore sunglasses. WB
 a. green, pretty, plastic b. pretty, plastic, green
 c. pretty, green, plastic d. plastic, green, pretty
10. Those earrings are the my mum gave me. SB
 a. ones b. none c. once d. one

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. These glasses don't fit me. I want the red (one). مستوى 2022 - طرم
2. Where did you buy (these) pair of socks?
3. He wore a (blue, nice, wool) jumper. نفس 2023
4. How much (be) that necklace in the window? WB

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

SB

(محب عنه في اخر الوحدة)

"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the advert about?
- What is the description of what you want to sell?
- How did you get it? - How much is it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm selling a/an
- It's
- It was a present from
- It is pounds.



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Leila has pairs of sandals.

- a. three b. two c. four d. five

2. Leila bought them last

- a. year b. month c. week d. summer

B Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Sara is talking to Mona who bought some clothes last weekend.

Sara : Hi! Mona, where did you go last weekend?

Mona : ①

Sara : Shopping! ②?

Mona : I bought a T-shirt and a pair of sunglasses.

Sara : ③?

Mona : I went with my brother and sister.

C Usage

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at these trousers. Which do you like more?

- a. one b. ones c. one's d. once

2. He some flowers and gave them to his mum.

- a. picked b. backed c. broke d. booked

3. Some people still like clothes.

- a. white, linen, loose b. linen, loose, white
c. loose, white, linen d. loose, linen, white

4. Women prefer wearing in their ears.

- a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings

5. He began to look a new job after he left his old one.

- a. forward b. up c. at d. for

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The computer is widely used these days. You can find one in every house. Old people and kids use it. People use computers to help them with their work. Teachers, nowadays, use it in teaching different subjects. They can prepare their lessons by using the PowerPoint program. Students, also use it for their studies. The young use it to make friends all over the world using the internet. Businessmen use it in their trade to import and export their goods. They can do agreements from their offices instead of travelling long distances. By using the internet, you can read news from all over the world through any website.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do students use computers?
2. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?
3. How are computers useful?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. people can use computers.
 a. Old b. Young c. Old and young d. No
5. According to the passage, teachers can use the ... program in teaching.
 a. Access b. PowerPoint c. Excel d. Windows

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. I bought a plastic, red, big ball. (.....)
2. This pen is yours but those one is mine. (.....)
3. The red T-shirt is nice but the blue ones isn't my size. (.....)
4. My father has a loose, cotton, beautiful galabeya. (.....)

القلمونية - طوخ 2022

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Industry in Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Paragraphs & Emails

مقررات إنشائية ورسائل بريد الكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- An advert for a mobile phone I want to sell

I'm selling a mobile phone. It's new. I didn't use it. I already have one that is the same. It is very modern. It is black with a large touch screen. It can go on the internet. It has got an MP3. You can listen to music and watch videos on it. It can store 3000 phone numbers. It has got a wonderful camera. It can take many photos at one time. It's perfect for work or study. The price is LE 5000. If you are interested, email me for more information "hero55@yahoo.com".

2. Industry in Egypt

Egypt has many types of industry. Cotton industry is one of these. Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. It is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry.

3- A special occasion I am going to

I am going to a special occasion next week. My friend's sister is getting married next Sunday. He invited me to the wedding. It will be a big party. It will be at a big hotel. Unfortunately, I don't have something new to wear. I want to look smart in the party. I will go to a clothes shop tomorrow. I will buy a jacket. I saw it in its window last week. I will buy a new pair of shoes, too. I like black, leather shoes. I think these items will be perfect for this occasion.

Emails

1- A description of the clothes I usually wear

From : tamer505@yahoo.com
To : ihabomar22@gmail.com
Subject : A description of my clothes

Dear Ihab,

How are you and your family? I want to tell you something about the clothes I wear. I usually wear casual clothes. They are very comfortable. They look nice. I don't like wearing traditional clothes. I need clothes that help me move freely. I buy my clothes by myself at the clothes shops. They are a little expensive, but I like that. I want to hear from you soon.

Yours,
 Tamer

2- A description of a room in my house

From : hani(a)@yahoo.com
To : redamail@gmail.com
Subject : A room in my house

Dear Hani(a),

How are you and your family? I want to describe my bedroom. My room looks great, especially when I moved the furniture around. Now, the first thing you see when you walk into the room is my bed. There's a bookshelf above my bed where I put my school books. To the right of my bed, there is a desk with a lamp on top. On the floor there is a yellow carpet. I hope you enjoyed this description of my room! Please, write to me about your bedroom.

Best wishes.
 Yours,
 Reda



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- is famous for growing crops to make material.
a. England b. Lebanon c. Egypt d. France
- The Ancient Egyptians grew by the Nile.
a. fruit b. vegetables c. trees d. plants
- Almost everyone in Ancient Egypt wore clothes made of
a. linen b. leather c. cotton d. string
- The Ancient Egyptians also used the plants to make
a. boxes b. baskets c. bags d. shoes

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Belal is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Belal : ①

Assistant : What would you like to buy?

Belal : ②

Assistant : ③ ?

Belal : I want it blue.

Assistant : ④

Belal : ⑤ ?

Assistant : It's 200 pounds.

Belal : Here you are. Thank you.

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often

wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes. This choice of clothes may be very different to the clothes they would wear outside. People often wear clothes which match their size, style and their age.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "they" refers to
 a. clothes b. uniforms c. people d. homes
- People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own
 a. homes b. seas c. streets d. banks

B. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- What do people in some jobs have to wear?

- Do you usually wear formal or casual clothes? Why?

- What kind of clothes do people wear at a wedding?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- These books are funny, but these are very boring! WB
 a. ones b. once c. one d. only
- A necklace is made of ابن المرسي 2023
 a. wool b. cotton c. wood d. gold
- I love wearing my galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer. WB
 a. cotton, long, loose b. long, cotton, loose
 c. long, loose, cotton d. cotton, loose, long
- All people know Mo Salah. He is very طوخ 2023
 a. greedy b. famous c. colourful d. unknown
- Could I this dress on? رشيد 2023
 a. try b. dry c. fry d. drought
- My friend took my jacket as we are the same
 a. colour b. time c. size d. subject
- She likes to wear a beautiful necklace and other
 a. handbag b. jewellery c. glass d. plastic

8. They have to wear clothes in that special party.
 a. traditional b. electric c. wooden d. dirty

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. He wore a (long, cotton, red) galabeya. WB
2. These shoes aren't good, I want those (one) in the window, please.
3. I am selling (pair) of cool, new sunglasses. SB
4. I like (these) leather belt.
5. This glass is dirty. Can I have a clean (ones), please?

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

WB

(محاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

A special occasion you are going to

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What special occasion are you going to?
- Where will it be?
- What will you wear for it?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I'm going to
- It will be in
- I'll buy a/an to wear for it.



**New
Hello!**



The future of our planet

Objectives

Reading:

Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard

Writing:

A paragraph about an environmental problem; a holiday postcard

Listening:

Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements

Speaking:

Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions

Language:

be going to and the present continuous for the future

Life skills:

Problem solving; Negotiation; Collaboration



Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



solar panels	أنواع الطاقة الشمسية	save (d)	ينقذ / يوفر
rubbish	قمامة	reduce (d)	يقلل
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	damage (d)	يتلف / يدمر
wildlife*	الحياة البرية	install (ed)	يركب / يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
roof	سطح المنزل	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
drought*	جفاف	plant (ed)	يُزرع
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	repair (ed)	يُصلح
	(مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	melt (ed)	يذوب / ينصهر
reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	موسيقى	musical	موسيقي
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي

Vocabulary

planet	كوكب	equipment	معدات
climate change	تغير المناخ	local people	سكان محليون
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
traffic	المركبات في حركة المرور / المرور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	trekking	رحلة شاقة «على الأقدام»
online post	منشور على الانترنت	washing machine	غسالة
race	سباق	electric cars	سيارات تعمل بالكهرباء
extra	إضافي / زائد	events	أحداث
path	ممر	hunter	صياد
solution	حل	commentator	معلق التلفاز
intention	نية	approach (ed)	يقترُب من
vehicle	مركبة «عربية»	flood (ed) (n)	يفيض / فيضان
finishing line	خط النهاية	improve (d)	يحسن / يطور
wherever	في أي مكان		

* الحياة البرية هي الكائنات التي تعيش في البرية سواء حيوانات أو نباتات

Verbs & Nouns that go together

install solar panels	يركب ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	pollution	يقلل التلوث
recycle mobile phones	يعيد تصنيع هواتف محمولة	pollution	يسبب التلوث
pick up rubbish	يلتقط القمامة	the environment	يدمر البيئة
plant trees	يزرع أشجار	too much water	يستخدم الكثير من الماء
recycle plastic bottles	يعيد استخدام زجاجات بلاستيك	leave rubbish	يترك القمامة
save wildlife	ينقذ الحيوانات والنباتات في البرية	play music	يعزف موسيقى
		hotels	يبنى فنادق
		win a race	يفوز بسباق

Collocations & Phrases

get worse	يزداد سوءاً	make money	يكسب مالاً
later this year	في وقت لاحق هذا العام	savefrom	يلقذ.... من
keepsafe	يحافظ على سلامة.....	stop....from	يمنع..... من
throw away	يتخلص من	on your own	بنفسك/ بمفردك
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	dangerous for	خطير على
go to bed	يذهب للنوم	go for his holiday	يذهب في إجازته
go trekking	يقوم برحلة على الأقدام	at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
come on quick	تعالى بسرعة	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
The alarm o'clock didn't go off	المنبه لم يرن	change into	يتحول إلى

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

catch	يلحق بـ / يمسك
win	يفوز
forget	ينسى
ring	يرن
throw	يرمى - يلقي - يتخلص من

Past simple

caught
won
forgot
rang
threw

Past Participle

caught
won
forgotten
rung
thrown

Word

Meaning

Opposite

drought	جفاف	dryness	flood	فيضان
repair	يصلح	fix	damage	يتلف
install	يركب/ يثبت (جهاز/ تطبيق)	set up	uninstall	يزيل تثبيت
local	محلي	national	international	دولي
reduce	يقلل	decrease	increase	يزيد



Definitions

install يركب / يثبت جهاز	put something ⁽¹⁾ somewhere so it is ready to use	١- معدات ٢- كمية
reduce يقلل	make something less in amount ⁽²⁾ or size	٣- يصلح ٤- مكسور
repair يصلح	fix something that is broken ⁽³⁾	٥- خطر ٦- كهرباء
save ينقذ	make something safe from danger ⁽⁵⁾	٧- رياح
solar panels الواح الطاقة الشمسية	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity ⁽⁶⁾	
wind turbine توربينات الرياح	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity	
roof سطح المنزل	the top part of a building that protects it from rain, the sun, etc	
wildlife الحياة البرية	animals and plants that grow independently of people, usually in natural conditions.	

5

Language Notes

- ① **environment / environment** **nature / nature**
music / music **tradition / traditional**

- يمكن ان نحول بعض الأسماء الى صفات باضافة (al) إلى الاسم:

Ex. It's a **tradition** to colour eggs in Sham el Nessim.

Ex. The **desert** is a **traditional** item of clothing in Egypt.

- ② **because of / because**

• **because of + noun**

بسبب

• **because + فعل + فاعل**

لأن

Ex. I was late **because of** the bad traffic.

Ex. I was late **because** the traffic was bad.

- ③ **The prefix "re-"**

مثل:

- نضيف البادئة "re" لبعض الأفعال لتعطي معنى مرة أخرى

reuse	يعيد استخدام	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
recycle	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع	redo	يعيد فعل

- ④ **electric / electricity / electronic**

• **electric**

كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)

• **electricity**

كهرباء

Ex. **Electric** cars are good for the environment.

Ex. Solar panels make **electricity**.

• electronic

اليكترونى

Ex. My little brother likes electronic games.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Scientists are trying to solve problems.
a. environment b. environmental c. tradition d. music
- I was late the heavy traffic.
a. because b. reason c. cause d. because of
- We add the prefix to the verb "use" to give the meaning "again".
a. re- b. dis- c. un- d. bi-
- Is your cooker or gas?
a. electronic b. electricity c. electric d. electrician



Reading

SB Page (45)

The rivers in Kaziranga National Park¹ in India often flood²* and the problem is getting worse because of climate change³. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife⁴ from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to keep me safe!

There's a lot of air pollution⁵* from the traffic⁶ in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce⁷ air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof⁸* of our school and make a school roof garden.

I love phones, but I know that throwing away⁹ old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project¹⁰ in school to recycle¹¹ mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to separate¹² parts from them to repair¹³ other phones.

استمع إلى النصوص



- ١- حديقة كاليرانجا الوطنية (بالهند)
- ٢- يفيض
- ٣- تغير المناخ
- ٤- الحياة البرية
- ٥- تلوث الهواء
- ٦- امركبات في حركة المرور
- ٧- يقلل
- ٨- السطح
- ٩- التخلص من
- ١٠- مشروع
- ١١- يعيد تصنيع
- ١٢- يعيد استخدام
- ١٣- يصلح

Say it correctly

- * drought تنطق الحروف (ought) في كلمة drought مثل كلمة (out).
- * flood ينطق حرفي (oo) في كلمة flood مثل حرف (u) في كلمة bus.
- * pollution ينطق حرف (u) في كلمة pollution مثل حرف (u) في كلمة (blue) وليس مثل (u) في كلمة (uniform).



Audioscript

SB Page (46)

Narrator (1)

Boy : Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! Come on quick!

Narrator (2)

Girl 1 : The water's a bit⁽¹⁾ cold at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me⁽²⁾!

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming!

Narrator (3)

Voice : We are now approaching 'Station Square'⁽³⁾.

Boy 1 : Is this our stop⁽⁴⁾?

Boy 2 : Yes, it is. Come on.

Narrator (4)

Commentator⁽⁵⁾ : And they're near the finishing line⁽⁶⁾ now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

Narrator (5)

Boy : Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock!

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : You're right. Good night, Mum. Good night, Ola.

١- قليلاً

٢- انضم إلى

٣- نقترب من

٤- ميدان المحطة

٥- محطة

٦- معلق تلفاز

٧- خط النهاية

SB Page (47)

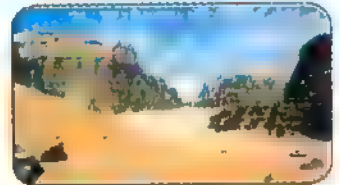
Speaker: Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. Unfortunately⁽¹⁾, Wadi Rum has some environmental⁽²⁾ problems.

Tourists help the local people make money⁽³⁾, but when tourists go trekking in the desert, they often leave rubbish⁽⁴⁾, too.

Some tourists drive across the desert in cars: they don't use roads or paths⁽⁵⁾, but drive wherever⁽⁶⁾ they want to and this can damage⁽¹⁰⁾ plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

Another big problem is hunters⁽¹¹⁾ who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and soon there won't be any.



١- وادي روم بالأردن

٢- لسوء الحظ

٣- يبني

٤- محلي

٥- يكسب أموال

٦- يقوم برحلة على

الأقدام

٧- قمامة

٨- ممرات / مسارات

٩- حيثما

١٠- يتلف

١١- صيادون

Exercises on Vocabulary

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. A/An is equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity. بالقوس 2024
 a. solar panel b. wind turbine c. electric car d. air
2. Stopping smoking can lung diseases. الديكاتب 2024
 a. win b. recycle c. reduce d. miss
3. When we heat ice, it فويشك 2024
 a. melts b. produces c. throws d. evaporates
4. The High Dam protects Egypt from هوى 2024
 a. floods b. rain c. volcanoes d. earthquakes
5. We can the plastic bottles again. أخليم 2024
 a. reuse b. reduce c. turn d. save
6. Workers have to their skills to get good jobs. سارق طليعا 2024
 a. prove b. improve c. connect d. communicate
7. Old plastic bottles can be and used again. البربره 2024
 a. damaged b. recycled c. left d. thrown
8. The carpenter is going to the broken desk. الفلونه 2024
 a. prepare b. do c. repair d. fair
9. Don't old things away they can be used again. القاهه 2024
 a. give b. go c. turn d. throw
10. Wind generate electricity for the local community. الغايه 2023
 a. alarms b. machines c. turbines d. panels
11. The desert is a difficult to live in. نلى شويف 2023 WB
 a. environment b. environmental c. tradition d. music
12. There was a fire in the flats and firefighters a family. WB
 a. recycled b. saved c. reduced d. repaired

13. We like playing together.

WB

- a. tradition b. musical c. music d. environment

14. My uncle helped us to a new washing machine this morning. 2023 انو حصاد WB

- a. reduce b. plant c. leave d. install

15. There is a because of the heavy rain. 2023 ليد ريشن

- a. flood b. drought c. float d. flour

16. I will help my father save from the flood water. SB

- a. earthquake b. life c. wildlife d. sun

Bit by Bit Exercises

17. We should trees to clean the air we breathe.

- a. recycle b. burn c. plant d. cut down

18. We need to the amount of salt in our food because it isn't healthy.

- a. increase b. reduce c. add d. recycle

19. We should plastic, paper and glass to help save the environment.

- a. cycle b. burn c. recycle d. kill

20. Don't drop Put it in the bin, please.

- a. rubbish b. music c. tradition d. nature

21. Malak goes up the of her house to watch the stars every night.

- a. ceiling b. roof c. garage d. bathroom



Language

Future Tense

(be) going to + inf. سوف

Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم ((be) going to + inf.) للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شيء في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

نية intention - سوى intend - بحط / خطة plan - قرار decision - يقرر decide

Ex. I'm going to help my father.

Ex. He isn't going to throw away his old phone.

٢- نستخدم ((be) going to + inf.) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (نراه أو نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

دليل evidence - تنبؤ prediction - يتنبأ predict

Ex. It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

Question السؤال

am
is } + subject + going to + inf...?
are

Ex. What are you going to do?

Ex. Is she going to help the environment?

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- Are you go out this week? منذ العام 2024
a. going b. going to c. will d. not go
- It's cloudy today, I think it الدفعه 2024
a. will rain b. is going to rain c. was raining d. rained
- Sally is going the race. البدرشين 2024
a. win b. won c. to win d. winning
- It rain. I can see some dark clouds in the sky. منذ العام 2024
a. is going to b. will c. must d. be going to
- Number four is at the front. She the race. WB
a. will win b. is going to win c. is winning d. wins

6. What are you to do at the weekend?

2023 SB

- a. go b. going c. goes d. went

7. There are many storms. The man's hat come off.

- a. will b. shall c. going to d. is going to

8. He is late so he the bus.

SB

- a. isn't catching b. isn't going to catch
c. catches d. caught

9. We are going tennis next week.

الزينة الحمراء 2023

- a. to playing b. play c. plays d. to play

10. Soliman buy a new phone. It's his intention.

2023 SB

- a. will b. is c. going to d. is going to

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. The traffic is slow. We to be late.

- a. gone b. are going c. going d. are gone

12. It's very cold. I a jacket tonight.

- a. am wearing b. wear
c. am going to wear d. wore

13. She to the clothes shop to buy a dress. She already decided.

- a. walk b. walking c. are walking d. is going to walk

14. A: "Any plans for the weekend?"

B: "Yes, I some furniture for my new flat."

- a. is buying b. am going to buy c. buy d. buying

15. Be careful! This old tree

- a. falls b. is fallen c. fell d. is going to fall

16. I can't ride a bike very well. Oh, no I crash.

- a. will b. shall c. must d. am going to

17. to travel to Luxor?

- a. You will b. You are going c. Will you d. Are you going

18. How is she help the environment?

- a. gone b. going c. going to d. goes

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What is the temperature going to (is) this afternoon? كثير ، ود 2024
2. The boys (be) going to visit Alexandria next week. سبيل ، خوص 2024
3. My mother is going to (making) a cake. استعمل ، 2024
4. It is too cloudy. It (will rain) . مليشة الغماطر 2024
5. She (going) to be married next summer. الحبر ، 2024
6. Rasha (going to) help her mother tomorrow. She has decided. الدر ، من 2024
7. The boy and his father are going to (watching) a football match. WB
8. They (going) to do extra homework tonight. تو ، ص 2023 SB

Speaking

1 Talking about future plans

التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسال باستخدام (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

- What are you going to do at the weekend? ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع ؟
- Where are you going to go for your next holiday? أين ستذهب في اجازتك القادمة ؟
- How are you going to improve your English? كيف ستطور لغتك الانجليزية ؟
- Are you going to replace your mobile phone when it's old? هل ستعيد تدوير (تصنيع) هاتفك عندما يصبح قديم ؟

2 Making predictions

التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتي:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students can't do their homework	- The teacher is going to be angry. - They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- I'm going to be late for school.
- I forgot to bring my lunch.	- I'm going to be hungry.
- It's already 8 o'clock on the 10th of May.	- I'm going to go to school.
- Hannah's phone is ringing.	- She's going to answer it.

Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

اقترح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

Environmental problems

المشكلات البيئية

1- Tourists leave rubbish.

يترك السائحون قمامة.

2- Some tourists drive across the desert which can damage plants and wildlife.

يقود بعض السائحون سياراتهم عبر الصحراء مما يمكن أن يتلف النباتات والحياة البرية.

3- Hotels use lots of water.

تستخدم الفنادق الكثير من المياه.

4- Hunters kill desert animals.

يقوم الصيادون بقتل الحيوانات الصحراوية.

نعتبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالاتي:

- Make... more expensive.

نجعل اغلى ثمنا

- Stop people from...v-ing

نمنع الناس من

People should stop driving across the desert.

يجب أن يتوقف الناس عن القيادة عبر الصحراء .

Use camels...

نستخدم الجمال

Recycle...

نعيد تصنيع

- Ask local people to...

نطلب من السكان المحليين أن

Build

نقوم ببناء

Grammar Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Alaa are talking about holiday.

Ahmed : Hi, Alaa. How are you?

Alaa : ① , what about you?

Ahmed : Fine, thanks. ② ?

Alaa : I'm going to travel to America next holiday.

Ahmed : America! Why?

Alaa : ③

Ahmed : How long are you going to stay?

Alaa : ④

Ahmed : ⑤ ?

Alaa : I am going to stay at my uncle's house.

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Wadi Rum is a large of desert in the south of Jordan. الوادي الكبير في جنوب الأردن 2023
 a. time b. stone c. rock d. area
2. I think electric cars will help to pollution in the future. WB
 a. increase b. add c. win d. reduce
3. I got up late because my alarm clock didn't مفتاح 2023
 a. throw away b. get off c. put away d. go off
4. She has decided. She abroad. SB
 a. travel b. travelling c. is going to travel d. travels
5. How are you going to your English? SB
 a. improve b. improving c. improves d. improved
6. The firefighters helped to the children from the fire. مفتاح 2024
 a. hurt b. change c. save d. leave
7. There is a as it hasn't rained for a long time. الجفاف 2024
 a. cloud b. flood c. storm d. drought

③ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Mum is making a lot of food. Some people (visit) us today.
2. My brothers and I are going to (watching) Al Ahly final match at the stadium. مقابلات 2023
3. What (is) you going to do in the future?

④ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Salah telling him what you think the weather's going to be today.

- Your name is Rami and your email address is ramialaa@hotmail.com.

- Your friend's email address is salahzaki@yahoo.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Why do you send this email?
- How was the weather in the morning?
- I think it will be later?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- What do you think the weather in the morning.
- The weather was in the morning.
- I think it's going to be

Key Vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	location	موقع
suitable	مناسب	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	invention	اختراع
lend	يقرض/يسلف	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلتر
system	نظام	control (led)	يتحكم في



Vocabulary

seeds	بذور	underground water	مياه جوفية
forest	غابة	canal	قناة مائية
jungle	غابة استوائية	volunteer	متطوع
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	Egyptian tortoises	سلاحف مصرية
gate	بوابة	recycling bin	سلة إعادة التدوير
diving trips	رحلات الغطس	smart app	تطبيق ذكي
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	season	فصل من فصول السنة
sunhat	قبعة للوقاية من الشمس	irrigate (d)	يروي
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	solve (d)	يحل
ocean	محيط	determine (d)	يحدد
farmlands	أراضي زراعية	film (ed)	يصور فيلم/ فيديو
sea life	حياة (حيوانات) بحرية	return (ed)	يعود
midday	منتصف النهار	kill (ed)	يقتل
form	استمارة	present (ed)	يقدم
STEM School	مدرسة العلوم والتكنولوجيا والهندسة والرياضيات	drop (ped)	يلقى - يسقط

Expressions & Prepositions

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة	suitable for	مناسب لـ
take part in	يشارك في	leave for	يغادر لـ
save water and energy	يوفر الماء والطاقة	take out from	يستخرج ... من
complete a form	يكمل استمارة	work on a project	يعمل في مشروع
make water safe	يجعل الماء آمناً للاستخدام	in two hours	خلال ساعتان
make deliveries	يوصل الطلبات	in ten days' time	بعد عشرة أيام
make much noise	يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء	(be) connected to	متصل بـ
make / cause pollution	يسبب التلوث	according to	طبقاً لـ
drop seeds onto	يسقط البذور على	fly over a place	يطير فوق مكان
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	look after	يعتنى بـ
present solutions for	يقدم حلول لـ		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

hurt	يجرح / يؤذي	hurt	hurt
lend	يقرض / يسلف	lent	lent
mean	يعلى / يقصد	meant	meant

Word

Meaning

Opposite

remote	بعيد	far	near	قريب
suitable	مناسب	fit	unsuitable	غير مناسب
remove	يزيل	take away	add	يضيف



Definitions

filters (n)	فلتر	tools ⁽¹⁾ that take things out of liquids ⁽²⁾ such as water	١- أدوات ٢- سائل
filter (v)	يفلتر / يصفى	pass a liquid or gas through a piece of equipment in order to remove solid ⁽³⁾ pieces	٣- صب ٤- كائنات دقيقة ٥- في كل مكان
bacteria	بكتيريا	microorganisms ⁽⁴⁾ that are everywhere ⁽⁵⁾ but are too small to see and can make you ill	٦- منظمة ٧- موقع / موضع ٨- محدد / معين
system	نظام	an organised ⁽⁶⁾ way of doing something	٩- الكيمياء
location	موقع	the place or position ⁽⁷⁾ of a particular ⁽⁸⁾ area of land	
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	things you can make in chemistry ⁽⁹⁾	

green	صديق للبيئة	good for the environment	I- مؤسسة
conservation	حماية/الحفاظ على الكائنات	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals	II- مقبول
control	يتحكم في	make a person, organisation or object do what you want	III- استوائي
suitable	مناسب	acceptable or right for someone or something	III- جذور
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	a tropical tree, found near water, whose roots grow partly above ground	

Language Notes

① information

- تعامل كلمة **information** معاملة المفرد ولا نضع قبلها أداة تكرة (a / an) ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل مفرد **is/has**

Ex. The **information** he gave me **was** important.

- وينطبق الكلام السابق على الكلمات **news / advice / equipment**

② bacteria

- تعامل كلمة بكتيريا **bacteria** معاملة الجمع ويأتي بعدها فعل لفاعل جمع ومفردها (bacterium)

Ex. Some **bacteria** cause diseases.

③ invent / discover

• **invent** يخترع شيء لم يكن موجود

Ex. Do you know who **invented** the mobile phone?

• **discover** يكتشف شيء موجود ولم يكن معروف

Ex. Dr Ahmed Zewail **discovered** the femtosecond.

④ look forward to

• **look forward to** يتطلع إلى - يأتي بعدها (noun / v-ing)

Ex. It's cold. I'm **looking forward to** visiting Aswan.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My information that Mohammed Salah wants to stay with Liverpool.

- a. are b. were c. is d. have

2. Bacteria usually dangerous for us.

- a. has b. is c. was d. are

3. Graham Bell the telephone.

a. invented

d. recycled

c. discovered

d. hurt

4. I'm looking forward to Alex.

a. go

d. going

c. to go

d. to going



Audioscript

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص



Scientist : Drones⁽¹⁾ can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them: we can use remote control⁽²⁾. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

١- طائرة بدون طيار

٢- جهاز تحكم عن بعد

٣- توصيل الطلبات

٤- تطير فوق

٥- يفتح

٦- طاقة الرياح

٧- تلقى بالبدور

Boy : Really? How can we do that?

Scientist : Well, companies are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make deliveries⁽³⁾. This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

Boy : That's interesting.

Scientist : Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over⁽⁴⁾ places where people can't go. We can see if there are any problems. For example, we can use drones to help save wildlife after floods or fires.

Boy : Can they help people, too?

Scientist : Of course! We can send drones to dangerous places. For example, we are starting to use drones to check⁽⁵⁾ wind turbines. This is not an easy job. Wind energy⁽⁶⁾ is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop seeds⁽⁷⁾ onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

WB Page (102)

Khaled : It's 12 o'clock on Saturday, but I'm going to be busy for the next few days. So, what am I doing? This evening, I'm going to the theatre⁽¹⁾ to see a play⁽²⁾. Then tomorrow, I'm playing basketball in the park. The day after tomorrow, I'm helping my uncle in his shop after school. Then, next Saturday, we're taking my cousins to the desert. That should be fun⁽³⁾. But I'm really looking forward to⁽⁴⁾ our holidays! We're flying to Greece⁽⁵⁾, but that's in nine days' time. I can't wait!

١- المسرح

٢- مسرحية

٣- ممتع

٤- يتطلع إلى

٥- اليونان

Reading

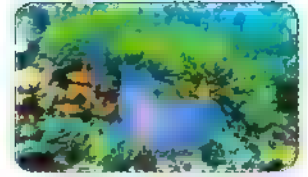
SB P. (49)

Dear parents,

The bus will be leaving for Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning in five days' time at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June. Please **make sure⁽¹⁾** that your daughter has **suitable⁽²⁾** clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the **coral reefs⁽³⁾** on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good **trainers⁽⁴⁾** and a **sun hat⁽⁵⁾** for the visit to the **mangrove forest⁽⁶⁾** on Wednesday. We will be **taking part in⁽⁷⁾** the **conservation⁽⁸⁾** project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

Hi Laila

We aren't **sharing⁽⁹⁾** a room. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help look after the younger girls. Can we meet at the school **gates⁽¹⁰⁾** tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers I'm **lending⁽¹¹⁾** you so that you can put them in your **suitcase⁽¹²⁾**.
Habiba



- ١- يتأكد
- ٢- مناسب
- ٣- الشعاب المرجانية
- ٤- حذاء رياضي
- ٥- قبعة واقية من الشمس
- ٦- غابة المانجروف
- ٧- يشارك في
- ٨- حماية / محافظة
- ٩- يشارك
- ١٠- بوابات
- ١١- يُسلف
- ١٢- حقيبة سفر

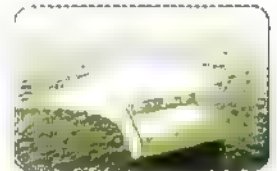
SB Page (50)

Fantastic green inventions by teenagers

Green inventions are **environment friendly⁽¹⁾**. These inventions **present solutions⁽²⁾** to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

Boyan Slat was a student in **Rotterdam⁽³⁾** when he invented a **system⁽⁴⁾** to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife. Boyan's system is called **Ocean Cleanup Array⁽⁵⁾**. It uses machines whose arms have lots of **filters⁽⁶⁾** on them. These filters take the plastic out of the sea water, without hurting **sea life⁽⁷⁾**.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a **green system⁽⁸⁾** for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India, Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous **chemicals⁽⁹⁾** which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill **bacteria⁽¹⁰⁾** in water.



- ١- صديقة للبيئة
- ٢- تقدم حلول
- ٣- دولة هولندا
- ٤- نظام
- ٥- نظام تنظيف للمحيط
- ٦- مصافي / فلاتر
- ٧- الكائنات البحرية
- ٨- نظام صديق للبيئة
- ٩- مواد كيميائية
- ١٠- البكتيريا

Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Sheikh STEM School were able to **develop an app**⁽¹¹⁾ to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers complete a **simple form**⁽¹²⁾ with information about their **farmlands**⁽¹³⁾. This form is connected to a smart app which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to **irrigate**⁽¹⁴⁾ their lands. The app also **determines**⁽¹⁵⁾ the amount of energy and the number of workers the lands need, **according to**⁽¹⁶⁾ their **location**⁽¹⁷⁾ and the **season**⁽¹⁸⁾.

- ١١- يطور تطبيق
- ١٢- استمارة بسيطة
- ١٣- أراضي زراعية
- ١٤- يروي
- ١٥- يحدد
- ١٦- طبقاً لـ
- ١٧- الموقع
- ١٨- فصل من فصول السنة

Say it correctly

* **determine** تنطق الحروف (m ne) في كلمة **determine** مثل نطق كلمة **tin** مع اختلاف اول حرف.

Videoscript

SB Page (50)

Narrator:

The Red Sea is very important. People visit from around the world to go **scuba diving**⁽¹⁾ and it's also home to many different **species**⁽²⁾ of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a **collection**⁽³⁾ of colourful plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near **the coast**⁽⁴⁾. Coral reefs are important because they are a **habitat**⁽⁵⁾ for lots of underwater animals, like this **sea anemone**⁽⁶⁾.. and this shark. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and oceans is getting warmer. The water in seas and oceans is going to be too hot for coral reefs in the future. Plastic is also damaging the reefs.

There are conservation groups that want to **conserve** the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. Scuba divers go to the coral reefs in the Red Sea twice a year to **investigate**⁽⁸⁾ their **condition**⁽⁹⁾.

The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

- ١- الغطس بمعدات
- ٢- تنفس
- ٣- سلالات
- ٤- مجموعة
- ٥- الساحل
- ٦- موطن
- ٧- شقائق نعمان البحر
- ٨- يحافظ على
- ٩- يتحقق من
- ١٠- حالة / وضع

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. _____ are planes without pilots. اللقطة 2024
 a. Boats b. Drones c. Rockets d. Robots
2. He refused to take part _____ the race. بإقاس 2024
 a. on b. in c. at d. of
3. A lot of animals live in the _____ forests next to the sea. WB
 a. mangrove b. improve c. roof d. gloves
4. I love playing computer games because I can _____ what the people do on the screen. WB
 a. grow b. irrigate c. hurt d. control
5. Scientists can use a _____ to take out small pieces of plastic from rivers. ملقوفة 2024 WB
 a. filter b. spoon c. gate d. book
6. T-shirt and jeans are not _____ for the party. ملقوفة 2024
 a. suitable b. suitcase c. cheap d. suit
7. Planes, mobiles and helicopters are great _____. ملقوفة 2024
 a. invitations b. pollutions c. views d. inventions
8. I decided to join the _____ project to help the environment. ملقوفة 2024
 a. conservation b. conversation c. ocean d. liquid
9. Green inventions are _____. SB
 a. environment-friendly b. environment-friend
 c. environmental d. environmentalist
10. _____ are microorganisms that are too small to see and can make you ill. SB
 a. Food b. Boys c. Cats d. Bacteria

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. Farmers use _____ to kill insects that destroy their crops.
 a. juice b. soup c. sweets d. chemicals
12. He will sell his house for a good price because of its good _____.
 a. location b. photo c. situation d. action
13. When did people first start using a _____ for TVs?
 a. mouse b. remote control c. keyboard d. mirror
14. Mr Mohammed has developed a new _____ for learning English.
 a. filter b. match c. train d. system
15. Tap water should pass through a _____ before we drink it.
 a. fan c. filter d. phone d. plane



Language

1- The present continuous

زمن المضارع المستمر «لتعبير عن المستقبل»

Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

Usage الاستخدام

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالباً مع الإشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

اعداد/نجهز preparation - يعد/ يدهر prepare - ترتيبات arrangements - يرتب arrange

Ex. I **am visiting** the dentist at half past four next Thursday.

Ex. We're **catching** our train at 12.30. We **aren't taking** the bus.

٢- نستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضاً للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She **is drawing** a picture now.

• نستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث بدأت ولم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام)

Ex. My sister **is learning** French.

• نستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة.

Ex. They **are painting** the school this week.

Question السؤال

am
+ is
are } + subject + verb + ing?
(كلمة استفهام)

Ex. When **are you painting** your house?

Ex. **Are you travelling** to Luxor tomorrow?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Look!	انظر	Listen!	استمع
now	الآن	at the moment	في هذه اللحظة/في الوقت الحالي
at present	في الوقت الحاضر	tomorrow	غداً
next (week-month-year)	(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم		



لاحظ الفرق بينهما في الاستخدام:

- لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن تنبؤ في المستقبل
(الجملة صحيحة) **Is it going to rain tonight?** ✓✓✓
(الجملة خطأ) ~~Is it raining tonight?~~ xxx

• نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية حيث نتحدث عن معلومات غير مهمة وخطط غير مضمونة أما المضارع المستمر يعبر عن خطط مستقبلية محتملة ومرتبطة بترتيبات كحجز تذاكر سفر أو حجرة في فندق.

- **I'm going to travel to Alexandria next month.**
(هذه نية المتحدث ولم يتخذ أي ترتيبات للسفر)
- **I'm travelling to Alexandria next month.**
(هذا يعبر عن أن المتحدث أجرى ترتيبات السفر مثل حجز تذاكر السفر ومكان الإقامة)

- لا نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث خارج سيطرة البشر في المستقبل
(الجملة صحيحة) **Summer will be next month and the snow is going to melt.** ✓✓✓
(الجملة خطأ) ~~Summer will be next month and the snow is melting.~~ xxx

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan now.

هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه يسافر إلى أسوان في الوقت الحاضر

Ex. I'm travelling to Aswan tomorrow.

هنا المتحدث يقصد أنه سيسافر إلى أسوان غداً

- لاحظ الفرق بين الجملتين السابقتين في المضارع المستمر حيث تعبر الأولى عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر ويدل على ذلك وجود كلمات مثل:

at the moment / now / Look! / Listen!

والجملة الثانية تعبر عن مستقبل ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

next (week-month-year) tomorrow - in ten minutes

2- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- إدرس الشكل الآتي ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now

in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow →
the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time →
in three weeks → **Future**



- حرف الجر (in) في التعبيرات السابقة يعطى معنى (في خلال فترة) [.....]
- تأتي عادة التعبيرات الزمنية إما في آخر الجملة أو في أولها.

Ex. I'm going to New York next week.

OR. Next week, I'm going to New York.

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. Zein is football at the moment. البدريشين 2024
 a. plays b. played c. playing d. to play
2. Don't use this classroom because some men it this afternoon. كسر دود 2024
 a. is going to paint b. paints c. are painting d. paint
3. It's 1:55. Ayman .. to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes. WB
 a. goes b. was going c. went d. is going
4. Judy is working on her project WB
 a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. in the past d. ago
5. My cousins at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am. SB
 a. arrived b. are arriving c. arrives d. arriving
6. It is Tuesday today, so Thursday is WB
 a. tomorrow b. next week
 c. the day after tomorrow d. tonight
7. Our class a museum next week. We have bought the tickets. هنا 2024
 a. going to visit b. visit c. visits d. is visiting

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I an interesting story at the moment.
 a. reads b. going to read c. am reading d. reading
9. I made all the arrangements. We early tomorrow.
 a. are travelling b. travel
 c. are going to travel d. travelled
10. Mum prepared the meal. We in five minutes.
 a. were eating b. eating c. are eating d. going to eat
11. The Minister our school next week. We made all the preparations.
 a. is going to visit b. visits c. is visited d. is visiting
12. Sorry I can't see you tonight. I my lessons.
 a. will study b. is going to study c. am studying d. studied
13. Look! A big bird in the sky.
 a. flies b. is going to fly c. is flying d. flew

14. Everything is arranged. I to the airport.
 a. leaving b. am going to leave c. leave d. 'm leaving
15. We the Eiffel Tower next Wednesday. We booked the tickets.
 a. are visiting b. are going to visit c. visit d. visited
16. What at the moment?
 a. do you do b. are you going to do
 c. are you doing d. will you do

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I've invited everyone, I (have) a party next Friday. 2024
2. The students (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged. 2024
3. Samy (fly) to London. He's got the tickets. 2023
4. At the moment, we (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. SB
5. Let's run, because the bus (leave) in ten minutes. WB
6. Fawzy (not work) next week because he has a holiday. WB
7. My father (travels) to London next week. He has arranged everything. 2024
8. He (visit) the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bought the ticket. 2024

Speaking

1 Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية:

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

Question

Answer

A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?

ما هي أفضل / أكثر الاختراعات نفعاً في رأيك؟

B: I think drones are the best.

أعتقد الطائرات بدون طيار هي الأفضل.

A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?

كيف يمكن أن تكون الطائرات بدون طيار مفيدة لحل المشكلات البيئية؟

B: They can be used to make deliveries.

يمكن استخدامها في توصيل الطلبات.

A: How can that help the environment?

كيف يساعد ذلك البيئة؟

B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

لا يحدثوا ضوضاء ولا يسببوا تلوث الهواء مثل سيارات النقل.

2) Discussing future arrangements / plans

مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.
- ارجع إلى شرح القواعد اللغوية

A: What are you doing this afternoon?

ماذا ستفعل بعد الظهر؟

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

سأقوم بمذاكرة درس الرياضيات.

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Aya and Manal are talking about future arrangements.

Aya : What are you doing this afternoon?

Manal : ①

Aya : ② ?

Manal : Because my grandmother is ill.

Aya : ③ ?

Manal : No, I'm not going out this evening.

Aya : Are you going to watch TV?

Manal : ④

Aya : OK! See you tomorrow at school.

Manal : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People sometimes use a to film animals from the sky.

WB

a. washing machine b. headphone c. drone d. keyboard

2. Volunteers are working on a project to save Egyptian tortoises.

WB

a. conversation b. communication c. connection d. conservation

3. Mr Osman is looking for a place to hold the meeting يعقد اجتماع.

a. noisy b. suitable c. dark d. dirty

4. The water in this lake is used to the land.

a. wash b. clean c. irrigate d. soil

5. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of

WB

a. location b. bacteria c. filter d. system

6. The workers the building now.

- a. complete b. are completing c. will complete d. completing

7. After 85 minutes. The Blue team five and the Red team is one. The Blue team is

WB

- a. winning b. going to c. going to win d. win

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Judy is visiting her grandma the day (before) tomorrow.

WB

2. (Be/ you /walk) to the museum later? It's very far.

WB

3. We (have) a party tomorrow. We arranged everything.

4. She is walking in the mountains (last) week.

WB

5. She is visiting a museum in nine days' (clock) .

WB

6. Lara is (play) handball now.

لجزمه - أبو انيمرس 2023

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to keep our environment clean"

(مجب عنه في اخر لوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How can we keep the environment clean?
- What are the environmental problems we face?
- How are trees good for the environment?
- What should we do with old mobile phones?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- We should do our best to
- The main environmental problems are
- Trees help reduce
- Throwing old phones can be

Key Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



horse riding	ركوب الخيل	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
bird watching	مشاهدة / مراقبة الطيور	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	fishing	صيد السمك
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	canoeing	التجديف
diving	الغوص	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجاني



Vocabulary

scary	مرعب / مخيف	instead	بدلاً من ذلك
sunset	غروب الشمس	towards	تجاه
fresh dates	بلح طازج	bored	شاعر بالملل
beginner	شخص مبتدئ	towel	مناشفة «فوطية»
afraid	خائف	temperature	درجة حرارة
actually	في الواقع	miss (ed)	يفوته / يفقد
ruins of a temple	أطلال معبد	guess (ed)	يخمن
amazing	مدهش	snorkel (led)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس تحت الماء
activity	نشاط		

Expressions & Prepositions

go rock climbing	يذهب لتسلق الصخور	one last thing	آخر شيء
looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيف بعض الشيء	Best wishes.	أطيب الأمنيات.
get cold and bored	يشعر بالبرد والملل	decide on	يقرر
It might be fun.	يمكن أن تكون ممتعة.	on the boat	في القارب
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	help with	يساعد في
give your opinion	تعطي رأيك	stay with	يبقى / يقيم مع
have a fantastic time	يقضي وقت ممتع	sit by the water	يجلس بالقرب من الماء
have a picnic	يذهب في نزهة	for breakfast	على الإفطار
It sounds really exciting / interesting!	تبدو مثيرة / شيقة!		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

sit	يجلس
get up	يستيقظ
learn	يتعلم

Past simple

sat
got up
learnt / learned

Past Participle

sat
got up
learnt / learned

Word

Meaning

Opposite

agree	يوافق	accept	disagree	لا يوافق
-------	-------	--------	----------	----------



Definitions

scary	مرعب / مخيف	frightening	1- هوائية 2- المساء
star gazing	مشاهدة / مراقبة النجوم	to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby	
sunset	غروب الشمس	the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky	

Language Notes

1) snorkelling / scuba diving

- **Snorkelling** العوص باستخدام قناع وأنبوبة للتنفس وتكون قريب من سطح الأرض

Ex. I have a mask. I can go snorkelling.

- **scuba diving** الغطس للذهاب إلى أعماق البحر مرتدياً بدلة غطس واستخدام أنبوبة الأكسجين

Ex. My favourite hobby is scuba diving .

2) picnic / trip / voyage / flight

- **picnic** نزهة خلوية (في الهواء الطلق)

Ex. We had a picnic when the weather was nice.

- **voyage** رحلة (بحرية)

Ex. The voyage along the Red Sea took a month.

- **trip** رحلة قصيرة (للاستمتاع أو لغرض معين)

a boat trip - a school trip - a business trip

Ex. We took a boat trip around the island.

- **flight** رحلة (جوية)

Ex. At last we arrived at the airport. It was a long flight.

3) lose / miss

• lose (lost - lost) يخسر. يفقد شيء

Ex. Our national team **lost** the last match.

Ex. I **lost** my keys on the bus.

• miss (ed) يفوته (وسيلة مواصلات مثلاً) - يفقد شخص

Ex. I got up late this morning and **missed** the school bus.

Ex. I **miss** my old friends very much.

4) agree

• agree on + n يوافق على... ..

Ex. The two families **agreed on a date** for the wedding.

• agree to + inf يوافق أن.....

Ex. They **agreed to meet** me at 6:00 pm.

• agree with يتفق مع شخص (في الرأي).....

Ex. I **agree with** you, horse riding is interesting.

Click on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When you go, you don't go under water but you are near the surface.
a. scuba diving b. swim c. snorkelling d. walking
- My family had a in the park yesterday.
a. voyage b. flight b. picnic d. lesson
- I was absent so I the last English lesson.
a. missed b. caught b. gained d. lost
- Hani agreed come to my birthday party.
a. on b. to b. with d. about



Audioscript

SB Page (51)

استمع إلى النصوص



Kamal : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon? I'm going **rock climbing**¹. There is a special activity for **beginners**². Would you like to come?

Amir : I don't know. Rock climbing looks a bit **scary**³ to me! Are you going, Nasser?

Nasser : Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

Amir : **Actually**⁴, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

١- تسلق الصخور

٢- المبتدئين

٣- مرعب / مخيف

٤- بالفعل

٥- بدلاً من ذلك

٦- نشاط

Kamal : How about tomorrow afternoon **instead⁽⁵⁾**? There's another rock climbing **activity⁽⁶⁾** then at the same time.

Amir : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something. Are you and Nasser free this evening?

Nasser : I think so. Why?

Amir : Dad is going to take me **star gazing⁽⁷⁾** into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

٧- مشاهدة / مراقبة
النجوم

Kamal : Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we Nasser? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going?

Amir : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser : Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. See you then.



Reading

SB Page (52)

Dear Nahla,

I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa. Today, we had a picnic on **the beach⁽¹⁾**. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the **sunset⁽²⁾**. It's very beautiful.

We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. They still wanted to get up and make us dinner and they bring us **bread⁽³⁾** for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited **Siwa Fort⁽⁴⁾** and the **Siwa museum⁽⁵⁾**. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the **Siwa salt lake⁽⁶⁾**. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love : Heba



- ١- نزهة خلوية
- ٢- جزيرة فطناس
- ٣- غروب الشمس
- ٤- بلع طازج
- ٥- قلعة شالي
- ٦- متحف سيوة
- ٧- البحيرة المالحة في سيوة

SB Page (53)

Hi

Are you busy? What are you doing this afternoon? Please could you call me later because I need some help with the English homework! I had to go to the **doctor⁽¹⁾**, so I **missed⁽²⁾** the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week? **nothing⁽³⁾** - are you free on Saturday morning? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come?

- ١- طبيب أسنان
- ٢- فاتني
- ٣- آخر شيء

WB Page (104)

Baher : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad?
We are going to go to a **coral reef**⁽¹⁾!

Imad : I don't know. Diving under water looks a bit **scary**⁽²⁾ to me.

Baher : If you don't like going under water, you could stay on the boat.

Imad : I think I'd **get cold**⁽³⁾ and **bored**⁽⁴⁾ on the boat.

Baher : Why don't you **snorkel**⁽⁵⁾? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.

Imad : Yes, that might be **fun**⁽⁶⁾.

Baher : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!

Imad : Thanks, I'd love to

- ١- الشعب المرجانية
- ٢- مخيف بعض الشيء
- ٣- يصاب بالبرد
- ٤- شاعر بالملل
- ٥- يغطس بأنبوب
- التلفس
- ٦- ممتعة

WB Page (105)

Hi

Guess⁽¹⁾ where I am? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the **Nabq Nature Reserve**⁽²⁾. It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, we went diving in the coral reefs at **Shoura al Manquata**⁽³⁾. The fish were amazing. Tomorrow, we're going to visit **Wadi Kid**⁽⁴⁾. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time. What are you doing? Write to me and tell me your news.

Best wishes, Hamdi

- ١- تخمن
- ٢- محمية نبق الطبيعة
- ٣- منطقة شورى
- الملقطة
- ٤- وادي كيد

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. You need special equipment if you want to go

- a. dreaming b. sleeping c. diving d. planning

2. Dad likes practising using plastic cables.

- a. horse riding b. star gazing
c. bird watching d. rock climbing

3. means without paying money.

- a. Tree b. Free c. See d. Bee

4. Every night, I see a lot of in the sky.

- a. stars b. reviews c. parks d. picnics

5. looks a bit scary to me.

- a. Rocks b. Trees c. Sleeping d. Rock climbing

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. Deserts are the best places to go because stars there are brighter.
a horse riding b rock climbing c star gazing d bungee jumping
7. The at the Karnak Temple were amazing.
a. rings b. ruins c. trains d. trainers
8. If the weather's fine, we'll go in the desert this weekend.
a. diving b. canoeing c. fishing d. hiking
9. under water looks scary to many people.
a. Diving b. Climbing c. Riding d. Hiking
10. Tourists go in the Great Sand Sea in Egypt.
a snorkelling b. sandboarding c. diving d. swimming
11. I enjoyed watching the yesterday. Then it got dark.
a. sunrise b. sun cream c. solar system d. sunset
12. needs a special kind of boats.
a. Canoeing b. Jumping c. Riding d. Reading
13. He likes horses so he goes once a week.
a. swimming b. horse riding c. fishing d. sandboarding
14. Going in a hot-air is fantastic as the view from the top is magic.
a. cartoon b. drone c. stone d. balloon
15. My uncle caught a lot of fish when he went last week.
a. climbing b. fishing c. riding d. jumping
16. We have many activities we can do like
a. watching b. birds c. bird watching d. bird killing

Speaking

Doing activities

القيام بالأنشطة

نسال عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

Would you like to come?

هل تود أن تأتي؟

- I invite you to come.....

ادعوك أن تأتي.....

Why don't you.....?

لعم لا.....؟

للإجابة بالموافقة أو الرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to..... نعم، دائماً ما أردت أن.....	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary. لا أعرف، يبدو مخيفاً بعض الشيء.
- OK! I'll come. حسناً! سوف آتي.	- I can't come. لا أستطيع المجيء.
- Thank you. I'd love to come. أشكرك. أود أن آتي.	- No, I don't want to. لا، لا أود.
- Yes, that might be fun. نعم، هذا يبدو ممتعاً.	

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad is going to the Red Sea next week.

Ziad : I'm going to the Red Sea next week.

Adel : Really! ①

Ziad : With my family.

Adel : ②

Ziad : At a hotel. Would you like to come?

Adel : ③

Ziad : Why? We will go diving there.

Adel : ④

Ziad : Why don't you stay on the boat?

Adel : OK. ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need some help the English homework.

- a. about b. on c. of d. in

2. I had a really dream last night. I was frightened.

- a. scary b. nice c. lovely d. beautiful

3. I my family so much during my stay abroad.

- a. lost b. kept c. missed d. wasted

4. I'd love to go under water in the Red Sea.

- a. hiking b. diving c. climbing d. riding

5. In summer, tourists can go rock or walking.

- a. climbing b. fishing c. jumping d. riding

Key Vocabulary

solar panels	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	location	موقع
rubbish	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
wildlife	الحياة البرية	invention	اختراع
roof	سطح المنزل	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالمنطاد
drought	جفاف	fishing	صيد السمك
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	canoeing	التجديف
suitable	مناسب	bungee jumping	القفل بالحبال
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجاني
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	recycle	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)
lend	يقرض / يسلف	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
system	نظام	save (d)	ينقذ / يوفر
horse riding	ركوب الخيل	damage (d)	يتلف
bird watching	مشاهدة / مراقبة الطيور	reduce	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	install	يركب / يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	plant	يلزم
diving	الغوص	repair (ed)	يُصلح
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة	melt	يذوب / ينصهر
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلتتر
		control	يتحكم في

Nouns & Adjectives

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	موسيقى	musical	موسيقي
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي



Language

1- (be) going to & The present continuous

1- Going to

Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم ((be) going to) للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شيء في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide - decision - plan - intend - intention

Ex. I'm going to watch a movie.

Ex. He isn't going to take a photo.

٢- نستخدم ((be) going to) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (أما دليل. نراه أو نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict - prediction - evidence

Ex. It is going to rain.

(I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. Our players are going to win the cup.

(They always train well.)

Question السؤال

am - is - are + subject + going to + Inf...?

Ex. Where are you going to spend your holiday?

2- The present continuous

Form التكوين

I	am	} (not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالبا مع الإشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. My grandma is visiting us next week.

Ex. We're going to Spain for our next holiday. We aren't going to England.

٢- نستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She is doing her homework now.

Question السؤال

am - is - are + subject + verb + ing...? كلمة استفهام

Are you having a party for your birthday?

3- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- ادرس الشكل الآتي ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now in five minutes → this afternoon / evening → tomorrow →
the day after tomorrow → next week → in 10 days' time →
in three weeks **Future**

Speaking



Talking about future plans

نسال باستخدام (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

What are you going to do at the weekend?
Where are you going to go for your next holiday?
How are you going to improve your English?

2) Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية

نسال ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

A: What is the most useful invention?	B: I think drones are the best.
A: How can they solve environmental problems?	B: They can be used to make deliveries.
A: How can they help the environment?	B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

3 Doing activities

نسال عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

- Would you like to come?
- I invite you to come.....
- Why don't you.....?

- للإجابة بالموافقة أو بالرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Yes, I've always wanted to..... - OK! I'll come. - Thank you. I'd love to come. - Yes, that might be fun. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - I don't know. It looks a bit scary. - I can't come. - No, I don't want to.

General Exercises on Unit 11

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Samir is going to the desert next week.

Samir : I'm going to the desert next week?

Daa : The desert, why?

Samir : ①

Daa : Oh! Is rock climbing scary?

Samir : Yes. ② But it's really exciting.

Daa : ③ ?

Samir : Sure. You can come.

Daa : ④ ?

Samir : Good idea, I'd love to go hiking, too.

Daa : OK. ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We'll need a ladder to get up on the of the house.

- a. stairs b. bathroom c. roof d. ceiling

2. We are going to solar panels. They're good for the environment.

- a. burn b. break c. pollute d. install

3. Habiba's bike isn't working, she is going to it.

- a. repair b. redo c. rewrite d. repeat

4. Policemen do their best to us safe.

- a. remember b. keep c. plant d. guess

5. It isn't a good idea to throw old mobile phones.

- a. way b. road c. a way d. away

6. A looks like a plane but it doesn't have a pilot.

- a. kite b. drone c. balloon d. ship

7. When we are at the park, we should rubbish.

- a. get up b. wake up c. pick up d. stand up

8. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going swimming.

- a. to going b. to goes c. to go d. go

9. Injy is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she the train?

- a. catching b. going to catch c. catch d. caught

10. Don't use classroom 5 because some men it this afternoon.

- a. is going to paint b. paints c. are painting d. paint

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The boy and his father are going to (watching) the match. 2023

2. We (go) snorkelling next weekend. Would you like to come?

3. I (looked) forward to having a rest next week.

4. What are you (do) this afternoon?

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

"Activities you want to do in the future"

(مخاطب عنه في احدى الوحدات)

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What activities can you do in Egypt?
- What do you want to do in the Red Sea?
- Why is going on a hot-air balloon exciting?
- What's the most dangerous activity?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many exciting activities
- I want to in the Red Sea.
- I think the view
- is the most dangerous activity.



Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

1. Drones can fly by remote
a. tools b. controls c. people d. ropes
2. We can fly drones from the
a. sky b. sun c. ground d. star

Language Functions

② Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Jana and Eman are talking about the summer holiday.

Eman : What are you going to do at the summer holiday?

Jana : ①

Eman : ②?

Jana : I am going to travel to Alex by train.

Eman : ③?

Jana : We will stay for two weeks.

Eman : I hope you a happy holiday.

Grammar

③ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can use solar to make electricity.
a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms
2. I'll arrangements to meet you at the airport.
a. make b. do c. spend d. give
3. She coming to the party.
a. isn't b. hasn't c. won't d. doesn't
4. What are you tomorrow evening?
a. does b. do c. did d. doing
5. I am going the concert
a. to join b. join c. joining d. to joining

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to the shopping centre. My mother asked us to do some shopping there. At the supermarket, I bought eggs, bread and butter. Then we went to a shoe shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new pair of shoes. His size is 38. He bought new black trousers, too. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks.

I had some tea and my brother drank some juice. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?

2. What colour are Ahmed's new trousers?

3. What size are Ahmed's shoes?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought eggs, bread and butter from the

- a. shoe shop b. supermarket c. café d. fruit shop

5. They went back home at

- a. 8 o'clock b. 5 o'clock c. 11 o'clock d. 10 o'clock

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. I is going to help in a charity. I've planned for that. (.....)

2. I feel terrible now. I think I be sick. (.....)

3. Ali fly to America next week. (.....)

4. He visit the Egyptian Museum tomorrow. He bought the tickets. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Environmental problems"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What's the environment?
- How is the environment polluted?
- How can we keep our environment clean?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- The environment is - Traffic and factories can
- We should reduce

Paragraphs & Emails

فقرات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

Paragraphs

1- How to keep our environment clean

There are many environmental problems that we should face. The main problems are water and air pollution and climate change. There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in cities and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution, so we should plant more trees. We should recycle old mobile phones. Green inventions are environment-friendly. These inventions present solutions to environmental problems without damaging the environment.

2- Activities I want to do in the future

There are many exciting activities that I can do in Egypt. I want to go diving in the Red Sea. The coral reefs there are wonderful. Although diving is a bit scary, I want to try it. I want also to go on a hot-air balloon. I think the view from the top will be fantastic. I think it's dangerous but I'd like to try it one day. I hope I will try bungee jumping. I think it's the most dangerous activity. This activity isn't suitable for people who are afraid of high places.

3- Environmental problems (Azhar)

The world faces many Environmental problems. The main problem is climate change. It happens because of air pollution. All countries should do their best to solve this problem. They should reduce air pollution and plant more trees.

Emails

1- What do I think the weather is going to be today?

From : ramialaa@hotmail.com.

To : salahzaki@yahoo.com.

Subject : The weather today

Dear Salah,

How are you? What do you think the weather is going to be like later today? It was sunny in the mornings but it was a bit windy. I'm looking out of the window now. It's cloudy and cold. I think it's going to rain. Could you send me an email telling me about the weather in your town? I'm waiting. My regards to your family.

Yours,

Rami

2- My holiday

From : habiba2006@hotmail.com.

To : salma2007@gmail.com.

Subject : My holiday

Dear Salma,

I hope you're having a good time. I'm having a good time with my family in Aswan. Today, we had a picnic on Elephantine Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful. We're staying with my parents' friends and they are very kind. Yesterday morning, we visited Abu Simbel temple and the Nubian Museum. I've always wanted to go there. Tomorrow, we're going to visit Lake Nasser. I'm looking forward to visiting it. It sounds really interesting. See you soon.

Lots of love,

Habiba



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

- There's a lot air pollution from the traffic in our
a. school b. house c. city d. farm
- Air pollution is very
a. good b. light c. healthy d. unhealthy
- are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.
a. Trees b. Plants c. Apples d. Oranges
- Next, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school.
a. year b. month c. week d. day

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Tamer is going to buy his friend Omar a present for his birthday.

Tamer : Our friend Omar's birthday will be tomorrow.

Ayman : Really! ①

Tamer : Yes, I'm going to buy him a present.

Ayman : What're you going to buy?

Tamer : ②

Ayman : Great! ③

Tamer : I know a mobile shop near our house. What will you buy him?

Ayman : ④

Tamer : ⑤

Ayman : I hope so, too.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Dirty water can be dangerous to drink. It causes diseases and makes people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes rivers look horrible and affects the lives of birds and fish. We must keep the water in our rivers, canals and lakes clean. Smoke and gases from factories and cars mix with water vapour in the air and cause pollution. When the water vapour falls to the ground as rain, the chemicals in the smoke and fumes mix with the rain. This can kill trees, plants, fish and animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "It" refers to
 a. rubbish b. dirty water c. environment d. water vapour
- Smoke and gases with water vapour in the air.
 a. fix b. stir c. mix d. plant

B. Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- How is pollution caused?

- In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of pollution?



- What does the underlined word "HORRIBLE" mean?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Solar can change sunlight into electricity. نيسا انفتح 2024
 a. tunnel b. panels c. rays d. canals
- We should use on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. WB
 a. solar panels b. snowboards
 c. washing machines d. tablets
- You see a lot of in windy countries like England. WB
 a. rockets b. sewing machines c. wind turbines d. coins
- Mona forgot her pen today, so I'll her mine. الموضوعة - مونسبت 2023 WB
 a. lend b. install c. borrow d. mend
- Scientists used the new app to determine the of underground water. WB
 a. invitation b. location c. conversation d. station
- We should plastic and paper to help save the environment. WB
 a. cycle b. recycle c. burn d. damage
- The students very well in their exam. They always get good marks. SB
 a. will do b. are going to do c. are doing d. doing
- It's raining heavily and the river SB
 a. are flooding b. flood c. flooded d. is going to flood

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Lamia's family are learning Japanese. They(go) to Japan. 
2. What is the temperature going to(is) this afternoon? 
3. I'm (play) tennis in the park.
4. I(not go) to school tomorrow because I'm ill.
5. The students (going \ do) very well in their exams. They always get good marks.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

to your friend Salma to tell her about your holiday.

-Your name is Habiba and your email address is habiba2006@hotmail.com

-Your friend's email address is salma2007@gmail.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- Where was your holiday?
- Who did you travel with?
- When did you arrive?
- How did you spend your time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I had a good time with
- We had a picnic on
- Yesterday morning, we



**New
Hello!**



Languages and learning



Objectives

Reading:

A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school

Writing:

An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form

Listening:

A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication

Speaking:

Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions

Language:

A review of tenses

Life skills:

Self- management; Communication skills; Critical thinking



Key Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)
mostly	غالباً / في الأغلب
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات
disappointed	مُحبط
proud	فخور

repair (ed) = fix (ed)
fail (ed)
pass (ed)
decide (d)

استمع إلى المفردات



يُصلح
يفشل/يرسب
ينجح/يجتاز
يقرر

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة
reading	القراءة
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء

listening
doing things

الاستماع
عمل الأشياء



Vocabulary

TV show	عرض تليفزيوني
directions	اتجاهات
dictionary	قاموس
result	نتيجة
diagram	رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني
manager	مدير
experiment	تجربة علمية
irregular	غير منتظم
secondary school	مدرسة ثانوية
podcast	نشرة صوتية (إذاعية)

summary	ملخص
laboratory	معمل تحليل
driving test	اختبار القيادة
act (ed)	يمثل
achieve (d)	ينجز / يحقق
continue (d)	يواصل
summarise (d)	يلخص
follow (ed)	يتبع
explain (ed)	يفسر / يشرح



(be) often talking	يتكلم كثيراً	learn by	يتعلم بواسطة
feel disappointed	يشعر بالاحباط	discuss with	يتناقش مع
work out	يستنتج	explain to	يفسر / يشرح ... لـ
find out	يكشف	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
learn how to	يتعلم كيف	cut down	يقطع

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
make up	يؤلف	made up	made up
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
fly	يطير / يسافر جواً	flew	flown

Word

Meaning

Opposite

pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed in	fail	يرسب / يفشل
continue	يستمر	go on	stop	يتوقف

Definitions

decide	يقرر	make a choice ⁽¹⁾ to do something	
explain	يفسر	make something clear ⁽²⁾ or easy to understand by giving reasons ⁽³⁾ for it	١- اختيار ٢- واضح ٣- أسباب
fail	يفشل / يرسب	not be successful ⁽⁴⁾	٤- ناجح
proud	فخور	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well	٥- حالات ٦- يحدث
mostly	غالباً / الأغلب	in most cases ⁽⁵⁾ / most of the time	
pass	ينجح / يجتاز	be successful in a test or exam	
disappointed	مُحبط	not happy because something you wanted did not happen ⁽⁶⁾ or was not very good	

Verbs and nouns that go together

watch TV show	يشاهد عرض تليفزيوني	play a video game	يلعب ألعاب فيديو
practise a language	يمارس لغة	listen to music	يستمتع الى الموسيقى
summarise a text	يلخص نص	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
do an experiment	يُجرى تجربة	win medals	يفوز بميداليات
make up a song	يؤلف أغنية	take photographs	يلتقط صور
do research	يُجرى بحثاً	write down instructions	يدون تعليمات
get a job	يحصل على وظيفة	spell a word	يتهجى كلمة
find solutions	يجد حلول	achieve a dream	يحقق حلم



Language Notes

① busy

- busy + V-ing. مشغول في

Ex. He is busy studying his lessons.

② find it + صفة + to + inf.

Ex. I found it difficult / hard to learn Japanese.

Ex. I always find it hard to park my car.

③ most / mostly

- most (of) معظم / أكثر

She plays tennis most Fridays.

Most of the shops are closed today.

- mostly في الأغلب (حال)

I am mostly interested in the history of Egypt.

- the most الأكثر

- تستخدم في المقارنة مع الصفات الطويلة

Ex. He bought the most expensive car.

④ fail / pass / succeed

- لا يأتي حرف جر (in) بعد (fail - pass) مع كلمات مثل (test - exam)

Ex. I fail my exam.

Ex. I pass my driving test.

- عند ذكر اسم المادة يمكن استخدام حرف جر (in) أو يمكن حذفها.

Ex. I passed (in) history but failed (in) chemistry.

- لا بد من استخدام حرف جر (in) بعد (succeed) + (noun / v-ing).

Ex. I succeeded in my exams.

Check on Language Notes



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother is busy lunch.

a. cook

b. to cook

c. cooks

d. cooking

2. Mostafa always finds it easy football.

a. play

b. to play

c. playing

d. played

3. I spend of the time reading books.

a. mostly

b. must

c. most

d. mustn't

4. We in repairing the engine.

a. failed

b. passed

c. slept

d. succeeded



Reading

SB Page (54)

استمع إلى النصوص



Quiz

- What type of learner⁽¹⁾ are you?

Take the quiz to find out!

1. Which of these things do you prefer to do in your free time⁽²⁾?

- a. Read a book
- b. Watch a film or TV show⁽³⁾.
- c. Play a video game
- d. Listen to music.

2. If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do?

- a. Read online about how to play it.
- b. Watch a video of people playing it.
- c. Start playing and learn as you play.
- d. Ask for advice from someone who can play it.

3. You need to tell your class about a new English book.

What would you prefer to do?

- a. Write a review⁽⁴⁾ of it.
- b. Make a short video about it.
- c. Act some of the book with friends.
- d. Read some of the book to your class.

4. Someone asks you for directions⁽⁵⁾. What do you do?

- a. Write down instructions⁽⁶⁾.
- b. Draw a map.
- c. Use your hands and body to explain⁽⁷⁾.
- d. Tell them where to go.

5. If you don't know how to spell⁽⁸⁾ a word, what do you do?

- a. Look in a dictionary.
- b. Try to work out⁽⁹⁾ how to spell it.
- c. Write it down to see if it looks right.
- d. Say the word slowly to hear the sounds.

١- متعلم

٢- وقت الفراغ

٣- عرض تلفزيوني

٤- مقال نقدي

٥- الاتجاهات

٦- يحدو تعليمات

٧- يشرح / يفسر

٨- يتهجى

٩- يستلج

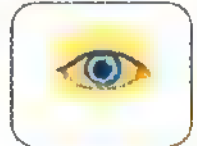
I chose mostly⁽¹⁾ a:**- You learn best by reading and writing.**

You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and **taking notes⁽²⁾**.

- ١- غالباً
٢- يدون ملاحظات
٣- رسومات توضيحية
٤- تصليح

**I chose mostly b:****- You learn best by seeing things.**

You love to watch videos and look at **diagrams⁽¹⁾**. You love films and art. You learn things better if you can see them.

**I chose mostly c:****- You learn best by doing things.**

You are always busy making and **repairing⁽²⁾** things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading.

**I chose mostly d:****- You learn by listening.**

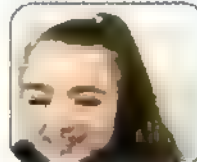
You love music and are often talking! You find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.



When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family are always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to travel so I am learning lots of languages. Next year, I am starting French classes. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass!

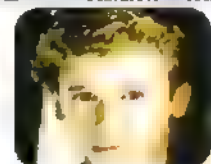
What sort of learners are the following?

- 1- Habiba likes **summarising⁽¹⁾** a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes a **summary⁽²⁾** in about 15 - 20 words. Habiba **learns best by writing**.



- ١- تلخيص
٢- ملخص

- 2- Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today! Fares learns by seeing things.



3- For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar* is to **make up**⁽³⁾ a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember **irregular verbs**!⁽⁴⁾ Dareen learns best by listening.

٣- يؤلف
٤- أفعال غير منتظمة
٥- تجربة عملية
٦- المعمل



4- Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an **experiment**⁽⁵⁾ in the **laboratory**⁽⁶⁾, he always understands what is happening! Marwan learns best by doing things.



Say it
correctly

* grammar ينطق حرف a في كلمة grammar مثل نطقه في كلمة man
وليس مثل نطقه في كلمة car.

WB Page (108)

١- قلعة
٢- محيط

My village didn't use to have any tourists but now lots of visitors come here every year. Today, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the **castle**⁽¹⁾. Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am **a supporter**⁽²⁾ about this, because I think they will cut down some of the trees to build it.



Audioscript

SB Page (56)

Fares : My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I **failed**⁽¹⁾ an exam. My father was disappointed. He said that one day he wanted me to be the **manager**⁽²⁾ of our family shop. He explained about all the **skills**⁽³⁾ that I needed to work there: maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to pass my exams so I can make my family **proud**⁽⁴⁾. Next year, I'm starting **secondary school**⁽⁵⁾ and I'll continue to study hard!

١- يرسب
٢- مدير
٣- مهارات
٤- فخورين
٥- مدرسة ثانوي
٦- يحقق

Nevine : When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and kind, so I decided I wanted to be a doctor too! I know it will be hard to **achieve**⁽¹⁾ my dream. I need to go to university and pass lots of exams. My uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to come back to Egypt and work in a hospital.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. I was when I saw my bad mark at English.
a. proud b. happy c. disappointed d. pleased
2. The manager was angry when he found the truth.
a. off b. out c. on d. in
3. You should write instructions on a piece of paper.
a. down b. of c. up d. in
4. I always listen carefully to my teacher and notes.
a. hunt b. talk c. take d. fill
5. If you an exam, you will feel proud.
a. fail b. fill c. succeed d. pass
6. study science three times a week during the school term.
a. Learners b. Farmers c. Trainers d. Cleaners
7. If you an exam, you will feel disappointed.
a. feel b. fail c. pass d. fall

WB

SB

WB

SB

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. books and stories is my favourite hobby.
a. Reading b. Talking c. Speaking d. Listening
9. to music is enjoyable.
a. Reading b. Speaking c. Listening d. Writing
10. My laptop is broken. I want to it.
a. fail b. follow c. decide d. repair
11. Noha was excited by the Karnak Temple in Luxor.
a. mostly b. friendly c. lovely d. silly
12. What did you to do after finishing your study?
a. leave b. decide c. explain d. act
13. Mohanad could a solution to his problem.
a. do b. lose c. play d. find
14. I was because I lost my favourite pen.
a. pleased b. happy c. disappointed d. glad
15. Heba's parents are very of her. She is clever.
a. disappointed b. angry c. sorry d. proud
16. I like repairing things. I learn best by
a. reading b. listening c. seeing d. doing things

17. Salem turned on his computer to a video game.

- a. play b. pass c. explain d. act

18. To listen to the, click on the link below.

- a. pod b. cost c. podcast d. view



Language

Review on Tenses

1- Present simple and present continuous

	Present simple	المضارع البسيط	Present continuous	المضارع المستمر
Form	I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + Inf. He / She / It / اسم مفرد + verb + (s-es-ies)		I am He/ She / It / اسم مفرد is We / You / They / اسم جمع are	verb + ing.
Usage	- يستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو أفعال متكررة. - My uncle in the USA. - I tennis every week. - The sun in the east.		- يستخدم ليبدل على فعل يحدث أثناء وقت الكلام. - I'm my uncle now. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث لم تنتهي بعد (ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام). - I'm French. - يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث مؤقتة. - They the school this week.	
Negative	Subject + don't / doesn't + inf. - I playing tennis.		Subject + am/is/are not + verb + ing. - She drawing pictures at the moment.	
Question	(كلمة استفهام) + فاعل + inf..? - What she want?		Am/Is/Are + فاعل + verb + ing..? - What you doing?	
Keywords	every (day - week - month - year) always - usually - often sometimes - never		Listen! / now / at the moment Look! / at present	

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The sun in the morning every day.

- a. is rising b. rose c. rises d. will rise

2. The children now.

- a. are sleeping b. slept c. sleep d. sleeps

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- I (take) photos at the moment.
- My name (be) Osman.

2- Past simple and past continuous

	Past simple الماضي البسيط	Past continuous الماضي المستمر
Form	<p>Subject + فعل في التصريف الثاني</p> <p>Subject + used to + inf.</p> <p>- نستخدم used to للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي وانتهت.</p>	<p>I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد was</p> <p>We / You / They / اسم جمع were</p> <p>verb + ing.</p>
Usage	<p>- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي أو عادة كانت في الماضي ولم تعد موجودة الآن.</p> <p>- I lived in Aswan when I was young.</p> <p>- I used to like tennis when I was young.</p>	<p>- يستخدم ليعبر عن حدوث فعل في الماضي أثناء حدوث فعل آخر.</p> <p>- I was playing chess with my sister when it started to rain.</p> <p>- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمراً في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي.</p> <p>- I was waiting for the match to start at 8 last night.</p>
Negative	<p>Subject + didn't + inf.</p> <p>Subject + didn't use to + inf.</p> <p>- I didn't watch the match yesterday.</p> <p>- I didn't use to like tennis! I used to like basketball.</p>	<p>Subject + was/were + not + verb + ing.</p> <p>- She wasn't listening to music when the light went out.</p>
Question	<p>(كلمة استفهام) Was/Were + فاعل + inf.?</p> <p>(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?</p> <p>- Where did he travel?</p> <p>- Where did he use to live?</p>	<p>(كلمة استفهام) Was/Were + فاعل + verb + ing?</p> <p>- What were you doing when the bell rang?</p>
Keywords	<p>last (week-month-year) / yesterday / ago / in 2019 / in the past</p>	<p>While / As / Just as / When</p>



• لا نستخدم **used to** مع حدث تم مرة واحدة في الماضي واستخدم الماضي البسيط بدلاً منه

Ex. Last Friday, we **had** visitors from China and Japan.

Check

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I pick up flowers when I was young.
a. was using to b. use to c. used to d. am used to
- They TV when it started to rain.
a. are watching b. watch c. watches d. were watching

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- While she was playing, she(break) the window.
- She (visit) the museum yesterday.

3- Future: will / (be) going to / present continuous

	will	(be) going to
Form	Subject + will + inf.	I am } He / She / It / اسم مفرد is } going to + inf. We / You/ They / اسم جمع are }
Usage	- يستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل بناء على رأي شخصي دون وجود دليل. - اتخاذ قرارات سريعة - I think it will be hard but fun at university.	- نستخدم للتنبؤ بحدوث فعل في المستقبل مع وجود دليل. - نستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن نوايا أو خطط مستقبلية. - I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
Negative	Subject + won't + inf. - Osama won't work as a teacher.	Subject + am/is/are + not + going to + inf. - Basma isn't going to travel to Aswan because she is ill.
Question	Will + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام) - When will they take a test?	Am/Is/Are + فاعل + going to + Inf.? (كلمة استفهام) - Who is going to help you?
Keywords	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow	next (week - month - year) / tomorrow / intend / intention / decide / plan

4- Present continuous

• نستخدم المصارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية بناءً على ترتيبات (وبدل على ذلك كلمات) مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. I'm **visiting** the museum next week. I **arranged** to do that.

Ex. Next year, I'm **starting** secondary school.

Exercises on Language

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

1. My daughter early for school. She is very active. شروق طلعت - 2024
 a. is never b. is always c. never is d. always is
2. He never Arabic. خميم - 2024
 a. is speaking b. spoken c. speak d. speaks
3. Mona do sports when she was young. عاطرة - 2024
 a. uses to b. is using to c. used to d. is used to
4. When I young, I wanted to be a scientist. SB
 a. am b. were c. was d. is
5. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he out this evening. WB
 a. come b. will come c. came d. comes
6. Next Friday, we the great show at the school hall. البحر - 022 SB
 a. are watching b. watch c. watches d. watched
7. We to secondary school in two years. SB
 a. went b. going to go c. are going to go d. goes
8. Hala like fruit, but now she loves it. WB
 a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't use to
9. What now? الجيرة - اليمال بحيرة - 2022
 a. are you doing b. you are doing c. are you going d. you are going to do

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. Mona to school by bus next year.
 a. go b. going c. goes d. will go
11. your father work in a factory?
 a. Is b. Do c. Does d. Was
12. A: Where do you live? B: I in Giza.
 a. lived b. live c. am living d. lives
13. I my homework after school.
 a. doing b. does c. did d. done
14. She isn't talking on the phone now, she her homework.
 a. is doing b. did c. does d. was doing
15. Listen! Salma the piano.
 a. plays b. played c. was playing d. is playing
16. My friends to school on foot last month.
 a. will go b. went c. goes d. go

17. I will to France next month.
 a. travelled b. travels c. travel d. travelling
18. While Leila along the street, she met Ola.
 a. walked b. walks c. will walk d. was walking
19. your father usually come home early?
 a. Does b. Do c. Is d. Have

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He doesn't (plays) tennis. فوض 2024
2. Hala (go) to the library last night. البحر 2024
3. My son (bring) me a nice present yesterday. عاهره 2024
4. I (use) travel to Alex, but now I don't. نفس 2024
5. Where (you travelled) last week? المليا 2024
6. Did you (used) to drive a car? للحال الجيره 2022
7. I (visit) Rome in 2010. البحره - وادي النظرون 2022
8. I want to travel so I (learn) lots of languages. SB
9. Fatma sometimes (help) her mother with the housework.
10. It's very hot in here. I (open) the window.

Speaking

Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

نسال ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

Question

Answer

A: How do you prefer to learn?
 كيف تفضل ان تتعلم؟

B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.
 احب التعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا احب عمل الشئ نفسه على الدوام.

A: What type of classes are your favourite?
 ما انواع الحصص التي تفضلها؟

B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.
 احب الحصص التي نقوم فيها بعمل اشياء ولا تقتصر الحصة فقط على القراءة أو الاستماع.

A: What type of learning would you like to do more?
 ما نوع الطرق التعليمية التي تريد القيام بالمزيد منها؟

B: I like to do listening activities more.
 احب القيام بأنشطة الاستماع بشكل أكثر.

A: What would you like to do less? Why?
 ماذا تريد أن تقلل منه؟ لماذا؟

B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.
 اريد ان اقلل من أنشطة الكتابة لأنى غير مهتم بالتعلم عن طريق الكتابة.

General Exercises

on Lessons 1 & 2



① Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa is talking about his favourite singer.

Ragab : What do you prefer to do in your free time?

Mustafa : ①

Ragab : ② ?

Mustafa : My favourite singer is Amr Diab.

Ragab : ③ ?

Mustafa : Because he has a very lovely singing voice.

Ragab : What kind of music do you like?

Mustafa : ④

Ragab : Do you usually go to concerts?

Mustafa : ⑤

② Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Exercises on Vocabulary

1. When was the last time you disappointed? SB

- a. felt b. fall c. filled d. fell

2. It was cloudy today. There wasn't much sun. WB

- a. hardly b. never c. rarely d. mostly

3. Students need to what job they want to do. SB

- a. travel b. fix c. repair d. decide

4. I study grammar easily through I learn best by seeing things.

- a. songs b. grams c. experiments d. diagrams

5. The teacher asked us to give a / an to the story as it's too long.

- a. presentation b. summary c. introduction d. action

Exercises on Language

6. What they doing in the garden? WB

- a. have b. do c. are d. did

7. At the moment, my brother in a bank. WB

- a. worked b. is working c. will work d. work

8. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I! **SB**

- a. will pass b. was passing c. passed d. passes

9. When I was three years old, I didn't to school. **SB**

- a. use to going b. using go c. use to go d. used to going

10. The opposite of the word "fail" is **الموضحة 2022**

- a. feel b. fall c. pass d. lose

11. When he got low marks, his parents were **التشجيع 2024**

- a. disappeared b. happy c. excited d. disappointed

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. When I was young, I (use riding) a bike. **سوهاج - احمص 2022**

2. Look! A cat (climb) a tree. **البحيرة - 2022**

3. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I (be) a scientist! **SB**

4. Ahmed (study) for his maths exam at the moment. **SB**

5. I (buy) a book last week. **أكتوبر - حيرة 2022**

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"What sort of learner you are"

WB (مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- How many learning styles are there?
- What are they?
- How do you remember English grammar?
- How do you understand science books?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- There are many
- These learning styles are
- The best way to remember English grammar is

Key Vocabulary

body language	لغة الجسد
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)
multilingual	متعدد اللغات
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
sound	صوت (شئ)
voice	صوت (بشرى)
expert	خبير

national
dialect
advantage
identity
connect (ed)
touch (n) (ed)

استمع إلى المفردات



قومي / محلي
لهجة
ميزة
هوية
يصل / يربط
اللمس / يلمس



Vocabulary

difference	اختلاف
suggestion	اقتراح
spoken	منطوقة / مُتحدث بها (لغة)
home	وطن
community	مجتمع
international	عالمي / دولي
normally	بشكل طبيعي
soft voice	صوت رقيق
professor	أستاذ جامعي
bright	ساطع / لامع - ذكي
serious	جاد - خطير

frightened	خائف / مرعوب
field	ملعب - حقل
scared	خائف / مرعوب
lovely	جميل / فائق
Switzerland	سويسرا
communication	اتصال / تواصل
communicate (d)	يتواصل
copy (ied)	يقلد / ينسخ
miss (ed)	يفتقد / يفوته
believe (d)	يعتقد / يصدق
wait (ed)	ينتظر

Languages

French	اللغة الفرنسية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية
German	اللغة الألمانية	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية «سويسرا»

Expressions & Prepositions

have advantages	لديه مميزات	on a farm	في مزرعة
make (a) noise	يُحدث ضجيج	on the internet	على الانترنت
make eye contact	يتواصل بصرياً «بالنظر»	go away	يذهب بعيداً
home language	اللغة الرسمية في البلد	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
feel different	يشعر بشيء مختلف (مميز)	disappointed with	محبط من
head down	مطاطخ الرأس	communicate with	يتواصل مع
that's true	هذا صحيح	walk into	يدخل مكان
copy sounds	يقلد الأصوات	connect to	يتصل بـ / يربط بـ
bring together	يجمعه	different to	مختلف عن
from my point of view	من وجهة نظري	at the front door	عند الباب الأمامي
careful about	حريص بشأن		

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت - يصرف مال	spent	spent
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
leave	يغادر	left	left

Word

Meaning

Opposite

quiet	هادئ	calm	noisy	صاخب / ضوضائي
inside	في الداخل	indoors	outside	في الخارج
advantage	ميزة	merit	disadvantage	عيب
true	حقيقي	real	untrue	غير حقيقي



Definitions

dialect	لهجة	- a way of speaking used in one area - a form of a language that people speak in a particular part of a country.	
national	قومي/ محلي	relating ⁽²⁾ to or typical ⁽³⁾ of a whole ⁽⁴⁾ country and its people	١- معين ٢- يتعلق بـ
advantage	ميزة	a good thing about something	٣- قياسي/ نموذجي ٤- بالكامل
expert	خبير	someone who has a lot of skill in or knowledge about something	

multilingual	متعدد اللغات	be able to speak more than two languages	هـ- يجلب/ يحضر
connect	يصل/ يربط	bring⁽⁵⁾ things / people together, join	
identity	هوية	the thing that makes you different to other people	
body language	لغة الجسد	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling	
touch	يلمس	put your hand onto something or someone	
voice	صوت (بشرى)	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing	
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time	
facial expression	تعبير الوجه	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think	

Language Notes

① voice / sound

- **voice (n)** صوت (بشرى)

Ex. He was ill so I could hardly hear his **voice**.

- **sound (v-ed)** يبدو

Ex. That **sounds** a good idea.

- **sound (n)** صوت (شيء)

Ex. Please, turn the **sound** of the radio down a little.

② communicate / connect

- **communicate (with)** يتواصل (مع)

Ex. We live in different cities and we **communicate with** each other by email.

- **connect (to)** يتصل / يربط (بـ)

Ex. Our home language **connects** us to our country.

③ dialect / accent

- **dialect** لهجة (تشير إلى الاختلافات في القواعد والمفردات لنفس اللغة من منطقة لأخرى)

Ex. There are many **dialects** in Egypt like Saidi and Bedouin.

- **accent** لكنة (تشير إلى الطريقة التي ينطق بها الافراد كلمات او عبارات معينة)

Ex. Although he spoke English well, I knew he was Indian from his **accent**.

Check on Language Notes

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The kids repeated the song in high
a. sounds b. voices c. talks d. touch
- Our computer is to the internet.
a. connected b. communicated c. consisted d. contained
- People in north Egypt speak coastal
a. voice b. language c. dialect d. sound



Audioscript

SB Page (58)

استمع إلى النصوص



Munir : What do you know about animals? Do you think they understand you? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals **communicate⁽¹⁾**. Hello, Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed: Hello.

Munir : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm. My brother is a **farmer⁽²⁾** and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that possible?

Dr Ahmed: I'm sure the cat understands when he is **angry⁽³⁾** and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed: No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can **copy⁽⁴⁾** sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One way animals communicate is by using **body language⁽⁵⁾**. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse **they like** and bees dance when they find a good flower.

Munir : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then?

Dr Ahmed: **From my point of view⁽⁶⁾**, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and **voice⁽⁷⁾**. So, if an animal is **scared⁽⁸⁾**, you should move slowly and use a **soft voice⁽⁹⁾**. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise? Does it sound different if it wants some food? I think it will!



- ١- يتواصل
- ٢- مزارع
- ٣- غاصب
- ٤- يُقلد
- ٥- لغة الجسد
- ٦- من وجهة نظري
- ٧- صوت بشري
- ٨- خائف / مرعوب
- ٩- صوت رقيق

Ola : I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely⁽¹⁾?

Injy : Yes, but how can you understand what she wants?

Ola : From my point of view , you should first look at the baby's facial expression⁽²⁾, so you know if they are happy or sad.

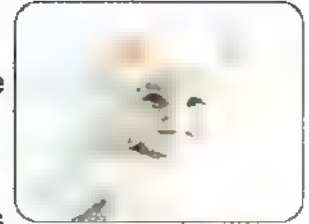
Injy : That's true.

Ola : I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

Injy : What should we do?

Ola : Let's try to make her laugh.

Injy : Good idea. How about singing a funny song!



١- جميل

٢- تعبيرات الوجه



Reading

SB Page (59)

Can anyone give me some advice? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

She tells me to go away if I try to talk to her. How can I get her to spend time with me again?

Please give me some advice!

Yours, Radwa.



Multilingual Africa⁽¹⁾

Experts believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken⁽³⁾ in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect⁽⁴⁾ (or home language), the national⁽⁵⁾ language and another European⁽⁶⁾ language such as English, French or Portuguese⁽⁷⁾ that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual! Of course, many people speak more than three languages!

People who speak different languages have lots of advantages⁽⁸⁾. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.



١- إفريقيا متعددة اللغات

٢- خبراء

٣- منطوقة

٤- لهجة

٥- قومي / محلي

٦- أوروبي

٧- لغة برتغالية

٨- مميزات

It also gives people different **identities**⁽⁹⁾. If you speak your home language, it **connects**⁽¹⁰⁾ you to your **community**⁽¹¹⁾. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An **international**⁽¹²⁾ language, like English, connects your to an international community.

- ٩- هويات
- ١٠- يربط
- ١١- مجتمع
- ١٢- دولي

WB Page (109)

Form of **communication**⁽¹⁾

- 1- Shady is waiting at the **front door**⁽²⁾ of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.
- 2- It's the end of a football match. All the players in the blue team are leaving the **field**⁽³⁾ very slowly. They all have their **heads down**⁽⁴⁾. We know they are disappointed with the **result**⁽⁵⁾ by their body language.
- 3- A **blind**⁽⁶⁾ man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by **touch**⁽⁷⁾.
- 4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different **sides**⁽⁸⁾ of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes **eye contact**⁽⁹⁾ with her.
- 5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is **scary**⁽¹⁰⁾ by their facial expressions.

- ١- تواصل / إتصال
- ٢- باب أمامي
- ٣- ملعب
- ٤- مظاظ الرأس
- ٥- نتيجة
- ٦- كفيف
- ٧- اللمس
- ٨- جوانب
- ٩- تواصل بصري «بالنظر»
- ١٠- مرعب / مخيف

WB Page (110)

The languages of Switzerland

Switzerland⁽¹⁾ is a small **European**⁽²⁾ country. Here, you do not **need to be** an expert to **speak many** languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are multilingual: they speak the country's four national languages. That is because each area of Switzerland has always had its own identity and its own language.

The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak **Italian**⁽³⁾, the parts near **Germany**⁽⁴⁾ speak **German**⁽⁵⁾ and the parts near France speak **French**⁽⁶⁾. In the **southwest**⁽⁷⁾ of Switzerland, they also speak a dialect called **Romansh**⁽⁸⁾. Each language connects the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.



- ١- سويسرا
- ٢- أوروبية
- ٣- اللغة الإيطالية
- ٤- دولة ألمانيا
- ٥- اللغة الألمانية
- ٦- اللغة الفرنسية
- ٧- جنوب غرب
- ٨- اللغة الرومانشية

Videoscript

SB Page (60)

Hieroglyphics⁽¹⁾ was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent⁽²⁾ letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter "A" in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone⁽³⁾, which was found in Rashid⁽⁴⁾ in the 18th century⁽⁵⁾. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was - perhaps - the world's first language - library⁽⁶⁾. That is because the stone⁽⁷⁾ has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece⁽⁸⁾.

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning⁽⁹⁾ of hieroglyphics. However, experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still⁽¹⁰⁾ use a form of hieroglyphics today? These are emojis⁽¹¹⁾ and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji 😊 means that the writer is happy...and this one ☹ means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle⁽¹²⁾ and this ladybird⁽¹³⁾. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent "good luck".



١- اللغة الهيروغليفية

٢- ترمز إلى

٣- حجر رشيد

٤- مدينة رشيد

٥- قرن (١٨٠٠ عام)

٦- قاموس

٧- حجر

٨- اليونان القديمة

٩- معنى

١٠- مازال

١١- رسوم تعبيرية

١٢- جعران فرعوني

١٣- خنفساء الدعسوقة

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- I think my mum is not sleeping, I can hear her
a. sound b. language c. voice d. gate
نصيا العذوة 2024
- A person who speaks lots of languages is
a. greedy b. lazy c. multilingual d. language
عيسى عيسى 2024
- The of people in Cairo is different from those in upper Egypt.
a. connection b. multilingual c. dialect d. language
صبر 2024
- The opposite of the word "fail" is
a. feel b. fall c. pass d. lose
خبر 2024
- The police are trying to find out the of the thief.
a. identity b. language c. sound d. contact
نحاس 2024

6. The are the things that make you different to other people .

الصور - شمال سيناء 2022 WB

- a. forms b. subjects c. identities d. similarities

7. A sound that comes from your mouth is your.

SB

- a. sound b. hear c. voice d. touch

8. What is the language of Egypt?

WB

- a. fashion b. occasional c. emotional d. national

9. A blind man walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by

الغربية 2022

- a. sounds b. sight c. smell d. touch

10. Body means the way you move your body.

القاهرة 2022

- a. language b. built c. lantern d. balance

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. I knew he was scared from his expressions.

- a. station b. nasal c. social d. facial

12. One of the of living in the countryside is the fresh air.

- a. disadvantages b. damages c. advantages d. harm

13. Muhammad should more time with his family.

- a. go b. walk c. spend d. do

14. Do you know how to my mobile to a TV?

- a. spend b. connect c. miss d. communicate

15. The violin gives a lovely

- a. sound b. language c. dialect d. voice

16. In southern Egypt, people speak a called Saidi.

- a. festival b. game c. tradition d. dialect

17. The players understand each other through contact.

- a. eye b. ear c. nose d. mouth

18. My friends and I using "WhatsApp".

- a. communicate b. connect c. copy d. believe

19. are people who know lots about a subject.

- a. Advantages b. Experts c. Identities d. Experts

Speaking

Giving advice, opinions and suggestions

اسماء النصح وتقديم الرأي والاقتراحات

- تستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأي / الاقتراحات:

Advice	النصيحة	You should...	يجب عليك أن ...
Opinion	الرأي	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...	من وجهة نظري... في رأيي... أعتقد...
Suggestion	الاقتراح	Let's + inf.... Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing?	هيا ... لماذا لا ...? ما رأيك في ...؟

General Exercises

on Lessons 3 & 4



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Yasser wants to buy a new laptop.

Yasser : I want to buy a laptop, dad.

Dad : ①

Yasser : Do you think a tablet is better?

Dad : ② It's easier to use.

Yasser : Good opinion, dad. ③

Dad : Today, I'm busy. ④

Yasser : Tomorrow? OK! Should we buy a modern or an old one?

Dad : ⑤

Yasser : But a modern one is expensive.

Dad : No problem. I have enough money.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an to speak many languages. **WB**

- a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. expect

2. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their **WB**

- a. eye contact b. facial expressions
c. touch d. body language

WB

3. Shady can hear inside the house.

- a. sounds b. smell c. touch d. taste

4. Modern technology helps people to with each other.

- a. see b. communicate c. read d. fight

الفقرة 2022

5. about going out for a walk? It's fine today.

- a. When b. Why c. How d. Where

طاولن - الفقرة 2022

6. ... my point of view, it's important to study new languages.

- a. From b. In c. By d. for

7. Some animals can sounds. The parrot is one of them.

- a. connect b. feel c. copy d. spend

WB

③ Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

- Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com

- Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What should Radwa tell her sister?
- What's your advice to Radwa?
- What would you do if you were Radwa?
- What should Radwa advise her sister not to do?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- You should tell your sister
- My advice to you is
- If I were you, I'd
- You should advise your sister not to

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 61 - 62 WB pages 111 -112

Key Vocabulary

summer school	مدرسة صيفية
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث
volunteer	متطوع
personal statement	بيان شخصي
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم
study plan	خطة دراسية

spelling	الهجاء
punctuation	علامات الترقيم
pronunciation	النطق
accent	لكنة
improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
manage (d)	يدير / ينظم

استمع إلى المفردات



Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيدًا
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن مُنظماً
take a break	خذ فترة راحة		



Vocabulary

negative meaning	معنى سلبي	flashcards	بطاقات تعليمية مصورة
title	لقب / عنوان (كتاب أو فيلم)	furniture	أثاث
timetable	جدول مواعيد	topic	موضوع
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية	news article	مقال إخباري
nationality	جنسية	revise (d)	يراجع
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني	test (ed) (n)	يختبر / اختبار
bilingual	ثنائي اللغة	realise (d)	يدرك
textbook	كتاب مدرسي	smoke (d) (n)	يدخن / دخان
comments	تعليقات		

Expressions & Prepositions

make a study timetable	يعمل جدول للاستذكار	have fun	يستمتع
the best way to + inf.	أفضل طريقة لـ	do sport / activities	يمارس رياضة / أنشطة
sounds fun	يبدو ممتع	from around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
walk past	يسير مازاً بـ	at the same time	في نفس الوقت

come from	يأتي من (بلده)	organised by topic	منظم حسب الموضوع
look the same	يبدو متطابق / متماثل	best for	الأفضل لـ
get better	يتحسن	listen for / to	يستمع لـ
English-language TV programmes	برامج تلفزيونية لتعليم الإنجليزية	good at	جيد في

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

break	يكسر
come	يأتي
spell	يتهجى

Past simple

broke
came
spelt / spelled

Past Participle

broken
come
spelt / spelled

Word

Meaning

Opposite

negative	سلبى	bad	positive	إيجابى
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود



Definitions

organised	منظم	- able to plan ⁽¹⁾ things carefully ⁽²⁾ - arranged or planned	١- يخطط ٢- بعناية
volunteer	متطوع	a person who helps others without getting anything in return ⁽³⁾	٣- فى المقابل
Improve	يحسن / يطور	to get better at something	



Language Notes

① The prefix (dis)

- يضاف فى بداية بعض الكلمات الإنجليزية مقاطع تعطى معنى مختلف للكلمة تسمى بادئات (prefixes).
- من هذه المقاطع البادئة (dis-) حيث تعطى معنى سلبى أو عكس الكلمة الأصلية:

organised	منظم	disorganised	غير منظم
connected	متصل	disconnected	غير متصل
advantage	ميزة	disadvantage	عيب

- لاحظ فى الكلمات السابقة إذا حذفنا المقطع (dis) فإن الكلمة المتبقية ستكون ذات معنى وهو عكس الكلمة لكن لا ينطبق ذلك على كلمات أخرى مثل (disappointed).

2) too + adj (for...) + to + inf.

• نستخدم التعبير السابق للتعبير عن شيء كثير أو زائد لدرجة ألا نتحمل (سعره - حرارته - ...)

Ex. My house is **too noisy** to study in.

Ex. This shirt is **too expensive** for me to buy.

3) street / road

• **street** شارع في منطقة سكنية

Ex. We live in a quiet **street**.

• **road** طريق ممهّد للسفر أو التنقل بين مكانين / مدينتين

Ex. The farm is on Cairo-Alexandria **road**.

4) Completing an application form

بيانات اكمال استمارة لتقديم طلب

• عند التقدم بطلب الوظيفة / الالتحاق بمدرسة / جامعة / دورة تدريبية ... إلخ، تكمل استمارة بالبيانات الآتية:

. Name: : الاسم

. Age: : العمر

. Date of birth: : تاريخ الميلاد

. Nationality: : الجنسية

. Address: : العنوان

. Phone number: : رقم الهاتف

. Email address: : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني

. Personal statement: : بيان شخصي

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of connected is

a. disconnected b. connecting c. ilconnected d. inconnected

2. The tea is hot to drink.

a. two b. toe c. to d. too

3. Take Ismailia Desert to travel from Cairo to Ismailia.

a. Street b. Road c. Ocean d. Sky



Reading

SB Page (62)

استمع إلى النصوص



English language summer school for teenagers!

Do you want to **improve**⁽¹⁾ your English? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our **summer courses**⁽²⁾! You can study every morning with our **friendly**⁽³⁾, expert teachers and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford).

**Learn English,
have fun,
visit England!**

For more information, visit our website.

- ١- يطور / يحسن
- ٢- دورات تعليمية
- صيفية
- ٣- ودود

WB Page (111)

Study plan⁽¹⁾: how to learn English vocabulary⁽²⁾

- 1- Make **flashcards**⁽³⁾ of words that you need to remember, **organised**⁽⁴⁾ by **topic**⁽⁵⁾ (for example, words for **furniture**)⁽⁶⁾.
- 2- Write the words in **context**⁽⁷⁾: that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
- 3- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time: find how many words is best for you.
- 4- Watch English-language TV programmes or films and listen for **known**⁽⁸⁾ words.
- 5- Read as many stories and **news articles**⁽⁹⁾ as you can: it's the best way to learn vocabulary!
- 6- Work with a friend and try to test each other on important words.

- ١- خطة دراسية
- ٢- مفردات لغوية
- ٣- بطاقات تعليمية
- ٤- مُنظّم / مرتّب
- ٥- موضوع
- ٦- إناث
- ٧- سياق الكلام
- ٨- معروف
- ٩- مقالات إخبارية

WB Page (112)

Hi

My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old. My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy. My **address**¹ is 7 North Road, Rome and my **phone number**⁽²⁾ is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers!). I want to improve my English because I want to **do well**⁽³⁾ in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports **such as**⁽⁴⁾ football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,
Mario Dollo

- ١- عنوان
- ٢- رقم الهاتف
- ٣- يؤدي جيداً
- ٤- مثل

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was **walking past** the building where the horses slept when he saw **some smoke**. He **realised** there was a fire. The horses were **in the stable** and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very **calm** and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a **veterinarian**. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

- ١- يمشي ماراً
٢- دخان
٣- يدرك
٤- مرعوب
٥- هادئ
٦- طبيب بيطري

Exercises

on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB, WB & Exams Exercises

- They are twins. They have date of birth.
a. different b. similar c. the same d. special
- When you get tired, you can a break.
a. make b. take c. win d. do
- Successful persons always their time.
a. manage b. damage c. test d. revise
- Workers have to their skills to get good jobs.
a. move b. include c. improve d. prove
- The charity needs some like you.
a. vans b. fans c. voluntary d. volunteers
- To means to join two things or places together.
a. fix b. connect c. copy d. explain
- Salem must well for the next exam.
a. fail b. revise c. pass d. manage
- Mona used to sports when she was young.
a. make b. do c. take d. wait

Bit by Bit Exercises

- The two cities are by a bridge.
a. connected b. organised c. disorganised d. disappointed
- We add the prefix "....." to give the opposite of "organised".
a. ir- b. il- c. dis- d. in-

11. The question is difficult to answer.
a. too b. two c. to d. twice
12. We should be to do better in our life.
a. disorganised b. broken c. organised d. known
13. The books are alphabetically on the shelf.
a. organised b. disappointed c. disconnected d. closed
14. I felt so when my parents didn't come to drive me home.
a. connected b. disconnected c. disappointed d. organised
15. One of the of this job is that they offer a car to and from the factory.
a. disadvantages b. damages c. bad points d. advantages
16. We learn a lot of in this lesson.
a. volunteers b. vocabulary c. furniture d. breaks

Speaking

A discussion about study tips (for an exam)

مناقشة حول إرشادات الاستذكار

• نستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

Be organised

كن منظماً

- Know what you need to do and when to do it. - اعرف ماذا تحتاج ان تفعل ومتى.

Manage your time

نظم وقتك

- Make a study timetable. - قم بعمل جدول للاستذكار.

Where do you study?

أين تذاكر؟

- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. - اوجد مكان هادئ للاستذكار. اذا كان المنزل مزدحم يمكن ان تذهب للمكتبة.

Work alone or with friends.

اعمل بمفردك أو مع أصدقاءك.

Take breaks.

خذ فترات راحة.

Sleep well.

نم جيداً.

General Exercises

on Lessons 5 & 6



1 Complete the following dialogue:

Nehal is asking Miss Noura for some tips about how to study well.

Nehal : Could you give me some advice about studying, please?

Miss Noura : 1

Nehal : 2

Be organised and know what you need to do and when to do it.

Nehal : Great! How can I manage my time?

Miss Noura : 3

Nehal : 4 _____ ?

Miss Noura : You should study in a quiet place.

Nehal :  [View profile](#) [View posts](#) [View photos](#) [View videos](#) [View comments](#) [View likes](#) [View shares](#) [View tags](#) [View mentions](#) [View friends](#) [View followers](#) [View following](#) [View likes](#) [View shares](#) [View tags](#) [View mentions](#) [View friends](#) [View followers](#) [View following](#)

Miss Noura : You're welcome.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are _____ in many ways.

WE

- a. connected b. disappointed
c. disadvantages d. disorganised

2. The personal _____ is an important part of an application form.

- a. context b. statement c. spelling d. accent

3. English is an international

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

- a. sport b. country c. language d. food

4. Students should have a study

1. show b. context c. title d. plan

5. A _____ is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.

WB

1. learner b. thief c. volunteer d. worker

6. The _____ of this word is wrong.

- a. plan b. spelling c. timetable d. address

7. Nurses help patients to _____ better at hospitals.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

1. take b. cook c. set d. get

WB

(مجاوب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

4 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on:

“How to learn English vocabulary”

[illegible]

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What is the problem that most learners face?
- How can flashcards be used?
- Why should we watch English-language TV programmes?
- What's the best way to learn vocabulary?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- Most English-language learners face the problem of
- They can make flashcards of
- They should watch
- The best way to learn vocabulary is

Key Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	expert	خبير
mostly	غالباً / في الأغلب	national	قومي / محلي
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	dialect	لهجة
disappointed	مُحبط	advantage	ميزة
proud	فخور	identity	هوية
body language	لغة الجسد	spelling	الهجاء
eye contact	تواصل بصرى (بالنظر)	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	pronunciation	النطق
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	accent	لكنة
sound	صوت (شئ)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يُصلح
voice	صوت (بشرى)	fail (ed)	يفشل / يرسب
summer school	مدرسة صيفية	pass (ed)	ينجح / يجتاز
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث	decide (d)	يقرر
volunteer	متطوع	improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
personal statement	بيان شخصي	manage (d)	يدير / ينظم
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	connect (ed)	يصل / يربط
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	touch (n) (ed)	اللمس / يلمس
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Learning styles

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيداً
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن مُنظماً
take a break	خذ استراحة		



Language

1- The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	Do + (كلمة استفهام) فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s / es / ies	Does (كلمة استفهام) + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage: الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

Ex. We **help** mum at home.

- Ali **lives** in Giza.

Ex. We **don't make** noise.

- Mona **doesn't live** in Giza.

Ex. **Do they have** a car?

- **Does Aya live** in Giza?

- Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**.

- Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

2- The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل	didn't + inf. فاعل +	Did + (كلمة استفهام) فاعل + inf.?

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage: الاستخدام

• يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She **cooked** fish yesterday.

Ex. She **didn't cook** meat yesterday.

Ex. **Did she cook** rice yesterday?

- Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

3- The past continuous tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل

إثبات

نفي

استفهام

I
He / She / It /
اسم مفرد
We / You / They /
اسم جمع

was
were
+ v-ing

was
were
not + v-ing

(كلمة استفهام)
Was
Were
+ فاعل + v-ing?

الكلمات الدالة

when / while / as / just as

الاستخدام

يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي / حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر

Ex. I was reading a book when mum called me.

Ex. He wasn't eating cake. Ex. Were you flying a kite?

4- The future simple tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات

نفي

استفهام

فاعل + will + inf.

فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.

Will + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

الاستخدام

يعبر عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل

Ex. She will visit us tomorrow.

Ex. They will not (won't) sing.

Ex. Will you do your homework?

- Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

Speaking

Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

- نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

A: How do you prefer to learn?

B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.

A: What type of classes are your favourite?

B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.

A: What learning would you like to do more?

B: I'd like to do listening activities more.

A: What would you like to do less? Why?

B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.

2) Giving advice, opinions and suggestions اسداء النصح وتقديم الرأي والافتراحات
- تستخدم العبارات التالية للتعبير عن النصيحة / الرأي / الاقتراحات

Advice	You should...
Opinion	From my point of view, ... In my opinion, ... I think...
Suggestion	Let's + inf.... Why don't you / we + inf....? How about + v-ing?

3) A discussion about study tips (for an exam) مناقشة حول ارشادات الاستذكار

• نستخدم العبارات والنصائح الآتية عند نصح شخص ما بكيفية الاستذكار

Be organised

- Know what you need to do and when to do it.

Manage your time

- Make a study timetable.

Where do you study?

- Find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library.

Work alone or with friends.

Take breaks.

Sleep well.

General Exercises on Unit 12

1) Complete the following dialogue:

Ganna is talking to Aliaa about a holiday.

Ganna : Where did you go at the weekend?

Aliaa : ①

Ganna : To the club! ②

Aliaa : To do some sport there.

Ganna : ③

Aliaa : I like swimming.

Ganna : When will you go next time?

Aliaa : ④

Ganna : Can I come with you?

Aliaa : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The weather this weekend will be cloudy. It is going to rain.
a. never b. no c. hardly d. mostly
2. I use body to express my feelings with friends.
a. clock b. weight c. language d. building
3. His facial showed me how he felt.
a. revisions b. expressions c. occasions d. decisions
4. His strength is a big to win the competition.
a. advantage b. mistake c. disadvantage d. lose
5. Salma has got a lovely singing
a. sight b. smell c. voice d. sound
6. How much will it cost to the TV?
a. destroy b. repeat c. reread d. repair
7. The player proud when he received the gold medal.
a. felt b. filled c. fell d. fall
8. About five million people in Alexandria. WB
a. are living b. live c. lives d. living
9. At the moment, lots of American tourists photographs of the castle. WB
a. take b. used to take c. are taking d. was taking
10. This old tree is going to fall. I think they it down.
a. will cut b. are cutting c. cut d. used to cut
11. The horses were frightened and they to leave the building. WB
a. don't want b. won't want c. didn't want d. wants
12. While we breakfast, you phoned us. 2022 ٧ ٢٠٢٢
a. was have b. will have c. have d. were having

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The sun (will set) in the west.
2. The boy is going to (watching) a football match tomorrow. 122 ٧ ٢٠٢٢
3. I didn't use to (walking) to school.

4. While my mother (cooked), my father arrived home.
 5. My father (going to) work because he's tired.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words:

SB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your study plans"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- What should you do if you have a project or an exam?
- How can you make a study plan?
- How can you be organised?
- How can you manage your time?
- Where should you study?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- You should if you have a project or an exam.
- There are many steps you should follow to
- You should know what
- You should find a quiet place to



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

- The speaker wanted to be a/an
a. scientist b. engineer c. teacher d. pilot
- The speaker finds science very now.
a. easy b. tiring c. difficult d. exciting

B Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Tamer is telling Ahmed about his visit to a museum.

Ahmed : Hello Tamer! How are you?

Tamer : ①

Ahmed : ②

Tamer : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum.

Ahmed : ③

Tamer : I saw lots of statues.

Ahmed : That's a great trip.

C Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- All the about that programme are great.
a. causes b. reviews c. diagrams d. skills
- To study well, you have to your time.
a. succeed b. manage c. damage d. waste
- While he was eating the phone
a. ring b. rings c. rang d. ringing
- Wait a minute, I this box for you.
a. will carry b. carry c. am going to carry d. am carrying
- Can you tell me the between the two countries?
a. difference b. different c. intelligent d. intelligence

D Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Ali and I am in Prep 2. I live in Zagazig with my family. We are a happy

family. My father works at Zagazig hospital. My mom is a housewife, she looks after us all time. I have two sisters and one bigger brother. He is an engineer. We all love spending time watching TV and having fun together. In our free time, we love to go to the parks and the cinema.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. How many people are there in Ali's family?

2. Where does his mom work?

3. What does the underlined word "have fun" mean?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. His father is a

a. teacher

b. doctor

c. chef

d. cook

5. Ali has three

a. sisters

b. brothers

c. siblings

d. cousins

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. Mona used drink milk, but now she doesn't.

(.....)

2. Look! A cat climb a tree.

(.....)

3. The kids play a video game when the bell rang.

(.....)

4. Are you play computer games right now?

(.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

WB

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The importance of learning different languages"

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

- Do you like learning languages? Why / Why not?

- Which languages do you like?

- Why is it important to learn different languages?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I like / don't like learning languages because

- The languages I like are

- It's important to learn different languages because

Paragraphs & Emails

Paragraphs

1- What sort of learner I am

There are many different learning styles. Some prefer to learn by hearing, seeing, doing things, reading and writing. For me the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then I sing the song quietly to myself. I think it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! I learn best by listening. I also find it difficult to understand science books. When I do an experiment in the laboratory, I understand what is happening! I learn best by doing things.

2- How to learn English vocabulary

Most English-language learners face a problem. They find it hard to remember vocabulary. So, there are many ways that can help them. They can make flashcards of words that they need to remember. They should watch English-language TV programmes or films. They should read many stories and news articles. This is the best way to learn vocabulary. They can also work with friends and try to test each other on important words.

3- Your study plans

You should make a plan if you have a project or an exam. There are many steps you should follow to make a study plan. You should be organised. You should know what you need to do and when to do it. You should manage your time. You should make a study timetable. You should find a quiet space to study. If your house is too busy, you could go to the library. You should take breaks. You should sleep well.

4- The importance of learning different languages

I like learning languages. This helps me communicate with friends in different

مقررات إنشائية ورسائل بريد إلكتروني وردت بالوحدة

countries. I like English and French most. Learning different languages is important. I can read books written in these languages.

Emails

1- Advice about problems with my sister

From : fatma345@gmail.com.

To : radwa898@yahoo.com.

Subject : Advice about problems with my sister

Dear Radwa,

I hope you are fine. You should tell your sister how you feel about her. You should tell her that you miss her so much. If I were you, I would share my hobbies and interests with her. You can read an interesting story together. You should tell her that talking on the phone for a long time is bad for her health. You should advise her not to waste her time on the internet. I'm looking forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Fatma

2- Communication with animals

From : magda898@yahoo.com

To : ola345@gmail.com.

Subject : Communication with animals

Dear Ola,

My uncle is a farmer. I visit his farm every weekend. I look after the animals there. I like them very much because I think they understand me. Animals communicate, both with us and with each other. One way animals communicate is by using body language. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. Some birds can copy sounds. I will be happy if you visit my uncle's farm.

Yours,

Magda

Unit 12 TEST



Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- The speaker has an older
a. brother b. sister c. friend d. cousin
- The speaker's sister is years older than him/her.
a. two b. four c. three d. five
- The speaker's sister doesn't want to to him/her very much.
a. listen b. speak c. write d. talk
- The speaker's sister is always on the or talking to people on her phone.
a. Internet b. house c. school d. TV

Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman wants to improve his English.

Ayman : I want to improve my English. What should I do?

Anwar : ①

Ayman : Do you think watching English films is a good way?

Anwar : ②

Ayman : ③?

Anwar : Travelling to England is very useful but it costs a lot.

Ayman : ④?

Anwar : Talking to English people on the internet is a good idea.

Ayman : ⑤

Anwar : You're welcome.

Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Learning a new language has become important recently. Learning a new language is always an **exciting** experience. There could be many reasons that lead to the need to learn new languages but, the advantages are great. In other words, speaking

more than one language can make people's lives easier. For example, people who can speak other languages can find jobs easily. They can work in tourism as tour guides, hotel managers and many other high paying jobs. In addition, those people can communicate with foreigners from different countries. Moreover, learning a foreign language is a great way to explore other cultures and see the world from different angles. In conclusion, learning another language has become a necessity recently.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Learning a foreign language is a great way to other cultures.
a. become b. explore c. work d. pay
- Speaking more than one language can make people's lives
a. simple b. hard c. harmful d. terrible

B. Answer the following questions :

- What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

- Who can find jobs easily?

.....

- What can people do to communicate with foreigners?





.....

- What is the opposite of the underlined word "EXCITING" ?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Our car has broken down. I think we need someone to it.
a. explain b. burn c. fail d. repair
- Medhat can't drive because he his driving test. 
a. passed b. succeeded c. failed d. won
- The family were when they found their hotel room was next to a factory! 
a. disappointed b. proud c. happy d. pleased
- The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will the test. 
a. sound b. lose c. pay d. pass
- The student understood me when he / she made with me.
a. touch b. eye contact c. sounds d. voice
- Many people in Switzerland are: they speak four languages. 
a. blind b. greedy c. careless d. multilingual

7. Next year, they _____ a new hotel in the park.

a. build

b. built

c. were building

d. are going to build

8. When my father was younger, he _____ on his uncle's farm.

a. used to help

b. helps

c. is helping

d. will help

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Sara _____ (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.

SB

2. At the moment, I _____ (do) an English exercise.

WB

3. In the future, I think we _____ (have) more lessons online.

WB

4. Listen! Your mobile. _____ (ring).

لشرفية 2022

5. Raghad _____ (study) yesterday at six o'clock.



6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on:

[مكتب عن فليل الاصدار]

to your friend telling her about communication with animals.

- Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.

- Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني:

- What do you look after? Where?

- Why do you like animals?

- Do some animals communicate? How?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- I look after animals in

- I like animals very much because they

- Some animals communicate by

Review D

SB pages 64 - 65 WB pages 114 - 115

Key



استمع إلى المفردات

geography	جغرافيا / تضاريس	opening party	حفل افتتاح
Eco Shop	محل بيع منتجات صديقة للبيئة	communication	اتصال / تواصل
camping trip	رحلة تخيم	owner	مالك
luxury	شئ فاخر		



Audioscript

SB Page (64)



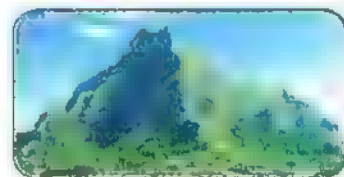
استمع إلى النصوص

Next month is our school . We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th May and we will be back on the 13th at 6 pm. As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking. You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.



- ١- رحلة تخيم
- ٢- نهاراً
- ٣- جغرافيا / تضاريس

WB Page (114)



Guide : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top?

Guide : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim : It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide : From my point of view, it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim : OK, what should I wear?

Guide : You should wear these thick leather boots, and this hard, plastic hat.

Karim : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size?

Guide : Here you are. Does it fit?

Karim : Yes, thank you.

Guide : OK, let's go up the mountain!



Reading

SB page (32)

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre.

The **Eco Shop⁽¹⁾** only sells things that are **environment-friendly⁽²⁾**. Last week, we talked to the **owner⁽³⁾**, Mariam EL-Soory, about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots of people to help **local industries⁽⁴⁾**, too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, **luxury⁽⁵⁾**, Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for **recycling⁽⁶⁾**. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop soon".

Mariam worked for many years as a **guide⁽⁷⁾** at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was picking up some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an **opening party⁽⁸⁾** at 1 pm in three days' time.



- ١- محل صديق للبيئة
- ٢- صديق للبيئة
- ٣- مالك
- ٤- صناعات محلية
- ٥- شيء فاخر
- ٦- إعادة تدوير
- ٧- مرشدة
- ٨- حفل افتتاح

WB Page (114)

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time.

For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages.



Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message!

WB Page (115)

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton galabeya. He's also wearing a long, wool scarf.

Osama is wearing casual clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing cotton trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt.

Deena is at a special occasion. She is wearing smart traditional clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a loose, long, dress with flowers on it.

Test on Units 10, 11 & 12



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



- There is a lot of where the speaker lives.
a. pollution b. rubbish c. paper d. people
- The speaker's never recycle their rubbish.
a. friends b. brothers c. sisters d. neighbours
- In the speaker's view, it is important to
a. swim b. live c. recycle d. walk
- We should take and glass out of the bin and recycle them.
a. plastic b. rubbish c. leather d. paper

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Amir and Hani are talking about Amir's school uniform.

Amir : What do you wear when you go to school?

Hani : ①

Amir : Where did you buy this uniform?

Hani : ②

Amir : ③ ?

Hani : It costs L.E. 200.

Amir : Wow! It's cheap. ④ ?

Hani : Sure. I can come with you.

Amir : ⑤

Hani : You're welcome.

C Reading Comprehension

① Read the following, then answer the questions:

One summer evening, I was sitting by the window reading a story. After a time, it became too **dark** for me to read easily. When I got up to light the lamp, I heard a loud cry "help! help!" It seemed that the sound came from the garden. I looked out, but I couldn't see anything. I heard the cry again. I decided to go out and have a look

because there might be someone that needed help. I took my torch and a walking stick. I looked everywhere, but there was no sign of anybody. I went back to my house. I started to read my book. I was scared by the sound "help, help" behind my shoulder. I dropped my book and jumped up. There, I saw a green and red bird. It was a parrot. It flew out of my window when I went out.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the word "dark" in line two is.....
 a. heavy b. light c. far d. cheap
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to the
 a. garden b. lamp c. stick d. parrot

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why couldn't the writer see anything from the window?

.....

4. Who / What was shouting for help?

.....

5. Why was the writer scared?

.....

6. What is the best title for the passage?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This material is for making luxury clothes.
 a. perfect b. wooden c. interested d. patient
2. The government is building new factories to help the Egyptian.....
 a. tourism b. education c. industry d. chemistry
3. Noha is the girl in our family.
 a. as smart b. smartest c. smart d. smarter
4. It's a car.
 a. beautiful, black, long b. black, beautiful, long
 c. beautiful, long, black d. long, beautiful, black
5. to English songs will improve your English.
 a. Listening b. Reading c. Writing d. Speaking

SB

- SB

SB

- SB

Writing

1. *Introduction*
 2. *Methodology*
 3. *Results*
 4. *Discussion*
 5. *Conclusion*
 6. *References*
 7. *Appendix*
 8. *Index*
 9. *Glossary*
 10. *Notes*
 11. *Footnotes*
 12. *Endnotes*
 13. *Tables*
 14. *Figures*
 15. *Tables*
 16. *Figures*
 17. *Tables*
 18. *Figures*
 19. *Tables*
 20. *Figures*
 21. *Tables*
 22. *Figures*
 23. *Tables*
 24. *Figures*
 25. *Tables*
 26. *Figures*
 27. *Tables*
 28. *Figures*
 29. *Tables*
 30. *Figures*
 31. *Tables*
 32. *Figures*
 33. *Tables*
 34. *Figures*
 35. *Tables*
 36. *Figures*
 37. *Tables*
 38. *Figures*
 39. *Tables*
 40. *Figures*
 41. *Tables*
 42. *Figures*
 43. *Tables*
 44. *Figures*
 45. *Tables*
 46. *Figures*
 47. *Tables*
 48. *Figures*
 49. *Tables*
 50. *Figures*
 51. *Tables*
 52. *Figures*
 53. *Tables*
 54. *Figures*
 55. *Tables*
 56. *Figures*
 57. *Tables*
 58. *Figures*
 59. *Tables*
 60. *Figures*
 61. *Tables*
 62. *Figures*
 63. *Tables*
 64. *Figures*
 65. *Tables*
 66. *Figures*
 67. *Tables*
 68. *Figures*
 69. *Tables*
 70. *Figures*
 71. *Tables*
 72. *Figures*
 73. *Tables*
 74. *Figures*
 75. *Tables*
 76. *Figures*
 77. *Tables*
 78. *Figures*
 79. *Tables*
 80. *Figures*
 81. *Tables*
 82. *Figures*
 83. *Tables*
 84. *Figures*
 85. *Tables*
 86. *Figures*
 87. *Tables*
 88. *Figures*
 89. *Tables*
 90. *Figures*
 91. *Tables*
 92. *Figures*
 93. *Tables*
 94. *Figures*
 95. *Tables*
 96. *Figures*
 97. *Tables*
 98. *Figures*
 99. *Tables*
 100. *Figures*
 101. *Tables*
 102. *Figures*
 103. *Tables*
 104. *Figures*
 105. *Tables*
 106. *Figures*
 107. *Tables*
 108. *Figures*
 109. *Tables*
 110. *Figures*
 111. *Tables*
 112. *Figures*
 113. *Tables*
 114. *Figures*
 115. *Tables*
 116. *Figures*
 117. *Tables*
 118. *Figures*
 119. *Tables*
 120. *Figures*
 121. *Tables*
 122. *Figures*
 123. *Tables*
 124. *Figures*
 125. *Tables*
 126. *Figures*
 127. *Tables*
 128. *Figures*
 129. *Tables*
 130. *Figures*
 131. *Tables*
 132. *Figures*
 133. *Tables*
 134. *Figures*
 135. *Tables*
 136. *Figures*
 137. *Tables*
 138. *Figures*
 139. *Tables*
 140. *Figures*
 141. *Tables*
 142. *Figures*
 143. *Tables*
 144. *Figures*
 145. *Tables*
 146. *Figures*
 147. *Tables*
 148. *Figures*
 149. *Tables*
 150. *Figures*
 151. *Tables*
 152. *Figures*
 153. *Tables*
 154. *Figures*
 155. *Tables*
 156. *Figures*
 157. *Tables*
 158. *Figures*
 159. *Tables*
 160. *Figures*
 161. *Tables*
 162. *Figures*
 163. *Tables*
 164. *Figures*
 165. *Tables*
 166. *Figures*
 167. *Tables*
 168. *Figures*
 169. *Tables*
 170. *Figures*
 171. *Tables*
 172. *Figures*
 173. *Tables*
 174. *Figures*
 175. *Tables*
 176. *Figures*
 177. *Tables*
 178. *Figures*
 179. *Tables*
 180. *Figures*
 181. *Tables*
 182. *Figures*
 183. *Tables*
 184. *Figures*
 185. *Tables*
 186. *Figures*
 187. *Tables*
 188. *Figures*
 189. *Tables*
 190. *Figures*
 191. *Tables*
 192. *Figures*
 193. *Tables*
 194. *Figures*
 195. *Tables*
 196. *Figures*
 197. *Tables*
 198. *Figures*
 199. *Tables*
 200. *Figures*
 201. *Tables*
 202. *Figures*
 203. *Tables*
 204. *Figures*
 205. *Tables*
 206. *Figures*
 207. *Tables*
 208. *Figures*
 209. *Tables*
 210. *Figures*
 211. *Tables*
 212. *Figures*
 213. *Tables*
 214. *Figures*
 215. *Tables*
 216. *Figures*
 217. *Tables*
 218. *Figures*
 219. *Tables*
 220. *Figures*
 221. *Tables*
 222. *Figures*
 223. *Tables*
 224. *Figures*
 225. *Tables*
 226. *Figures*
 227. *Tables*
 228. *Figures*
 229. *Tables*
 230. *Figures*
 231. *Tables*
 232. *Figures*
 233. *Tables*
 234. *Figures*
 235. *Tables*
 236. *Figures*
 237. *Tables*
 238. *Figures*
 239. *Tables*
 240. *Figures*
 241. *Tables*
 242. *Figures*
 243. *Tables*
 244. *Figures*
 245. *Tables*
 246. *Figures*
 247. *Tables*
 248. *Figures*
 249. *Tables*
 250. *Figures*
 251. *Tables*
 252. *Figures*
 253. *Tables*
 254. *Figures*
 255. *Tables</*

Listening material

Unit 7

Azhar Listening

It's important not to become addicted to technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

Test Listening

Online shopping is great! Firstly, it saves me time. I don't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Unit 8

Azhar Listening

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in Egypt. They are really delicious. People in Egypt like to eat them for breakfast.

Test Listening

Durian fruits grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside, but soft and yellow on the inside. Durian fruits are very healthy and taste delicious.

Unit 9

Azhar Listening

Eman Dadr is a musician. She is able to play the violin well. She started playing it when she was six.

Test Listening

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st centuries.

Review C

I've bought a nice book. The articles are always interesting to read and they have fantastic photographs, too. I really like the cartoons because they make me laugh!

Unit 10

Azhar Listening

I'm Leila, I have two nice pairs of sandals. I usually wear them in summer. They are my favourite. I bought them last year.

Test Listening

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets.

Unit 11

Azhar Listening

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote controls. This means we can control drones from the ground.

Test Listening

There's a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

So next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.

Unit 12

Azhar Listening

When I was young, I wanted to be a scientist. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist.

Test Listening

I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to talk to me very much. She is always on the internet or talking to people on her phone.

Review D

There is a lot of air pollution where I live. My neighbours never recycle their rubbish. In my view, it is important to recycle. We should take plastic and glass out of bins and recycle it.

Bit  Bit

كتب في اللغة الإنجليزية

New Hello!

ملحق

للمستوى المتقدم

والواجب المنزلي

2025



الصف الثاني الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

2nd PREP
SECOND TERM

دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com





Technology and the future

Lessons 1 . 2



Vocabulary

يترجم	أختبار
دراجة نارية	التلوث
سرعة	مصادر
سماعات الرأس	أولاً
تنبؤ	ثانياً
يصحح / يصب	مع (مؤيد لـ)
ترجمة	ضد (معارض لـ)
يتنبأ	ربما
التكنولوجيا	الأحدث
ودود	الكهرباء
فوائد	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
أكثر برودة	طائرة مروحية
مقالة (في جريدة)	تطبيق
وقت فراغ	يخترع
جناح	تصحيح / تصويب
أعمال تجارية	اختراع
التسوق عبر الإنترنت	بدفع «لأمام»
دراجة نارية طائرة	نصف خصائص دراجة نارية
لديه وقت	
يُخزّر المال	نصف خصائص طائرة مروحية
يملك مالاً	
يقضي وقت	لديه اختيار
ينتظر توصيل (طلب)	يوفر الوقت
يهدر (يُضيّع) المال	يهدر (يضيّع) الوقت
	ينفق مالاً

Prepositions & Verbs

يؤند كهرباء	على دراجة نارية
يبحث على الإنترنت	يصل إلى (بلد)
يصل للمنزل	في خلال دقائق قليلة
تجعلك أكثر دفئاً	يتفق / يختلف مع
يفكر في	على سرعة ..
يذهب للتسوق	في نفس الوقت
يحول الطريق إلى ...	يجتاز الامتحانات
يزداد سخونة / حرارة	يقوم بالتسوق
يرتدى سماعات الرأس	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يرتدى		
يشترى		
يسمع		
يقود (سيارة مثلاً)		
يقضى - ينفق		
يطير		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Manal is watching a film about new inventions.

Nada : What are you watching, Manal?

Manal : ①

Nada : ② ?

Manal : The film is showing a car that runs on electricity.

Nada : ③ ?

Manal : No, I hope it will be sold in Egypt soon.

Nada : Do you think it will be an environment-friendly car?

Manal : ④

Nada : Do you think it will be expensive?

Manal : No. ⑤

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I lost my yesterday, so I couldn't listen to my favourite songs.
a. drone b. headphones c. jacket d. app
2. Your city is crowded. Why don't you get a / an?
a. motorbike b. motor c. engine d. tablet
3. We asked our English teacher to some words into Arabic.
a. believe b. think c. push d. translate
4. The mobile is a very useful..... It helps us communicate.
a. correction b. invention c. translation d. prediction
5. Osama always much money on clothes.
a. stays b. leaves c. spends d. takes
6. We are money because we want to buy a new house.
a. wasting b. saving c. playing d. doing
7. I will live in the same town when I married.
a. get b. getting c. got d. gets
8. What you do when you leave school?
a. did b. does c. are d. will
9. The weather tomorrow warm and sunny.
a. are b. is c. will be d. was
10. If you finish your homework, your teacher will be angry.
a. don't b. didn't c. aren't d. isn't

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. When dad (arrive), we will have lunch.
2. If you don't wear a jacket, you (be) cold.
3. If it (becoming) very hot this weekend, I'll stay at home.
4. Mum (stay) in bed if she feels ill tomorrow.
5. When will uncle Ali(arrives) home?

Lessons 3 . 4



Vocabulary

يشارك / يتشارك	يختفى
خبير	ذراع تشغيل آلة
مسافر عبر الزمن	مدمن على
غريب	عن طريق الخطأ
نموذج مصغر	يستكشف
بدلاً من ذلك	فضيع / سيء جداً
فجأة	يسحب
تغير المناخ	مستحيل
الفضاء	صداع
يرد - رد	ينسقط
موقع على الإنترنت	مضحك
كوكب	يسبح في البحر
ينسخ / نسخة	يذهب / يسافر عبر الزمن
يرتب	يفهم درس
يبقى بالخارج	يعيش على القمر
يستكشف قاع البحر	يملك سيارات طائرة
يحرب تناول الفاكهة	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
ليس لديه أمراض	

Expressions & Prepositions

يعاني من صداع	يُغلق
ياخذراحة	جاهزة للاستخدام
يسحب زراع آلة	يستقل الطريق جنوباً
يصادق - يكون صداقات	على مواقع التواصل
يشغل آلة	جيد في

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

لمدة طويلة	يشعر بالتعب / بالقلق
في الإنترنت	يبدو مثل
قلق على	يلقى القمامة
يأخذ... بعيداً	يشارك صورة
يؤمن بـ	يعطي نصيحة
يظهر/يبرز (الشمس مثلاً)	أحد أشكال التكنولوجيا

Irregular Verbs

Present

Irregular Verbs

Past simple

Past Participle

يبنى / ينشئ		
يكلف		
يرسل		
يؤذى - يؤلم		
يفهم		

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Zeinab is talking to Suzy about technology.

Zeinab : Do you like using technology, Suzy?

Suzy :

Zeinab : What type of technology do you use?

Suzy :

Zeinab : ?

Suzy : This laptop helps me use the internet for my study.

Zeinab : ?

Suzy : Yes. Sometimes the internet is very slow.

Zeinab : Enjoy your time.

Suzy :

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The children and their dad went out to _____ the mountain.
a. damage b. break c. hurt d. explore
- That scientist made a new machine that was able to _____ in time.
a. made b. travel c. turn d. build
- When I use the computer for a long time, I get a _____ and my head hurts.
a. blood b. toothache c. headache d. stomachache
- My kids are _____ to video games.
a. addicted b. attended c. protected d. added
- _____ allow people to talk to each other on the internet.
a. Flying motorbikes b. Helicopters c. Social media d. Solar panels
- You should ask for help if you don't _____ a lesson.
a. understand b. ask c. miss d. save
- If you _____ bored tonight, you should read a book.
a. feels b. feel c. feeling d. felt
- _____ dad is tired, he should have eight hours of sleep.
a. Where b. What c. If d. So
- You shouldn't watch television all day if you _____ free.
a. are b. be c. am d. is
- If you _____ exams, you should start to revise for them.
a. has b. had c. have d. are

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- What should Kamal _____ (done) if he doesn't find his keys?
- Should the boys shout for help if they _____ (had) a problem?
- If you _____ (didn't) meet the manager, you should come tomorrow.
- When mum feels bored with the film, she shouldn't _____ (watched) it.
- If you are studying, we _____ (should) make a noise.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Using technology in a useful way"

Lessons 5 6 & 7



Vocabulary

النقل	كافى
يرسل رسالة نصية	يطلب / يأمر
بإخلاص	ألعاب الفيديو
تحيات	بالخارج
تمارين رياضية	ينلف
مخاطر	حاسة السمع
شاشة	واضح
إنسان آلى	مشاكل سمعية
رأى / وجهه نظر	يُحسن
فكرة	يتمنى / أمنية
بالرغم من ذلك	عجلة
مناظرة / جدال	لقب (اسم العائلة)

يُحصل على قدر نوم كافى
يقضى ساعات في اللعب
يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
يقضى (وقت) أمام شاشات
يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الانترنت
يعانى من مشاكل فى البصر

Expressions & Conjugations

يساب بصداق	يسير على عجالات
يدخل على الانترنت	مرة في الساعة
يطلب ... من على موقع	يبقى بصحة جيدة
تسبب صداق ...	يذهب لقضاء إجازة
السبب الذي من أجله	في وقت متأخر ليلاً
أطفال أعمارهم 6 سنوات	من وجهة نظري
يمنع ... من النوم	ضارب
يتطلع إلى	في رأيي

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يصبح		
يعلم		
يركب [دراجة... الخ]		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali and Mohsen are talking about technology.

Ali : What do you think of technology?

Mohsen : I think it can be both good and bad.

Ali : ① ?

Mohsen : It is good if we use it well. It can help us exercise.

Ali : ② How can technology be bad?

Mohsen : ③

Ali : I agree that the internet can waste time.

Mohsen : ④ ?

Ali : It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV.

Mohsen : ⑤

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Playing games online really wastes my time.

- a. offline b. video c. audio d. screen

2. I went to the market to get some sugar because we didn't have . . . sugar.

- a. little b. too c. enough d. many

3. my point of view, technology is very important.

- a. From b. In c. On d. About

4. I am studying here and you can only play

- a. side b. countryside c. outside d. overseas

5. I always use my mobile to my friend.

- a. damage b. spend c. hide d. text

6. A: I am too tired to cook.

B: Why don't you try food online?

- a. eating b. feeding c. ordering d. making

7. Hussein spent much time videos online.

- a. building b. caring c. breaking d. watching

8. Mum really feels tired, so she should enough sleep.

- a. get b. give c. talk d. buy

9. We studied an interesting lesson about the of the internet.

- a. papers b. plastics c. dangers d. glasses

10. I want to social media, but my mobile is broken.

- a. chop b. check c. change d. choose

Unit 8

You are what you eat

Lessons ① . ②

Vocabulary

رقائق بطاطس مقلية	حلو المذاق
لفيذ .	مكرونه
لديه حساسية لـ	طاقة
وجبة خفيفة	الوجبات السريعة
بيتزا	مكسرات
توابل - بهارات	كثير العصارة
مالح	السمبوسة
فول أخضر	الفلافل
متبل / حار	ممتلئ (شبعان)
لعبة الاسكواش	فريق ألعاب القوى
يتذوق	شائع - محبوب
شيكولاتة	حريص
خضار	محفوظ
بالرغم من ذلك	أو...؟ / أيهما...؟
غسيل الأطباق	معظم
متبقى	بطيخ
عنب	فرن
لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	عطشان
أرز باللبن	مراهق
دهن	لعبة كرة الشبكة
يصف	تحريب
نوع	زيتون
يدعو (لمناسبة)	

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Expressions & Prepositions

يصل المنزل	شكر على
يعطي طاقة	يدعو ... على ...
يمرض	يتناول ... مع ...
يستريح	يتناول ... على الإفطار
يغسل الأطباق	يكون عضو في فريق
في الطريق للمنزل	طعام ذو مذاق جيد
يمارس رياضة الجري	يطهو فلافل (طعمية)

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يختار		
ياكل		
يضع		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

① Complete the following dialogue:

Youssef is asking Murad about his favourite snack.

Youssef : What is your favourite snack, Murad?

Murad : ①

Youssef : Sweet potato! ② ?

Murad : I like it because it's delicious and healthy.

Youssef : ③ ?

Murad : No, I can't cook it. My mother cooks it for me.

Youssef : ④

Murad : That's right, she is very clever.

Youssef : ⑤

Murad : I'm sure your mother can cook it, too. It's easy.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. food contains a lot of fat.
 a. Fast b. Slow c. Quick d. Healthy
2. After I had a big lunch, I was full of
 a. money b. energy c. wood d. cloth
3. is made of flour, baked with tomato, cheese, and vegetables.
 a. Pizza b. Pudding c. Salad d. Butter
4. Mum got some fruits from the market yesterday.
 a. fast b. juicy c. spicy d. hot
5. Spaghetti is a type of
 a. liquids b. meats c. beans d. pasta
6. I don't eat beans because I am to it.
 a. allergic b. spicy c. addicted d. invited
7. There any chicken in this restaurant.
 a. is b. was c. isn't d. don't
8. Fatma bought chocolate from that shop.
 a. any b. a lot of c. many d. a few
9. Add salt to the chips, but not too much.
 a. much b. many c. a few d. a little
10. She didn't cook meat last night.
 a. any b. some c. many d. a lot

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I saw (a little) people at the party yesterday.
2. Could I have (any) juice, please?
3. I would like (a few) spinach, please.
4. She has (a lot) salt in the kitchen.
5. I'd like (a little) sandwiches, please.

Lessons 3 . 4

Vocabulary

يسمع	بروتين
ينذوق	غير معتاد
يلمس	منتجات الألبان
يشم	طازج
يرى	زبد
يصب	عظمة
يسخن	اللسان
يقطع	يقذف (طعام / شراب)
يقلل	يغلي / يسلق
يخفق / يضرب	يضيف
يغسل	البشر
غرفة الطعام	قطعة
مربع	ثلاجة
وصفة طهي	مقطع
لين (طري)	لذيذ
مقللة (طاسة القلي)	شوكة
يسمى	اختبار قصير
حاسة	تعليمات
حساء (شورية)	سلطانية

Expressions & Conjugation

ذو رائحة فظيعة	يقدم ... مع ...
ينام جيدًا	يضيف ... إلى ...
يشعر بالشبع	يُخرج ... من ...
له طعم	في الداخل / الخارج
يبدو غير معتاد	مختلف عن
يحفظ الطعام	يقطع ... إلى
ذو طعم لذيذ	يصب ... في ...
تحت الأرض	يصب ... على ...
لديه عظام قوية	يخفق ... مع ... / باستخدام

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs		
Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يلمو		
يشم		
يحفظ ب		
يخفق / يضرب		

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Sahar and Hanan are talking about rice pudding.

Sahar : Do you like rice pudding, Hanan?

Hanan : ① _____

Sahar : ② ?

Hanan : Yes, I can cook it.

Sahar : ③ ?

Hanan : My mother showed me how to cook it.

Sahar : Is it easy?

Hanan : ④ _____

Sahar : Can you give me the recipe?

Hanan : ⑤ _____

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All of us like eating pizza. It is
a. low b. bad c. delicious d. horrible
2. Milk and butter are dairy
a. shops b. products c. liquids d. screens
3. To have strong, always drink milk.
a. bones b. boats c. poems d. parks
4. Meat, eggs and beans have in them.
a. air b. soil c. sugar d. protein
5. I like to eat three eggs every morning.
a. old b. fresh c. young d. dirty
6. It is for my kids to play in the street. They always play in the nearby park.
a. usual b. local c. unusual d. famous
7. When the omelette is ready, it out of the frying pan.
a. take b. not take c. takes d. taking
8. some olives on top of my pizza. I like them so much.
a. Puts b. Don't put c. Doesn't put d. Put
9. this potato into small pieces.
a. Chop b. Doesn't chop c. Chopped d. Chopping
10. sauce over the pasta. I want it without sauce, please.
a. Pour b. Don't pour c. Pours d. Pouring

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Not touch) the hot frying pan.
2. Ali, (doing) your homework.
3. (Don't wear) gloves when you cook. They are really useful.
4. Don't (to be) late again for work.
5. (Heats) some water now, Hossam.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 , 6 & 7


Vocabulary

جائع	نوم
كعكة/تورطة	بطاطا
فلفل أصفر	نظام غذائي
تمارين	نبات السبانخ
نادي ألعاب القوى	طعام
يضايق/يزعج - متضايق	متعب
ربما	لسوء الحظ
لسبب	يفاجئ
كمية/مقدار	علاوة على ذلك
الرسم بالرصاص/بالفحم	ما نوع...؟
موقف	يملك
خاتمة	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم
يسترخي	الرسم بالألوان/لوحة فنية
متوازن	يختتم (كلامه)
يراجع	زيت الزيتون
	يقدم

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Expressions & Prepositions

يُجرب ..	يقدم في طبق
لديه طاقة	ما رأيك في ... ؟
كما ترى	يعيش على جزيرة
يشعر بالجوع	يسهر لوقت متأخر
لهذا السبب	يتأكد من
يقوم ببعض الرسومات	يرسل رسائل نصية للأصدقاء
يتناول وجبة خفيفة	نوم لثماني ساعات

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يعنى		
يزعج		
يحضر		
ينام		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue: **WB**

Leila is talking to her grandma.

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila?

Leila : ①

Grandma : Why do you want a little?

Leila : ②

Grandma : ③ ?

Leila : Thank you, I like tea.

Grandma : ④ ?

Leila : Yes, please, I only like a little sugar.

Grandma : Here you are, tea and cake!

Leila : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You **should** get enough That can keep you healthy.
 a. job b. illness c. work d. sleep
2. The man was really because he had no food for a day.
 a. anxious b. hungry c. happy d. cheerful
3. A sweet is a vegetable that looks like a potato.
 a. potato b. juice c. milk d. jam
4. Mum always adds yellow to the food she makes.
 a. air b. peppers c. tea d. salt
5. The that consists of rice, vegetables and fish is healthy.
 a. work b. job c. education d. diet
6. It's important to follow a / an diet.
 a. balanced b. upset c. tired d. sweet
7. Omar would like to sleep or **rest** because he is really
 a. active b. tired c. famous d. careful
8. We can depend Ali. He is such a clever man.
 a. on b. at c. of d. at
9. To keep fit, you should eat little of fat.
 a. number b. amount c. situation d. reason
10. Rice is usually in bowls.
 a. served b. revised c. concluded d. relaxed

Test on units 7 & 8



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في ص ١٢٢



1. The speaker loves

- a. cakes b. hawawshi c. meat d. juice

2. Hawawshi is to make.

- a. hard b. natural c. unusual d. easy

3. You put some and vegetables inside the bread.

- a. cheese b. milk c. meat d. pasta

4. You cook it in the

- a. fridge b. oven c. table d. room

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sally is asking Shaimaa about online shopping.

Sally : Do you like online shopping?

Shaimaa : 1

Sally : 2?

Shaimaa : Because it saves time.

Sally : 3?

Shaimaa : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

Sally : What type of things do you usually order?

Shaimaa : 4

Sally : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future?

Shaimaa : 5

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology is everywhere around you. It helps develop **most** of the things we have in our kitchens like washing machines and fridges. Technology is when we take something from the world of science and then make it into something that people use. Technology uses many different ideas. Scientists help to develop technology to keep our food cold when we are not eating it by using fridges. However, all of us like to eat hot food.

In this way, scientists use technology to help all of us with our daily lives. Technology is very useful in our **daily** lives. Scientists invented the telephone which we use to talk to other people when we are not with them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**daily**" means
 a. everyday b. day and night c. every morning d. weekly
2. We can talk to other people by using
 a. fridges b. cookers c. doors d. phones

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. Why do you think technology is very useful?

5. Do you think scientists are great people? Why / Why not?

6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. media help everyone communicate with their friends and relatives.
 a. Solar b. Society c. Telephone d. Social
2. Why don't you try eating chicken in that restaurant?
 a. heavy b. old c. spicy d. colourful
3. There is a lot of in meat, eggs and fish.
 a. sugar b. protein c. sweets d. bone

Test

- 5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- ## Writing

- Your friend's name is Reda and his / her email address is reda77@gmail.com.
- Your name is Sayed(a) and your email address is sayed(a)99@hotmail.com.

[The page contains several horizontal dashed lines, likely representing redacted information or placeholder text.]

Unit 9 Watch, listen and make

Lessons 1 2



عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)

رسم/فنان

قرن (١٠٠ عام)

رسم كاريكاتيري

صورة فوتوغرافية

فكرة

الفن

يعتقد

تمثال منحوت/فن النحت

مسرح

المنطقة الإسلامية

زاهي الألوان/كثير الألوان

قاعة حفلات موسيقية

موسيقي

توصية/ترشيح

عادي/طبيعي

تفضيل

رائها

وجهة نظر/ رأي

تصوير فوتوغرافي

الرسم بالقلم

مفضل

لوحة فنية (لوجه إنسان)

مجاني

أواني فخار

يوصى بـ/يرشح

تمثال

نادي التمثيل

مقال نقدي

قديم/أثري

نهاية العام

برنامج تليفزيوني

لوحة مرسومة

فن الخط

عزف على آلات موسيقية

كتابة نص (سيناريو)

خياطة أزياء (ملابس)

رسم (خلفية لخشبة المسرح)

عمل تجميل (مكياج)

تمثيل في مسرحية

يبحث تماثيل

يصنع أواني فخار

يلتقط صور

يدرس فن الخط

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Expressions & Phrases

يستعد	مهتم بـ
يتحدث إلى	قادر على
يبدو ممثلاً	الأفضل في
على سبيل المثال	يساعد في
يجعلني أشعر بسعادة	مشهور بـ
مظلم إلى حد ما	من وجهة نظري

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يعرض		
يدفع		
يخيط		
يرتدى		
يتعلم		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Menna and Shaza are talking about hobbies.

Menna : What hobby do you do, Shaza?

Shaza : ①

Menna : ②?

Shaza : Yes, I have a modern camera.

Menna : ③?

Shaza : My father bought it for my birthday.

Menna : Do you do any other hobbies?

Shaza : ④

Menna : What is it?

Shaza : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Soha is good at using colours. She beautiful portraits.
a. plays b. paints c. sews d. writes
- I use my camera to take wonderful
a. photographs b. paintings c. drawings d. sculptures
- this weak man able to work?
a. Can b. Are c. Does d. Is
- Does your uncle know how your car?
a. repairs b. to repairing c. to repair d. repair
- A: I can play the piano.
B: I I can play it, too.
a. Call b. Cool c. Cold d. Coal
- I able to write stories, but I like reading them.
a. can't b. don't c. am not d. can
- A famous painted this painting.
a. sculpture b. artist c. script d. cartoon
- I like, so I try to watch as many plays as possible.
a. acting b. painting c. sewing d. swimming
- I take photos with this camera, it's too modern.
a. able to b. can't c. know how d. am
- My children like wearing clothes with pictures on them.
a. carton b. carpet c. care d. cartoon

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- Does your mother know how (sew) clothes for you?
- Fish (can) live outside water.
- (Are) Samir able to make friends on the internet?
- Ziad (can) swim, but he can fish.
- Policemen (am) able to catch robbers.

Lessons 3 4

يمارس	جريدة
كفيف (أعمى)	يبكى
فرقة موسيقية (أوركسترا)	منافس / ند
أصم (أطرش)	رسام
حديثاً - مؤخراً	غريب
معاق	فخور
شئ	صعوبات
آلة التشيللو	إشارة المرور
يعاق (بعض) / عناق	يصيح/ يصرخ
درجات السلم	مهارة
خاص / مميز	يتخيل
شخصية (في رواية)	موسيقار
كرسي متحرك (للمعاقين)	آلة الكمان
يختفي / يختفى	آلة المزمار
آلة الجيتار	آلة البيانو
آلة الترمبون	آلة الناي
يتساءل - يتعجب	آلة البوق
علاقة	حفل موسيقى
ينضم إلى / يلتحق بـ	كلاسيكي
يرد	مراسل إذاعي

Expressions & Prepositions

يكون ملاحظات	يقفز لأعلى
يعانق (يحضن)	في النهاية
يعزف موسيقى	يختبئ خلف
لديه علاقة جيدة	يدخل إلى
لديه صعوبات	يلقى بـ.... أرضاً
يقرأ موسيقى باستخدام الأيدي	على كرسي متحرك
	فخور بـ
يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية	في المواصلات العامة
	يصيح على

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يغادر - يترك		
يجد		
يلقى.... أرضاً		

Homework

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- As a great, his music is played all over the world.
a. mechanic b. engineer c. musician d. teacher
- people can read with their hands in Braille.
a. Blind b. Dumb c. Deaf d. Strange
- The mouse was frightened and from the cat.
a. carried b. hid c. cried d. hugged
- The is a musical instrument.
a. knife b. vase c. fork d. violin

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

5. I _____ where my father will take us for the holiday.
a. wonder b. work c. wander d. wave
6. Many kids _____ their mother when they come back from school.
a. harm b. hit c. hug d. hide
7. The little boy fell over and started to _____.
a. carry b. cry c. try d. teach
8. Deaf people and dumb people are _____ people.
a. interested b. wondered c. printed d. disabled
9. The _____ played an amazing piece of music.
a. orchestra b. picnic c. carriage d. museum
10. This man can't hear me, is he _____?
a. blind b. dumb c. deaf d. long

2 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

to your friend Sameh telling him about your favourite musician.

- Your name is Tamer and your email address is tamer11@yahoo.com

- Your friend's email address is sameh55@gmail.com

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal dashed lines, similar to notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Lessons 5 6



Vocabulary

دعوة (المناسبة)

حقيقي / واقعي

طلب

يدعو (المناسبة)

عرض

يهرب

أرض العجائب

ديناصور

طلاب مدرسة

رئيسي

معلومات

منظر

حدث هام

مقال نقدي

حريق

لعبة تنس الطاولة

ناقذ

يعيد تصيغ / تحوير

تقريباً

نجم (سينما) / ممثل مشهور

نجم (في السماء)

يهبط

مثير

نزهة في الهواء الطلق

يموت

ممثل

أحداث (فيلم / رواية)

يركن سيارة

متنزه / موقف سيارات

فضيع / سيئ جداً

مخيف

وجهة نظر / رأي

فيلم / قصة مغامرات

متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Expressions & Impartitions

يصنع فيلماً	بدلاً من
يقوم بنزلة	في الراديو
يستمتع بوقته	من على قمة
يقدم ملخص	يفكر في
يطفئ حرائق	شبه مظلم
يبدو واقعى جداً	كيف تجري الأمور؟
أراك حينها	يعيش على جزيرة

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يُحضر		
يركب (دراجة / آلة)		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue: **WB**

Emad is asking Tamer about music.

Emad : Hello, Tamer. Can I ask you about music?

Tamer : ①

Emad : ② ?

Tamer : Yes, I can play the guitar.

Emad : ③ ?

Tamer : I think the piano is a wonderful instrument.

Emad : ④

Tamer : Really! I'd love to come to your birthday party.

Emad : Could you bring your guitar with you?

Tamer : ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The policeman caught the robber when he was trying to
 a. invite b. hug c. review d. escape
2. This movie star is famous for acting films.
 a. action b. event c. park d. gold
3. Two million visitors visit this park every year.
 a. thin b. theme c. machine d. review
4. A reviewer wrote a good of this writer's last book.
 a. offer b. picnic c. dream d. review
5. You can't your car in a "No Parking" area.
 a. escape b. hide c. park d. land
6. Look! There are so many bright in the sky.
 a. stars b. suns c. stops d. seats
7. Who should we to the party?
 a. invent b. invite c. discover d. review
8. There is a wonderful film on TV tonight. I recommend it.
 a. patient b. invitation c. metal d. adventure
9. lived on Earth but died out millions of years ago.
 a. Crocodiles b. Dinosaurs c. Whales d. Elephants
10. This company different types of films every year.
 a. does b. comes c. makes d. sees

Unit 10 We are what we wear

Lessons ① ②

Vocabulary

فضفاض / واسع	شفقة
مريح / مستريح	مشابه / متشابه
جميل	شال / وشاح
القطن	جيبية
بلوفر	قميص
بسيط	لطيف
أنيق / مهندم	حذاء
الصوف	ملاعة
حقيبة يد (حريمي)	الزجاج
غير رسمي	الكتان
غالي الثمن	مقلم / مخطط
ثقيل	حذاء برقبة
عقد	الجلد المدبوغ
مادة خام	الذهب
غريب	قرط (حلق)
مجوهرات	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)
جلباب	حذاء رياضي
مناخ	نظارة شمس
تقليدي	ابلاستيك
رخيص	صندل
المعدن	حزام
الملبس	شعبي / محبوب
قليلًا	غير مريح
بشكل مختلف	بنطلون
كهربي	شورت

حشبي	بنطلون جينز
يحمي	مسترخي / مستريح
يرتدي / فستان	نمط / أسلوب
زاهي الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية	حجم / مقاس

Expressions & Prepositions

يبدو أنيقاً	نوع من
مثل	يبحث عن
معظم الوقت	يحمي من
يشبه	يتبادل الأدوار
يشعر بالراحة	بحزام
مصنوع من	يرتدى زي تقليدي
يحتفظ بالدفع / بالبرودة	

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يشترى		
يرتدى		
يصلح		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Hussein is asking Ayman about his new T-shirt.

Hussein : Hello, Ayman! Your T-shirt is very smart.

Ayman : ①

Hussein : ② ?

Ayman : I bought it yesterday.

Hussein : ③ ?

Ayman : It is made of cotton. Do you want to buy one?

Hussein : ④

Ayman : No problem. There are many colours of it.

Hussein : Great! Where is the shop?

Ayman : ⑤

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a/an _____ necklace.

a. short, old, gold

b. old, short, gold

c. gold, old, short

d. short, gold, old

2. This man is wearing big round _____ to protect his eyes.

a. cameras

b. shirts

c. sunglasses

d. galabeyas

3. I couldn't sleep last night because the bed was _____.

a. smart

b. pretty

c. comfortable

d. uncomfortable

4. There was a cheerful, _____ picture on the wall.

a. careful

b. colourful

c. uncomfortable

d. useless

5. They are _____ shoes.

a. strange, big, leather

b. leather, big, strange

c. big, leather, strange

d. big, strange, leather

6. The queen is wearing an expensive gold _____ around her neck.

a. sock

b. earring

c. sandal

d. necklace

7. Amany's handbag is full of many things. It is so _____.

a. heavy

b. casual

c. relaxed

d. warm

8. Hany usually wears _____ shirts with thick lines.

a. wooden

b. striped

c. electric

d. interested

9. Mona usually wears _____ casual clothes.

a. lazy

b. deep

c. smart

d. careless

10. These are the _____ boots in the shop.

a. smartest

b. smart

c. more smart

d. smarter

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Which skirt is _____ (small); the red one or the green one?

2. Fady borrowed my _____ (black, new, linen) trousers.

3. I think my earrings are _____ (heaviest) than yours, Huda.

4. Why don't you buy this _____ (cotton, red, big) scarf, Nada? It's beautiful.

5. I spent a _____ (nicer) weekend in Alexandria.

Lessons 3 . 4



Vocabulary

محل ملابس	يتسوق
مادة كيميائية	التلوث
يستعير / يستلف	زى مدرسى موحد
نبات الخيزران (البامبو)	ينتج
جهاز	محصول
فرد في العائلة	يمتلك
يوم دراسي	عملية إجرائية
شئ فخم / فاخر	يغير / يتغير
مقاس / حجم	الخطاطة
أقارب	صناعة
مصنع	مراقق
مثالي (في أحسن حال)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
مشهور	يسبب
ناعم / لين	تربة زراعية
يحمي	سلة
البيئة	مناسبة خاصة
مستقبل أكثر حماية للبيئة	حفل زفاف
	ملابس رياضية

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Expressions & Prepositions

يزرع محاصيل	بجور النيل
يحمي البيئة	يرد (شيء/ مال)
يسبب تلوث	مثالي لـ
نتيجة لذلك	مشهور بـ
جيد قدر المستطاع	بدلاً من
ترتدى نفس المقاس	مدهش في
يذر مال كثير	اعتاد أن يمتلك
يستخدم ماء أقل	من وقت لآخر
في كل أنحاء العالم	مفيد / غير مفيد لـ
يحافظ على نعومة القطن	لمناسبات خاصة

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يبيع		
يبيع		

Exercises

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Khaled and Nasser are talking about their clothes.

Khaled : Hello, Nasser. What do you think of my new shoes?

Nasser :

Khaled :

?

Nasser : I have three pairs of shoes. Do you have boots?

Khaled :

Nasser :

?

Khaled : Yes, I want to buy two new shirts.

Nasser :

Khaled : OK. Let's go shopping tomorrow.

Nasser : That's a good idea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Cotton clothes are comfortable because they are
a. hard b. rough c. expensive d. soft
- This rich family live in a big house.
a. nature b. luxury c. member d. industry
- Plastic bottles are lighter than glass
a. one b. once c. none d. ones
- I like taking selfies with people.
a. famous b. soft c. polluted d. rough
- boys over there are my brother and my cousin.
a. This b. These c. Those d. That
- The farmer the crop to sell it in the market.
a. picked b. changed c. borrowed d. threw
- Samar returned the book to the library and borrowed another
a. once b. one c. ones d. only
- This player is wearing an expensive of trainers.
a. bear b. ball c. bar d. pair
- Can you get book on that high shelf, I can't reach it.
a. that b. these c. this d. those
- We can wear each other's clothes because we are the same
a. price b. size c. colour d. occasion

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Take(these) juice, it's yours.
- This camera doesn't work. I want another(ones), please.
- Where did you buy (that) shoes? They look wonderful.
- I chose these earrings from so many different (one).
- I'll pick(these) dates over there soon.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Something you have bought from a clothes shop". **WB**

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 5 . 6 & 7

Vocabulary

رائع	رائع في محل
معيد	خزانة ذات ادراج
أداة (يدوية)	زائد / إضافي
زيون	يقيس ملابس
يساعد	سماعات الرأس
جاكيت	مهتم
الجد الأكبر	مالون. ؟
يناسب / يلائم	بشكل متقن
يناقش	إعلان
يرسل رسالة بريد الكتروني	جورب (شراب)
حفلة عيد ميلاد	يتضمن / يشتمل على
فاترينة عرض في محل	حجرة تغيير الملابس

Prepositions

للبيع	كبير بعض الشيء
ملون باللون	يتزوج
يبحث عن	ما نوع..... ؟
يشترى عبر الإنترنت	يناقش السعر
في أعلاه / قمته	يبدو لطيفاً
يحتفظ بالأشياء بداخله	دعني انظر / أبحث
لمزيد من المعلومات	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يطير		
ياخذ		

Homework Exercises on Speaking & Vocabulary

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Mrs Wafaa is at a clothes shop buying a dress.

Assistant : Can I help you?

Mrs Wafaa : Yes, please. ①

Assistant : ② ?

Mrs Wafaa : 48, please.

Assistant : ③ ?

Mrs Wafaa : Black, please.

Assistant : ④

Mrs Wafaa : Where's the changing room, please?

Assistant : It's over there.

Mrs Wafaa : It fits me perfectly. ⑤

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I keep my clothes in that of drawers.

- a. sheet b. chest c. check d. shop

2. I many dresses on at the shop to choose one.

- a. tried b. trained c. fitted d. discussed

3. A: What would you like the T-shirt? B: Green, please.

- a. size b. weight c. colour d. price

4. shop did you buy these trousers at?

- a. Where b. Which c. When d. Who

5. You can use this dictionary. It's very

- a. useless b. careless c. careful d. useful

6. That shop gives its presents for free.

- a. customers b. drawers c. concerts d. clothes

7. If these sandals don't you, you can choose another pair.

- a. hurt b. fit c. hit d. beat

8. Look at this It shows a good handbag for sale.

- a. advert b. tool c. party d. room

9. Customers can try clothes on in that room.

- a. charging b. finishing c. managing d. changing

10. Carpenters always use

- a. pens b. knives c. tools d. brushes

Test on units 9 & 10

A

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في ص ١٢٢ 

1. Ancient Egyptians' were simple.

- a. houses b. clothes c. shoes d. children

2. They loved to wear metal jewellery.

- a. light b. cheap c. heavy d. expensive

3. They wore expensive leather

- a. shoes b. handbags c. earrings d. sandals

4. Egyptians wore beautiful gold

- a. necklaces b. clothes c. shoes d. sandals

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mr Ashraf is buying a new pair of jeans.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you?

Mr Ashraf : 1

Shopkeeper : We have a nice collection of jeans. Look at those pairs over there.

Mr Ashraf : 2?

Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.

Mr Ashraf : 3 Do you have bigger ones?

Shopkeeper : 4

Mr Ashraf : They are great. 5?

Shopkeeper : 300 pounds.

Mr Ashraf : Here is the money.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Hello, my name is Hazem. I am a student in Paris. The university I go to is very near the River Seine which passes through Paris. I love this city so much. Millions of tourists come to Paris every year because it is famous for its beautiful sites. There are buildings, bridges and art museums here. Many of them are five hundred years old or more. French food is delicious and it is famous all over the world: maybe you would like some snails! The weather in Paris is fine. In winter, it is sometimes cold and wet, but in summer it is always warm. Something I don't like about Paris is the metro.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. French food is delicious and you can try to eat there.

a. museums

b. bridges

c. snails

d. rivers

2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the

a. metro

b. food

c. weather

d. world

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the passage about?

4. Why do tourists come to Paris every year?

5. What do you think of Paris?

6. How many tourists visit Paris every year?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some artists like to paint the in the desert.

a. script

b. scenery

c. scene

d. tool

2. are not happy with the high prices in that shop.

a. Customers

b. Customs

c. Costumes

d. Concerts

3. The little girl when the dog frightened her.

a. laughed

b. hugged

c. cried

d. felt

4. A/An presents an opinion of a film, book or a play.

a. review

b. event

c. scenery

d. invitation

Test

5. We built a high wall around the farm to it.
a. connect b. protect c. pick d. prefer
6. Archaeologists found some in the old site.
a. pottery b. scenery c. website d. show
7. We use a computer to design the building.
a. able to b. can c. know how d. are able
8. One of cars is mine.
a. these b. that c. this d. they

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. (Does) you know how to buy things online?
2. I wore this shirt yesterday. Today, I'll wear another (ones).
3. Mustafa (is) able to speak French, but he is able to speak English.
4. Mr Rady bought (this) house over there last week.
5. I can't find my (green, cotton, new) shirt.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINTY (90) words:

"A review of a film you have watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 11 The future of our planet

Lessons ① · ②

Vocabulary

سطح المنزل

قمامة

الحياة البرية

المركبات في حركة المرور/ المرور

تلوث الهواء

حديقة فوق السطح

منشور على الانترنت

جفاف

ممر

كوكب

سباق

يُصلح

ضوء الشمس

يتلف/ يدمر

تغير المناخ

إضافي/ زائد

حل

يفيض/ فيضان

خط النهاية

غسالة

أحداث

صيد

سيارة تعمل بالكهرباء

توربينات الرياح

زجاجات بلاستيكية

ينقذ / يوفر

يعيد استخدام

يقلل

يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)

يركب/ يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»

يزرع

بيئي

تقليدو

يذوب/ ينصهر

معلق التلفاز

يلتقط

موسيقى

سكان محليون

طبيعي

البيئة

تقليد

الطبيعة

معدات

نية

مركبة/ عربة

يحسن/ يطور

يقترّب من

حيوانات صحراوية

ألواح الطاقة الشمسية

رحلة شاقة على الأقدام

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Verbs & Prepositions

يتخلص من	ينفذ.... من
تعالى بسرعة	خطير على
يذهب للنوم	عبر الصحراء
يحافظ على سلامة	يكسب مالاً
يزداد سوءاً	بنفسك / بمفردك
يلحق بالاتوبيس	يمنح..... من
المنبه لم يرن	في عطلة نهاية الاسبوع
في وقت لاحق هذا العام	يذهب في إجازته
يقوم برحلة على الأقدام	يتحول إلى

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يلحق بـ / يمسك		
يفوز		
يرن		

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Adel and Nour are talking about environmental problems.

Adel : Hello, Nour. The water in the river is very dirty.

Nour : Yes. ①

Adel : How can we stop people from throwing rubbish into it?

Nour : ②

Adel : Do you think they will stop if they are punished?

Nour : ③

Adel : ④?

Nour : People should use electric cars to stop air pollution.

Adel : ⑤?

Nour : I agree with you, planting trees is a good idea.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Stopping smoking can lung diseases.
a. reduce b. recycle c. gain d. repair
- Solar change the sun's light into electricity.
a. canals b. turbines c. panels d. lives
- Cars in the desert can cause problems. WB
a. environmental b. environment c. music d. musical
- I'm going to my maths homework.
a. doing b. do c. did d. done
- Recycle your plastic products to reduce pollution and save
a. problems b. music c. sports d. wildlife
- The teacher is going to angry when he knows about the result. SB
a. be b. is c. does d. has
- Lamia's family are learning to speak Japanese. They to Japan next month. WB
a. are going to travel b. travelling c. travelled d. travel
- We called someone to our TV. There is a problem with the sound system.
a. give b. make c. do d. repair
- When we materials, we can help the environment, earn money and find jobs for many people.
a. reread b. repaint c. recycle d. reprint
- Can you help me this app on my mobile?
a. install b. pick c. melt d. plant

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- Your teacher (ask) you a few questions when he arrives.
- Let's run because the bus (leave) in ten minutes. WB
- A: Why do you want to sell your flat?
B: Because I (move) to the countryside.
- They (come) for a meal tomorrow.
- I (play) football tonight with my friends.

Lessons 3 . 4

Vocabulary

اختراع	غابة استوائية
مناسب	طاقة الرياح
شجرة المانجروف	يروى
يتحكم فى	محيط
حماية	موقع
طائرة بدون طيار	مواد كيميائية
يقرض/يسلف	بكتيريا
نظام	الشعاب المرجانية
متطوع	رحلات الغطس
يحل	أراضى زراعية
تطبيق ذكى	كائنات بحرية
قبة للوقاية من الشمس	منتصف النهار
يفلتر / يصفى	استمارة
فصل من فصول السنة	مياه جوفية
بوابة	قناة مائية
بذور	يلقى / يسقط
غابة	يحدد
حقيبة سفر	يزيل
يعود	يقدم
يقتل	يصور فيلم / فيديو
صديق للبيئة	
سلة إعادة تدوير	جهاز تحكم عن بعد

Expressions & Prepositions

يُكمل استمارة _____	يغادر لـ _____
يشارك في _____	خلال ساعتان _____
يسبب التلوث _____	طبقاً لـ _____
يحل مشكلات _____	بعد عشرة أيام _____
يوصل الطلبات _____	متصل بـ _____
يحدث الكثير من الضوضاء _____	من... يستخرج _____
يُسقط البذور على _____	يعتلى بـ _____
يقدم حلول لـ _____	يطير فوق مكان _____
يذهب في رحلة _____	مناسب لـ _____
يجعل الماء آمناً للاستخدام _____	يعمل في مشروع _____

Conjugation of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يقرض / يسلف _____
يجرح / يؤذى _____
يعنى / يقصد _____

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magy and Leila are talking about future arrangements.

Magy : Hi Leila.

Leila : Hi Magy. ① _____ ?

Magy : Tomorrow, I'm going on a boat trip with my family.

② _____ ?

Leila : I'm going to visit some relatives with my family.

Magy : Are you travelling to visit them?

Leila : ③ _____

Magy : What arrangements have you made?

Leila : ④ _____

Magy : I hope you will enjoy your time there.

Leila : ⑤ _____

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is difficult about Japanese writing _____?
a. sound b. system c. stars d. store
2. These toys are _____ for girls.
a. suitcase b. suit c. sweet d. suitable
3. You must wear gloves before using these _____.
a. chemicals b. sports c. news d. ideas
4. My friends and I are going _____ a trip to Al Azhar Park tomorrow.
a. in b. on c. from d. by
5. They are _____ part in a nature conservation project in a forest. **SB**
a. take b. took c. takes d. taking
6. Mona _____ photos at the moment.
a. takes b. is taking c. took d. taking
7. I _____ to Paris tomorrow. I've already booked the tickets.
a. am travelling b. travel c. was travelling d. travelled
8. Firefighters are trying to _____ the fire.
a. increase b. fire c. add d. control
9. I use a _____ to switch the TV on and off.
a. remote control b. spoon c. washing machine d. plastic bottle
10. I'm taking part in a _____ project to save desert animals.
a. conversation b. conservation c. communication d. connection
11. Can you _____ me your pen as mine isn't working?
a. borrow b. break c. buy d. lend
12. There are four _____ in a year.
a. shows b. reasons c. seasons d. presents
13. Farmers use this canal to _____ their farms.
a. control b. irrigate c. present d. pollute

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"How to solve environmental problems" **WB**

Lessons 5 • 6



Vocabulary

غروب الشمس	القفز بالحبال
بلح طازج	مشاهدة النجوم
شخص مبتدئ	شاعر بالملل
أطلال معبد	مشقة (فوطة)
نشاط	درجة حرارة
مدهش	يفوته / يفترق
الغوص	يخمن
التجديف	مرعب / محيف
ركوب الحيل	خائف
التزلج على الرمال	بدلاً من ..
غير مشغول - حر / مجاني	في الواقع ..
يغطس باستخدام أنبوب تحت الماء	تجاه
	نادي الكتاب
تسلق الصخور	صيد السمك
مشاهدة / مراقبة الطيور	التجول في الصحراء
	التحليق بالمنطاد

Expressions & Prepositions

يتبادل الأدوار	في القارب
تعطى رايك	يساعد في
يشعر بالبرد والملل	اطيب الاماني
يذهب في نزهة	اخر شيء
يذهب لتسلق الصخور	يبقى / يقيم مع
يقضى وقت ممتع	يقرر
تبدو مثيرة / شيقا	على الإفطار
يبدو مخيف بعض الشيء	يجلس بالقرب من الماء
يمكن ان تكون ممتعة	

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يستيقظ _____

يجلس _____

يتعلم _____

Homework

Exercises on Speaking & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar is talking to Tarek about going to the desert.

Omar : Hi, Tarek. What about going to the desert tomorrow?

Tarek : ?

Omar : We can do many activities.

Tarek : What activities can we do in the desert?

Omar :

Tarek : But rock climbing is very dangerous.

Omar : No.

Tarek : Really! ?

Omar : We can also go sandboarding.

Tarek :

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We a picnic in the park last weekend.

- ☐ a. did ☒ b. gave ☐ c. were ☒ d. had

2. During the week, my sister and I take to set the table before meals.

- ☐ a. trains ☒ b. turns ☐ c. directions ☒ d. trainers

3. I'm looking forward to the Egyptian Museum.

- ☐ a. visit ☒ b. visited ☐ c. visiting ☒ d. visits

4. Maged wants to try bungee

- ☐ a. jumping ☒ b. riding ☐ c. climbing ☒ d. fishing

- 3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Lessons 1, 2



اختبار القيادة	عمل الأشياء
يلخص	يوصل
يتبع	يفسر / يوضح
رسم توضيحي / رسم بياني	القراءة
ينجز / يحقق	الاستماع
تجربة عملية	يُصلح
معمل تحاليل	يفشل / يرسب
غير منظم	ينجح / يجتاز
يمثل	يقرر
عرض تليفزيوني	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)
اتجاهات	غالباً / في الأغلب
قاموس	يسجل ملاحظات
نتيجة	مُحبط
مدير	فخور
الكتابة	ملخص
رؤية الأشياء	نشرة صوتية (إذاعية)

Expressions & Prepositions

يكتشف _____	يفسر / يشرح ... لـ _____
يستنتج _____	يتناقش مع _____
يتكلم كثيراً _____	بطرق مختلفة _____
يتعلم كيف _____	يقطع _____
يشعر بالاحباط _____	يتعلم بواسطة _____

Conjugations of

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يختار _____	_____	_____
يؤلف _____	_____	_____
يتجهى _____	_____	_____
يطير / يسافر جواً _____	_____	_____

Homework

Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Language

1 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdy is talking about his favourite subjects.

Hazem : What are your favourite subjects, Magdy?

Magdy : ① _____

Hazem : Why do you like history?

Magdy : ② _____

Hazem : ③ _____ ?

Magdy : Because English helps me talk to tourists when I go to the Pyramids.

Hazem : Why do you like maths?

Magdy : ④ _____

Hazem : ⑤ _____ ?

Magdy : No, I don't like science.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He was an interesting story.
a speaking b listening c. cooking d. reading
2. When Tamer failed the exam, his parents were
a disappointed b interested c delighted d. excited
3. The dessert consists of cake and chocolate.
a slowly b. sadly c. mostly d. quietly
4. Leila is a quick Her English is getting better all the time.
a learn b learns c. learning d. learner
5. A : Did you all your exams?
B : Yes, this made me happy.
a fail b. pass c. succeed d. fall
6. A: What these days? B: An adventure story.
a. you are reading b. are you reading
c you read d. you did read
7. How much will it cost to the TV?
a. destroy b. repeat c. repair d. reread
8. I think it hard to pass this difficult exam.
a going to be b will be c. is being d. has been
9. The teacher the lesson to the class clearly.
a trained b gained c. decided d. explained
10. I in the street when it started to rain.
a was walking b am walking c. will walk d. walk

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Osama is running fast. He(fall).
2. Mona usually(walk) to school, but today she came by bus.
3. In the future, I think we (have) more lessons online.
4. Look outside! It(rain) at the moment.

Lessons (3) (4)



وطن	خائف / مرعوب
ينتظر	جميل / فاتن
مجتمع	ملعب / حقل
يعتقد / يصدق	اقتراح
يقلد / ينسخ	جنوب غرب
اتصال / تواصل	صوت [شئ]
استاذ جامعي	متعدد اللغات
يتواصل	لغة الجسد
اختلاف	خبير
يفتقد / يفوته	قومي / محلي
ساطع / لامع / ذكي	لهجة
جاد / خطير	ميزة
منطوقة / متحدث بها (لغة)	هوية
بشكل طبيعي	يصل / يربط
صوت رقيق	اللمس / يلمس
عالمي / دولي	تواصل بصري (بالنظر)
صوت (بشري)	تعبيرات الوجه

Part 1 Dictation & Homework Exercises

التمرين الأول & التمرين الثاني

محيط من	يجمع
يحدث مكان	حريص بشأن
يذهب بعيداً	مطأطأ الرأس
مختلف عن	لديه مميزات
عند الباب الأمامي	هذا صحيح
في مزرعة	يحدث ضجيج
يقضى وقت مع	يقلد الأصوات
يتصل بـ/يربط بـ	اللغة الرسمية في البلد
على الانترنت	يتواصل بصرياً «بالنظر»
يتواصل مع	يشعر بشيء مختلف (مميز)
	من وجهة نظري

التمرين الثالث

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

يغادر		
يتحدث		
يقضى وقت - يصرف مال		

التمرين الرابع

Exercises on

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I understand from her that she is very excited.

- a. body language b. body weight c. body building d. body clock

2. His facial showed me how he felt.

- a. revision b. expression c. occasion d. decision

3. His strength gave him a big to win the competition.

- a. mistake b. lose c. disadvantage d. advantage

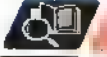
4. I knew he was lying from his eye with me.

- a. connect b. conduct c. contact d. continue

- 2** Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on:

[illegible]

Lessons 5 6



الهجاء	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني
علامات الترقيم	بطاقات تعليمية مصورة
تعليقات	سياق الكلام
مُنظَّم	يدير / ينظم
أثاث	أعمل بمفردك
مفردات لغوية	خذ فترة راحة
خطة دراسية	نم جيداً
موضوع	النطق
مقال اختاري	جدول مواعيد
مراجع	متطوع
بختبر/اختبار	يدرك
معنى سلبي	يدجن / دخان
يطور / يحسن	كتاب مدرسي
لقب / عنوان (كتاب أو فيلم)	لكنة
جنسية	نظم وقتك
ثنائي اللغة	مدرسة صيفية
استمارة / طلب تقديم	
بيان شخصي	كن منظماً
حقيقة شائعة	دورات تدريبية صيفية



يبدو ممتع	يستمتع
....أفضل طريقة لـ	في نفس الوقت
يسير ماراً بـ	من جميع أنحاء العالم
يعمل جدول للاستفكار	يمارس رياضة/أنشطة

يتحسن	الأفضل لـ
يأتي من (بلده)	جيد في
يبدو متطابق / متماثل	منظم حسب الموضوع
برامج تلفزيونية لتعلم الإنجليزية	يستمتع لـ

Irregular Verbs

Irregular Verbs

Present

Past simple

Past Participle

ينتهي		
يكسر		
يأتي		

Homework

Exercises on

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- A plan is a set of ideas that help you reach a goal.
a. organised b. disconnected c. disorganised d. disappointed
- The two towns are by a railway.
a. disorganised b. connected c. contacted d. called
- Do you find it hard to study exams?
a. from b. above c. of d. for
- The organisation wants to teach blind girls.
a. volunteers b. opposites c. accents d. flashcards
- Our country always its relations with other countries.
a. smokes b. proves c. improves d. teaches
- To be successful, you should know how to your time.
a. manage b. damage c. test d. waste
- Try to breaks in order not to be tired.
a. give b. make c. take d. come
- work usually doesn't lead to success.
a. Organised b. Connected c. Developed d. Disorganised
- Don't try to too many words at the same time: find how many words are best for you.
a. remind b. remember c. forget d. lose

Test on units 11 & 12



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في ص ١٢٢

1. We should keep our environment

- a. clean b. polluted c. dirty d. cloudy

2. The main problems are pollution and climate change.

- a. water b. sea c. air d. sky

3. are good for the environment.

- a. Problems b. Pollution c. Rubbish d. Trees

4. Trees help air pollution.

- a. have b. reduce c. rain d. keep



Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mariam and Lara are going rock climbing.

Mariam : What are you going to do at the weekend?

Lara : ①

Mariam : ②?

Lara : No. It's really exciting.

Mariam : ③?

Lara : With pleasure.

Mariam : When are we going to meet?

Lara : ④

Mariam : 8 a.m. is better for me.

Lara : OK. ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Experts believe that there are more than 2100 languages spoken in Africa. Many African people speak three languages: their dialect, the national language and another European language such as English, French or Portuguese that they learn at school.

This means they are multilingual! People who speak different languages have lots of advantages. If you speak more than one language, you can communicate with people from different countries and you can get a good job. When you are multilingual, you are able to travel to many countries. It will be easy to live or work there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined words "lots of" mean
 a. few b. many c. less d. little
- Many people in Africa speak languages.
 a. one b. two c. three d. four

B. Answer the following questions:

- What's the main idea of the passage?

- How is speaking more than one language useful?

- Why do you think people in Africa are multilingual?

- What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Many cleaning products contain that can be dangerous.
 a. camels b. chemicals c. musical d. phones
- They a new phone line in the apartment.
 a. picked b. planted c. installed d. recycled

Test

3. There's a lot of air from the traffic in our city.
 a. nation b. population c. option d. pollution
4. He up some flowers and gave them to his mum.
 a. picked b. backed c. blocked d. booked
5. The environment is getting worse because of climate
 a. phone b. school c. traffic d. change
6. Salma uses her to text her friends and to send emails.
 a. wildlife b. rubbish c. bottles d. mobile phone
7. Muhammad used to football when he was young.
 a. playing b. played c. play d. plays
8. I'm going to a project on the environment.
 a. do b. done c. did d. doing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ola (go) to the library every day.
2. I didn't (used understand) English, but now I speak it well.
3. Sara (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.
4. Look outside! It (rain) at the moment.
5. Ramy (travel) tomorrow. He booked the ticket.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINTY (90) words:

"Your study plans"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Units 7, 8 & 9

Unit 7



Vocabulary

headphones	سماعات الرأس (جمع دائمًا)	speed	سرعة
motorbike	دراجة نارية (موتوسيكل)	electricity	الكهرباء
solar panels	أنواع الطاقة الشمسية	app (application)	تطبيق (على الهاتف أو الكمبيوتر)
helicopter	طائرة مروحية (هليكوبتر)	horrible	فظيع / سيء جدًا
addicted to	مدمن على (معتاد على)	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ	video games	ألعاب الفيديو
headache	صداع	explore (d)	يستكشف
lever	ذراع تشغيل آلة	pull (ed)	يسحب
impossible	مستحيل	disappear (ed)	يختفي
enough	كافي	order (ed)	يطلب / يأمر
outside	بالخارج		

Useful Phrases

have money	يملك مالاً	spend money	ينفق مالاً
have a choice	لديه اختيار	spend time	يقضي وقت
have time	لديه وقت	waste money	يهدر (يضيع) المال
save money	يُخّذ المال	waste time	يهدر (يضيع) الوقت
save time	يوفر الوقت	wait for a delivery	ينتظر توصيل (طلب)
stay outside	يبقى بالخارج	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
try eating fruit	يجرب تناول الفاكهة	have flying cars	يملك سيارات طائرة
understand a lesson	يفهم درس	have no illnesses	ليس لديه أمراض
travel through time	يسافر عبر الزمن	spend (time) on screens	يقضي (وقت) أمام شاشات
watch videos online	يشاهد فيديوهات عبر الإنترنت	spend hours playing	يقضي ساعات في اللعب
check social media	يتفحص وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر
explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر		

Part 2- Final Revision

correct (ed)
invent (ed)
predict (ed)
translate (d)

يصحح - يصبو correction
يخترع invention
يتنبأ prediction
يترجم translation

تصحیح - تصویب
إختراع
تنبؤ
ترجمة



Language

1- will ('ll) / will not (won't) for future predictions

يتكون زمن المستقبل البسيط كالاتي :

• نستخدم (will / won't) للتنبؤ بشيء ما في المستقبل كالاتي :

subject	will = 'll	سوف	Inf.
فاعل (اسم / ضمير)	will not = won't	سوف لا	مصدر الفعل

Ex. Technology will help us in the future.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

• نستخدم الكلمات الآتية للتعبير عن المستقبل :

next (week - month - year)	tomorrow	غداً
(الأسبوع - الشهر - العام) القادم	in the future	في المستقبل
one day	soon	قريباً
	يوماً ما	

Question السؤال

...مصدر الفعل. Inf. + فاعل + Will (كلمة استفهام)

Ex. Will our life change in the future?

Yes, it will. / No, it won't.

2- (If / When) for future predictions and giving advice

• نستخدم لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل كما يلي :

If / When	→	مضارع بسيط	→	will + inf.
-----------	---	------------	---	-------------

Ex. If I find a good jacket online, I will buy it.

• يستخدم الأسلوب التالي لتقديم النصيحة :

If / When	→	مضارع بسيط	→	should / shouldn't + inf.
-----------	---	------------	---	---------------------------

Ex. If you have a problem, you should tell me about it.

Speaking

1 Talking about new inventions

الحديث عن الاختراعات الحديثة

- نسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فنقول:

A: What invention do you hope we will see in the future?

B: I hope..... will be invented soon.

A: Do you agree that..... will / won't be very useful in Egypt?

B: I agree that will / won't be useful in Egypt!

2 Making predictions in the future

عمل تنبؤات في المستقبل

- نسأل ونجيب عن ما نأمله في المستقبل بخصوص الاختراعات الجديدة فلنقول:

- يمكن عمل تنبؤات مستقبلية باستخدام **If + present simple → will + inf** كالآتي:- If I **help** my mother at the weekend, she **will have** more free time.

3 Talking about technology

التحدث عن التكنولوجيا

- للسؤال والإجابة عن أنواع التكنولوجيا التي نستخدمها نقول:

A: What types of technology do you use every day?

B: I think I am addicted to.....

A: What do you use them for?

B: I spend hours watching / playing.....

A: Do you have any problems with technology?

B: I think I'm addicted to my phone!

- I spent lots of money in an online game by mistake.

4 Giving positive opinions

إعطاء آراء إيجابية

- لإعطاء آراء إيجابية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

•is a good idea..

• If you use ... well, it should help you + Inf

• If you don't become addicted to ..., you will be fine..

5 Giving negative opinions

إعطاء آراء سلبية

- لإعطاء آراء سلبية بخصوص شيء نستخدمه:

• It isn't a good idea to + inf.

• From my point of view,can + inf.

• In my opinion,..... is / can be bad for.....

Part 2- Final Revision

Unit 8



Vocabulary

full	ممتلئ (شبعان)	hungry	جائع	sleep	غير معتاد
snack	وجبة خفيفة		نوم	butter	زبد
fast food	الوجبات السريعة	sweet potato	بطاطا	sense	حاسة
dairy products	منتجات الألبان	cake	كعكة/تورتة	yellow pepper	فلفل أصفر
bone	عظمة	allergic to	لديه حساسية لـ	spinach	نبات السبانخ
protein	بروتين	energy	طاقة	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
exercise	تمرين	fresh	طازج		
	طعام	tired	متعب		

Food and Snacks

falafel	الفلافل	rojak	الروجاك (وجبة فواكة شعبية بماليزيا)
fava beans	فول أخضر	sfenj	السفنج (علاوة حلوة شعبية بالمغرب)
chicken	لحم الدجاج / دجاجة	hawawshi	حواوشي (أكلة مصرية)
pizza	بيتزا	samosa	السمبوسة (وجبة حارة شعبية بالهند)
nuts	مكسرات	chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية
pasta	مكرونة	olives	زيتون
spices	توابل - بهارات	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
watermelon	بطيخ	chocolate	شيكولاته
grapes	عنب	vegetable	خضار
delicious	لذيذ	spicy	متبل (كثير التوابل) / حار
juicy	كثير العصارة	sweet	حلو المذاق
salty	مالح	popular	شائع - محبوب

Verbs for senses & Organs

Verb	Organ	Verb	Organ
hear	يسمع	ear	الأذن
see	يرى	eye	العين
touch (ed)	يلمس	hand	اليدين
		taste (d)	يتذوق
		smell	يشم
		tongue	اللسان
		nose	الأنف

Cooking verbs & nouns

beat	يخفق / يضرب	(eggs - butter - milk)
chop (ped)	يقطع	(meat - vegetables - tomatoes)
fry (ied)	يقلّي	(eggs - chicken)

pour (ed)	يصب	(water - tea - juice)
heat (ed)	يسخن	(beans - soup - oil - butter)
wash (ed)	يغسل	(beans - vegetables)
serve (d)	يقدم «طعام/ شراب»	(food - lunch)
boil (ed)	يغلي/ يسلق	(water - eggs)
add (ed)	يضيف	(salt - sugar)

Special food

fried chicken	دجاج مقلي	dry fish	سمك مجفف
omelette	لومليت (أكلة تحتوي على البيض وإضافات)	century eggs	بيض القرن (أكلة صينية)
chamorado	الشامبرادو (أرز بالشيكولاته)	foul mudammas	فول مدمس
tuyo	تايو (سمك مملح صغير)	durian fruit	فاكهة الدوريان



Language

1- Countable & Uncountable nouns

Countable nouns أسماء تعد

١ - أسماء مفردة يسبقها (a / an)

a pen - a door - a unit

an umbrella - an apple - an hour

٢ - أسماء جمع كالتالي:

a pen → pens

a book → books

a dish → dishes

a watch → watches

a bus → buses

a box → boxes

a tomato → tomatoes

Uncountable nouns أسماء لا تعد

- تأتي دائماً مفردة ولا يسبقها (a/an) وتأخذ فعل مفرد.

rice - meat - sugar - juice - bread -

water - cheese - milk

English - rubber - love

information - news - rain - air

Part 2- Final Revision

2- some & any

• نستخدم (some) في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We saw **some friends** on our way home.

Ex. Dad always puts **some salt** on his food.

• نستخدم (some) في السؤال للعرض أو الطلب:

Ex. Would you like **some oranges / pasta**?

Ex. Can I have **some beans / milk**?

• نستخدم (any) في الجملة الخبرية المنفية وفي السؤال مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) والاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We don't buy **any books** from that shop.

Ex. Is there **any water** in the fridge?

3- a lot of / a little / a few

• نستخدم (a lot of) غالبًا في الجملة المثبتة مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع) ومع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

Ex. We have **a lot of snacks**.

Ex. They eat **a lot of rice and pasta**.

Ex. I eat **a few oranges**.

• نستخدم (a few) مع الاسم الذي يعد (الجمع):

Ex. They have **a little milk**.

• نستخدم (a little) مع الاسم الذي لا يعد:

4- like / would like

• يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضل:

Ex. They **like** coffee but they **don't like** tea.

• نستخدم (would like) لتقديم العروض ولطلب الأشياء:

Ex. What **would you like** for dinner?

Ex. I'd like (to have) **some meat**, please.

5- Imperative صيغة الأمر

• نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء الأوامر والتعليمات.

Chop the cucumbers!

Don't chop them all!

→ باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل. inf.

→ Always + inf. + باقي الجملة

→ Don't + inf. باقي الجملة

→ Never + inf. + باقي الجملة

Ex. **Chop** the cucumbers! **Don't chop** them all!

Speaking

1 Talking about your favourite food

الحديث عن طعامك المفضل

Question	Answer
A: What's your favourite juicy fruit?	B: is my favourite juicy fruit.
A: Which is your favourite snack?	B: is my favourite snack.
A: Is your favourite snack juicy, spicy or sweet?	B: My favourite snack is
A: Is it healthy or unhealthy?	B: It is healthy / unhealthy.
A: Has it got any sugar or salt in it?	B: Yes, it has. - No, it hasn't.

2 Asking and answering about what you like and dislike

السؤال عما تحب وما لا تحب

Question	Answer
A: What would you like for breakfast?	B: I'd like some beans, please.
A: Would you like some tea?	B: Yes, please. or No, thank you.

3 Offering, accepting and refusing food politely

تقديم الطعام، القبول والرفض بأدب
- لعرض الطعام على شخص نسأل:

• Do you like? / • Would you like ...?

Accepting	Refusing
- Yes, please.	- Thank you, but I'm really full.
- Thank you. I like	- No, I don't / wouldn't. I prefer.....
- Yes, please, just a few / a little.	- No, thank you.
	- Thank you, but I really couldn't.

4 Giving opinion about food

إبداء الرأي في الطعام

- لإبداء الرأي في الطعام، يقول:

• I think that tastes + (صفة)

• In my opinion, smells + (صفة)

Part 2- Final Revision

5) Giving advice (about being healthy)

إسداء النصح (بشأن التمتع بصحة جيدة)

- لإسداء النصح نستخدم العبارات / الأسئلة الآتية:

• It's a good idea that you

• It's a good idea to + inf

• How about + V-ing

• Why don't you try + V-ing?

• You could + inf

Unit 9



Glossary

show عرض (مسرحي مثلاً)	blind كفيف (أعمى)	adventure film / story فيلم / قصة مغامرات
cool رائع	deaf أصم (أطرش)	think (thought) يعتقد
cartoon رسم كاريكاتيري / رسوم متحركة	disabled معاق (من ذوي الهمم)	hide (hid / hidden) يخفي / يختفي
photograph صورة فوتوغرافية	theme park متنزه ترفيهي (مدينة ملاهي)	recommend (ed) يوصي بـ / يرشح
photography تصوير فوتوغرافي	action أحداث (فيلم / رواية)	wonder (ed) يتساءل - يتعجب
drawing الرسم بالفلم	review مقال نقدي	cry (ied) يبكي
portrait لوحة فنية (الوجه إنسان)	play مسرحية	hug (ged) (n) يعانق (يحضّ) / عناق
pottery أواني فخار	century قرن (١٠٠ عام)	invite (d) يدعو (المناسبة)
sculpture تمثال منحوت / فن النحت	point of view وجهة نظر / رأي	escape (d) يهرب
orchestra فرقة موسيقية / (أوركسترا)	art الفن	
musician موسيقار	artist رسام / فنان	
free مجاني / حر	favourite مفضل	
concert حفل موسيقي	idea فكرة	

Activities

painting scenery رسم «خلفية لخشبة المسرح»	sewing costumes خياطة أزياء (ملابس)
playing instruments عزف على آلات موسيقية	doing make-up عمل تجميل (مكياج)
writing a script كتابة نص (سيناريو)	acting in a play تمثيل في مسرحية
make sculptures بنحت تماثيل	make pottery يصنع أواني فخار
take photos يلتقط صور	do calligraphy يدرس فن الخط

Musical instruments

violin
piano
flute
clarinet

آلة الكمان
آلة البيانو
آلة الناي
آلة المزمار

guitar
trumpet
cello
trombone

آلة الجيتار
آلة البوق
آلة التشيللو
آلة الترمبون



Language

Ability

القدرة

Can

Ex. I can play music.

am
is
are } able to

Ex. The boys are able to act.

**know(s)
how to**

Ex. Amal knows how to sew clothes.

Negative

Can't

Ex. I can't swim.

am
is + not
are } able to

Ex. The girls aren't able to drive cars.

**don't know how to
doesn't know how to**

Ex. Ola doesn't know how to write scripts.

Question

?

Can

+ فاعل + inf...?

Ex. Can you ride a bike?

Am / Is / Are

+ فاعل + able to + inf..?

Ex. Are the girls able to act?

Does \ Do

+ فاعل + know how to + inf..?

Ex. Does Ola know how to paint scenery?

Part 2- Final Revision

Speaking

1 Asking about and answering about ability

السؤال الإجابة عن القدرة

• نسأل عن القدرة ونجيب باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية:

A: Can you + inf.?

B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

A: Do you know how to + inf.?

B: Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

A: Are you able to + inf.?

B: Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not, but I can.....

2 Talking about preferences

الحديث عن التفضيل

• للتعبير عما نفضله نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية:

- I prefer + n / v-ing

- I'd rather + inf.

- My favourite (thing) is

- I'm interested in + v-ing / n.

3 Asking for and giving recommendations

طلب وإعطاء توصيات

• نسأل عن التوصيات كالتالي:

- Would you recommend (n / v-ing)?

- What do you recommend + v-ing.?

• لعمل التوصيات نقول:

- I recommend (that) + فاعل inf. / v-ing / n

- The best thing about + noun is that

- It's a good idea to + inf.

4) Making invitations

تقديم الدعوات
• لتقديم دعوات نقول:

- I'd like to invite you to + inf.
- I'd like you to + inf.
- Would you like to + inf.?
- I was wondering if you would like to + inf.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| - I'd love to. | - I'm afraid. It won't be possible. |
| - That / It sounds great. | - I'd love to, but I can't because |
| - OK, with pleasure. | |

5) Asking about and giving opinion

السؤال عن وابداء الرأي
• نسال عن الرأي كالاتي:

- Do you think (that)?
- What do you think of / about?
- What is your view of / about?

• للتعبير عن الرأي نقول

- In my view, / From my point of view,
- In my opinion,
- I think
- No, I don't think so.

6) Making offers

تقديم عروض
• لتقديم عرض نقول:

- Shall I + inf.?
- Would you like me to + inf.?

7) Making requests

تقديم طلبات
• للطلب نقول:

- Could you + inf.?
- I was wondering if you could + inf.

Part 2-Final Revision

Exercises on Units 7, 8, 9

A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب



1. Noha prefers shopping.

- a. real b. offline c. online d. line

2. Tamer waiting for a delivery.

- a. likes b. hates c. prefers d. enjoys

3. Noha likes staying at and buying things.

- a. shop b. mall c. home d. market

4. may have a late delivery.

- a. Tamer b. Noha c. Both d. No one

1. Esraa is allergic to

- a. fruits b. nuts c. vegetables d. milk

2. Esraa can't eat

- a. chess b. cheese c. cake d. sweets

3. Esraa can eat

- a. Ice cream b. chocolate c. nuts d. cheese

4. Cheese are made from

- a. milk b. meat c. sugar d. rice

1. Huda doesn't like food.

- a. fast b. healthy c. fresh d. delicious

2. Huda's cooks delicious chicken.

- a. mother b. sister c. aunt d. grandmother

3. Huda loves chicken.

- a. sweet b. spicy c. salty d. fast

4. Huda usually eats chicken at

- a. breakfast b. snack c. dinner d. morning

8 Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hany is talking to Ahmed who has a headache.

- Hany** : What's wrong?
- Ahmed** : ①
- Hany** : Headache! ②?
- Ahmed** : I went to bed late.
- Hany** : ③?
- Ahmed** : Because I spent hours playing games.
- Hany** : ④
- Ahmed** : What should I do?
- Hany** : ⑤
- Ahmed** : You're right.

Nada is going to buy things.

- Amira** : Hello Nada! ①?
- Nada** : I'm going to the supermarket.
- Amira** : ②?
- Nada** : I am going to buy some fresh vegetables.
- Amira** : Do you like vegetables?
- Nada** : ③
- Amira** : Which vegetables do you prefer?
- Nada** : ④
- Amira** : Would you like to come with me?
- Nada** : ⑤

Part 2-Final Revision

Farida is talking to Jana about her activities.

Farida : Can I ask you some questions?

Jana : ①

Farida : What is your favourite activity?

Jana : ②

Farida : Which instrument do you play?

Jana : ③

Farida : ④?

Jana : The end of year show will be next month.

Farida : ⑤?

Jana : Of course you can come.

Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops, and they can stay at home and buy anything they want, in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets, so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If more people shop online, there will be less

- a. pollution b. popular c. water d. houses

2. Some people don't like to time waiting for a delivery.

- a. waste b. save c. go d. drive

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

4. Where can you stay while shopping online?

.....

5. Do you like shopping online?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "waste" mean?

.....

Although technology makes life easy, it makes people lazy. It saves time and makes things fun, but it can be "bad". Technology and social media can be both helpful and dangerous for children. Using them too much can make it hard to do well at school. Too much technology can give you headaches, cause eye and ear problems. It sometimes makes sleep difficult.

It's important for parents to talk to their children about using technology safely. They should put rules for how much time children can spend online and what they can do. Parents should teach their children to tell them if someone is bad to them. "They" should tell their children not to share personal information or believe everything they see or read online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined adjective "bad" means

a. horrible

b. nice

c. good

d. fantastic

2. Technology and social media can be for children.

a. helpful

b. dangerous

c. juicy

d. both a and b

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is too much technology bad for children?

.....

4. Is it a good idea to share personal information online?

.....

5. What do you think of life without technology?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to?

.....

Part 2-Final Revision

There are many fast food restaurants in my town. Lots of people eat fast food, but I think it is not healthy. They eat this food because it's tasty, but everybody can have tasty meals at home.

The only problem is that buying fresh products and cooking them takes much time and people prefer to spend time doing other activities, such as watching films, meeting friends, walking in parks, etc. I also like to do these activities, but I am very careful about my diet.

Fresh fruit and vegetables will always give me energy for the day. I like milk, eggs, roasted chicken and baked potatoes. Fried potatoes are nice, but unhealthy, like all fried foods. My favourite meal is fish. And for dessert, I eat fruit but sometimes I eat chocolate.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. is an example of fast food..

a. Egg

b. Pizza

c. Fish

d. Roast chicken

2. People don't prefer to spend time.....

a. cooking

b. watching TV

c. walking

d. meeting friends

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. Why do lots of people eat fast food?

5. What food gives energy according to the writer?

6. What does the writer like to eat?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maha can costumes very well

a. swap

b. write

c. paint

d. sew

2. The museum contains a lot of ancient

- a. music b. stays c. statues d. scripts

3. A is a period of hundred years.

- a. country b. scenery c. century d. view

4. Alexandria is famous its amazing places.

- a. by b. for c. of d. at

5. means beautiful handwriting with pen or brush.

- a. Calligraphy b. Pottery c. Costumes d. Concerts

6. We why he was scared.

- a. escaped b. couldn't c. wandered d. wondered

7. Are the children make pottery?

- a. can b. can't c. would d. able to

8. Can your bother in a play?

- a. acting b. to act c. acts d. act

1. My mobile has a/an that tells me the right directions.

- a. lever b. advice c. app d. robot

2. The apposite of horrible is

- a. terrible b. dangerous c. awful d. amazing

3. You spend long hours playing games. You became to it.

- a. expert b. addicted c. traveller d. inventor

4. How long did it take to the fields on foot?

- a. translate b. copy c. explore d. advise

5. The doctor me some advice to stay healthy.

- a. gave b. had c. took d. checked

6. My little brother didn't want to call me. He called me by

- a. pollution b. copy c. mistake d. debate

7. If he feels sick he a doctor.

- a. shouldn't see b. should seeing
c. should to see d. should see

Part 2-Final Revision

8. I hope they the party.

- a. attending b. are attending c. will attend d. would attend

1. You are to strawberry, you can't eat any.

- a. added b. surprised c. allergic d. bad

2. She always eats a lot of pasta to have before the gym.

- a. energy b. spices c. protein d. reason

3. Mum usually uses like black pepper.

- a. slices b. sweets c. spices d. species

4. Falafel is really and it is very popular in Egypt.

- a. terrible b. delicious c. horrible d. juicy

5. '.....': Isn't a dairy product.

- a. Butter b. Spinach c. Milk d. Cheese

6. Can you help me the washing up?

- a. making b. wasting c. spending d. doing

7. I'd like orange juice.

- a. drinking b. to drink c. drank d. drink

8. Can I have milk, please?

- a. some b. any c. many d. few

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Mona (is) 14 next May.

2. We'll go to the park if it (not rain).

3. You (should) give your password to anyone.

4. What (I should) do to get high marks?

5. She doesn't know how (send) a message.

1. (Shall) you like to have some coffee?

2. Don't (touching) electricity.

3. Never (interrupting) others while talking.

4. My father likes (a few) sugar in his tea.

5. You (must) drink dirty water. It's unhealthy

1. Does Manar (knows) the way to the bank?

2. (You/able) to help with music Amr?

3. (Do) Your friend able to translate from Arabic into English?

- _____

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINTY (90) words on:

“Technology”

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

"Healthy diet"

[illegible]

"A person you are proud of"

[The page contains faint horizontal lines suggesting bleed-through from another document.]

Part 2-Final Revision

Revision on Units 10, 11 & 12

Unit 10



Vocabulary

belt	حزام	chemical	مادة كيميائية
headscarf	غطاء للرأس (حجاب)	crop	محصول
scarf	شال / وشاح / كوفية	customer	زبون
handbag	حقيرة يد (حريمي)	chest of drawers	خزانة ذات أدراج
trainers	حذاء رياضي	fantastic	رائع
earrings	قرط (حلق)	jacket	جاكيت
galabeya	جلباب	tool	أداة (يدوية)
sunglasses	نظارة شمس	headphones	سماعات الرأس
sandals	صندل	cool	رائع
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	useful	مفيد
luxury	شيء فخم / فاخر	borrow (ed)	يستعير / يستلف
industry	صناعة	pick (ed)	يقطف (نبات) / يلتقط
perfect	مثالي (في أحسن حال)	protect (ed)	يحمي
environment	البيئة	help (ed)	يساعد
famous	مشهور	fit (ted)	يناسب / يلائم
soft	ناعم / لين	try (ied) ... on	يقيس ملابس

Adjectives for clothes

smart	أنيق / مهندم	pretty	جميل
traditional	تقليدي	colourful	راهي الألوان / ذو ملابس زاهية
comfortable	مريح (للملابس) / مستريح (للشخص)	casual	غير رسمي (ملابس)
uncomfortable	غير مريح	nice	لطيف
loose	فضفاض / واسع	simple	بسيط
cheap	رخيص	striped	مقلم / مخطط
expensive	غالي الثمن	heavy	ثقيل
strange	غريب		



Language

1- Adjective order

ترتيب الصفات

• يراعى الترتيب الآتي عند وصف شيء:

Size / Description	Shape	Age	Colour	Material	Noun
big / lovely	square	new	black	leather	bag

Ex. He wore a **long, green, cotton** shirt.

2- one / ones

• نستخدم (one) بدلاً من الاسم المفرد و (ones) بدلاً من الاسم الجمع عندما نريد ألا نكرر الاسم / الأسماء التي ذكرت سابقاً في الجملة:

Ex. This **watch** is the **one** my father bought me.

Ex. These **books** are the **ones** I borrowed from the library.

3- this - that / these - those

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء القريبة منا.

هؤلاء (للجمع القريب) these هذا / هذه (للمفرد القريب) this

• نستخدم أسماء الإشارة الآتية عندما نتحدث عن الأشخاص / الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

اولئك (للجمع البعيد) those تلك / ذلك (للمفرد البعيد) that



Speaking

① Describing clothes

وصف الملابس

- نصف الملابس من حيث الآتي:

size	المقاس	colour	اللون
shape	الشكل	material	المادة المستخدمة
age	العمر		

- ويراعى في الوصف اتباع ترتيب الصفات كما سبق شرحه:

Ex. It's a **beautiful, big, modern** house.

Part 2- Final Revision

كما يمكن أن نصف الملابس باستخدام صفات التفضيل كما يلي:

- This jacket is **the nicest**.
- This striped galabeya is **the most traditional**.

2) Shopping for clothes

شراء الملابس

- نستخدم الأسئلة التالية للسؤال عن (عدد) الملابس التي يمتلكها / يشتريها شخص ما:

- How many (pairs of) do you have / own?
- Whichis / are your favourite?

- ونجيب عن الأسئلة السابقة كالتالي:

- I have four pairs of socks, but the yellow pair is **my favourite**.
- ونسأل عن المحل الذي تحب الشراء منه بالصيغة التالية:
- Which shop do you like? **Which one** is your favourite?

3) At a clothes shop

في محل ملابس

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها بائع في محل للزبون:

- Can I help you?
- The changing room is there.
- Does it fit you?
- It's pounds.

- العبارات الآتية عادة ما يقولها الزبون للبائع:

- I'd like like this.
- How much is it / does it cost?
- Could I try it on?
- I'll take it.
- Do you have a smaller size?

Unit 11



Vocabulary

solar panels	أنواع الطاقة الشمسية	location	موقع
rubbish	قمامة	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية	bacteria	بكتيريا (اسم جمع)
wildlife	الحياة البرية	invention	اختراع
roof	سطح المنزل	hot-air ballooning	التحليق بالملطاد
drought	جفاف	fishing	صيد السمك
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	sandboarding	التزلج على الرمال
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	canoeing	التجديف
suitable	مناسب	bungee jumping	القفز بالحبال
mangrove	شجرة المانجروف	free	غير مشغول - حر - مجاني
conservation	حماية / الحفاظ على الكائنات	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير (تصنيع)
lend	يقرض / يسلف	reuse (d)	يعيد استخدام
system	نظام	save (d)	ينقذ / يوفر
horse riding	ركوب الخيل	damage (d)	يتلف
bird watching	مشاهدة / مراقبة الطيور	reduce (d)	يقلل
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	install (ed)	يركب / يثبت «جهاز أو تطبيق»
star gazing	مشاهدة النجوم	pick (ed) up	يلتقط
hiking in the desert	التجول في الصحراء	plant (ed)	يزرع
diving	الغوص	repair (ed)	يُصلح
environment-friendly / green	صديق للبيئة	melt (ed)	يذوب / ينصهر
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح (مولدات الطاقة من الرياح)	filter (ed) (n)	يفلتر - يصفى - مصفى / فلترة
		control (led)	يتحكم في

Part 2- Final Revision

Noun		Adjective	
environment	البيئة	environmental	بيئي
tradition	تقليد	traditional	تقليدي
music	موسيقى	musical	موسيقي
nature	الطبيعة	natural	طبيعي



Language

1- (be) going to & The present continuous

1- Going to

التكوين

I	am	} (not) going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم ((be) going to) للتعبير عن نية / خطة مستقبلية / قرار لفعل شيء في المستقبل ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

decide - decision - plan - intend - intention

Ex. I **am going to** watch a movie.

Ex. He **isn't going to** take a photo.

٢- نستخدم ((be) going to) أيضا للتنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل في وجود دليل (اما دليل نراه او نعرفه) ويدل على ذلك الكلمات الآتية:

predict - prediction - evidence

Ex. It **is going to** rain.

(I can see some dark clouds.)

Ex. Our players **are going to** win the cup.

(They always train well.)

Question السؤال ؟

am - is - are + subject + going to + inf...? اداة استفهام

Ex. Where **are** you **going to** spend your holiday?

2- The present continuous**Form** النحوي

I	am	} (not) verb + ing.
He/ She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You/ They / اسم جمع	are	

١- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل (غالبا مع الإشارة إلى وقت أو تاريخ يدل على المستقبل) ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange - arrangements - prepare - preparation

Ex. My grandma **is visiting** us next week.

Ex. We **'re going** to Spain for our next holiday. We **aren't going** to England.

٢- نستخدم المضارع المستمر أيضا للتعبير عن حدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام)

Ex. She **is doing** her homework now.

Question السؤال ؟

am - is - are + subject + verb + ing...? كلمة استفهام

Ex. (When) **Are** you **having** a party for your birthday?

3- Time Expressions التعبيرات الزمنية

- ادرس الشكل الآتي ولاحظ التعبيرات الزمنية المستخدمة من الحاضر حتى المستقبل:

Now	in five minutes →	this afternoon / evening →	tomorrow →
	the day after tomorrow →	next week →	in 10 days' time →
	in three weeks	Future	

Part 2- Final Revision

Speaking

① Talking about future plans

التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية

نسال باستخدام (be) going to عن الخطط المستقبلية كالآتي:

What are you going to do at the weekend?

Where are you going to go for your next holiday?

How are you going to improve your English?

② Making predictions

التنبؤ

نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن التنبؤ بناء على دليل كالآتي:

Evidence دليل	Prediction تنبؤ
- The students didn't do their homework	- The teacher is going to be angry.
- My alarm clock didn't go off this morning.	- They are going to have to do extra homework tonight.
	- I'm going to be late for school.

③ Suggesting solutions to environmental problems

اقتراح حلول للمشكلات البيئية

نعبر عن الحلول للمشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| - Make... more expensive | - Recycle... |
| - Stop people from...v-ing | - Ask local people to... |
| - Use camels... | - Build |

④ Discussing inventions and environmental problems

مناقشة الاختراعات والمشكلات البيئية

نسأل ونجيب عن الاختراعات المستخدمة لحل المشكلات البيئية كالآتي:

Question	Answer
A: Which do you think is the best or most useful invention?	B: I think drones are the best.
A: How can drones be a useful way to solve environmental problems?	B: They can be used to make deliveries.
A: How can that help the environment?	B: They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries.

⑤ Discussing future arrangements / plans

مناقشة الترتيبات والخطط المستقبلية

- يستخدم (the present continuous) للتعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية.

A: What are you doing this afternoon?

B: I'm doing my maths lesson.

⑥ Doing activities

القيام بالأنشطة

نسأل عن رغبة شخص ما في القيام بأنشطة كالآتي:

- Would you like to come? - I invite you to come.....

- Why don't you.....?

- للإجابة بالموافقة أو بالرفض نقول:

Agree	Disagree
- Yes, I've always wanted to.....	- I don't know. It looks a bit scary.
- OK! I'll come.	- I can't come.
- Thank you. I'd love to come.	- No, I don't want to.
- Yes, that might be fun.	

Part 2- Final Revision

Unit 12

Vocabulary

learner	متعلم (في مرحلة التعلم)	expert	خبير
mostly	غالباً / في الأغلب	national	قومي / محلي
take notes	يسجل ملاحظات	dialect	لهجة
disappointed	مُحبط	advantage	ميزة
proud	فخور	identity	هوية
body language	لغة الجسد	spelling	الهجاء
eye contact	تواصل بصري (بالنظر)	punctuation	علامات الترقيم
multilingual	متعدد اللغات	pronunciation	النطق
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	accent	لكنة
sound	صوت (شيء)	repair (ed) = fix (ed)	يُصلح
voice	صوت (بشري)	fail (ed)	يفشل / يرسب
summer school	مدرسة صيفية	pass (ed)	ينجح / يجتاز
context	سياق الكلام / سياق الحديث	decide (d)	يقرر
volunteer	متطوع	improve (d)	يطور / يحسن
personal statement	بيان شخصي	manage (c)	يدير / ينظم
vocabulary	مفردات لغوية	connect (ed)	يصل / يربط
application form	استمارة / طلب تقديم	touch (n) (cc)	اللمس / يلمس
study plan	خطة دراسية		

Important phrases

writing	الكتابة	listening	الاستماع
reading	القراءة	doing things	عمل الأشياء
seeing things	رؤية الأشياء		

Important phrases

manage your time	نظم وقتك	sleep well	نم جيداً
work alone	إعمل بمفردك	be organised	كن مُنظماً
take a break	خذ استراحة		



Language

1- The present simple tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

فاعل	إثبات	لغى	استفهام
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	inf. مصدر الفعل	don't + inf. never + inf.	(كلمة استفهام) Do + فاعل + inf.?
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	inf. + s / es / ies	doesn't + inf. never + inf + s / es / ies	(كلمة استفهام) Does + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

every (day - week - month - year) - always - usually - often - sometimes - never

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حقائق - أفعال متكررة وعادات

Ex. We **help** mum at home.

- All **lives** in Giza.

Ex. We **don't make** noise.

- Mona **doesn't live** in Giza.

Ex. **Do** they **have** a car?

- **Does** Aya **live** in Giza?

- Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**.

- Yes, she **does**. / No, she **doesn't**.

2- The past simple tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

إثبات	لغى	استفهام
فعل في النصريف الثاني + فاعل	didn't + inf. + فاعل	(كلمة استفهام) Did + فاعل + inf.?

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday - last (week - month - year) - ago - in the past - once - in 2015

Usage الاستخدام

• يعبر عن فعل حدث وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي

Ex. She **cooked** fish yesterday.

Part 2- Final Revision

Ex. She **didn't** cook meat yesterday.

Ex. **Did** she cook rice yesterday?

- Yes, she **did**. / No, she **didn't**.

3- The past continuous tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

فاعل	إثبات	نفي	استفهام
I He / She / It / اسم مفرد	was	was	(كلمة استفهام) Was
We / You / They / اسم جمع	were	were	Were
	+ v-ing	not + v-ing	+ فاعل + v-ing?

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

when / while / as / just as

Usage: الاستخدام

• يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت محدد في الماضي / حدث كان مستمراً في الماضي عندما قطع حدث آخر

Ex. I **was** reading a book when mum **called** me.

Ex. He **wasn't** eating cake.

Ex. **Were** you flying a kite?

4- The future simple tense

زمن المستقبل البسيط

إثبات	نفي	استفهام
فاعل + will + inf.	فاعل + will not (won't) + inf.	Will + فاعل + inf.? (كلمة استفهام)

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - in the future - next (week - month - year)

Usage: الاستخدام

يعبر عن شيء سوف يحدث في المستقبل

Ex. She **will** visit us tomorrow.

Ex. They **will not** (won't) sing.

Ex. **Will** you do your homework?

- Yes, I **will**. / No, I **won't**.

Speaking

① Talking about learning styles

الحديث عن طرق التعلم

- نسأل ونجيب عن طرق التعلم كالآتي:

A: How do you prefer to learn?

B: I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same thing.

A: What type of classes are your favourite?

B: I like classes when we get to do things and don't only read or listen.

A: What type of learning would you like to do more?

B: I'd like to do listening activities more.

A: What would you like to do less? Why?

B: I'd like to do less writing activities because I'm not interested in learning by writing.

Exercises on Units 10, 11, 12

A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

1. What is Egyptian cotton used for making?

- a. Luxury clothes b. Nice goods c. Luxurly goods d. Long clothes

2. Who works in the cotton industry?

- a. few people b. old people c. many people d. young people

3. The Egyptian cotton is all over the world.

- a. cheap b. wonderful c. famous d. luxury

4. All people like Egyptian cotton because it is very

- a. small b. simple c. old d. good

Part 2-Final Revision

- Drones can
 a. swim b. float c. fly d. sink
- We can use a control to fly drones.
 a. remoted b. remotes c. remoting d. remote
- We can control drones from the
 a. ground b. sea c. floor d. sky
- In the future, drones are going to help solve some problems.
 a. medical b. health
 c. environmental d. mental

- I'm selling a
 a. earrings b. ring c. necklace d. handbag
- The handbag is made of
 a. linen b. wool c. leather d. skin
- The handbag is
 a. black b. white c. new d. a & c
- The price is L.E
 a. 5000 b. 50,000 c. 50 d. 500

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazen is in a clothes shop

- Shopkeeper** : ① ?
- Mazen** : Yes, I want a shirt.
- Shopkeeper** : What colour do you want?
- Mazen** : ② .
- Shopkeeper** : The blue ones are over there.
- Mazen** : ③ ?
- Shopkeeper** : Of course, the fitting room is over there.
- Mazen** : How much is this one?
- Shopkeeper** : ④ .
- Mazen** : ⑤ .

A tourist asked Ali some questions about the Pyramids.

Tourist : Can I ask you some questions?

Ali : ①

Tourist : ②?

Ali : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : ③?

Ali : Yes, they are far.

Tourist : How can I go there?

Ali : ④

Tourist : Who built them?

Ali : ⑤

Eman and Mona are talking about languages.

Eman : Is it important to know other languages?

Mona : ①

Eman : ②?

Mona : I think English is the most important language.

Eman : Why?

Mona : ③

Eman : I agree ④?

Mona : We use it to communicate with others.

Eman : ⑤

Mona : So you are multilingual.

Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

Some people learn a second language easily. Others have troubles learning it. How can you learn a new language like English? There are a lot of ways that make learning English easy and interesting. Firstly, you should like learning English. If you feel that you can learn, you will learn. You needn't understand everything at once. It is natural to make mistakes. We can learn from our mistakes. Secondly, you have to

Part 2- Final Revision

practise your English. You can write in the school magazine or exchange letters and e-mails with friends. This way you get used to writing in English and soon you will see that your writing is improving. You should speak English every day. You can practise with your classmates outside classes. You all make mistakes but gradually you will communicate well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are a lot of ways to make learning English easy and
a. boring b. difficult c. not boring d. not difficult
2. It's natural to mistakes.
a. do b. make c. listen d. eat

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun it refer to?

.....

5. How do you think that making mistakes is sometimes useful?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "exchange" mean?

.....

The sun is the most important source of energy. Although we can't live without it, scientists tell us that the sun has advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, sunshine is good for you as it gives you energy, it is good for plants, so many crops and fruits grow well in Egypt as it is sunny most of the year and it is not usually cold. Tourists like to come to Egypt because of the sunshine. On the other hand, it has some disadvantages as the sunshine can burn your skin, the sun can start fires. If it is very hot, some plants can't grow and it can be difficult to play sports.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although sunshine is very useful, scientists say that it has also effects.
a. good b. nice c. bad d. great
2. One disadvantage of the sunshine is that it can your skin.
a. burn b. benefit c. kill d. drive

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?
5. Why do you think tourists like to come to Egypt?
6. What does the underlined word "start" mean?

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that serve all people, but at the same time they are harmful to the environment. Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place but they are harmful to the environment because they cause air pollution. Factories make good things to us, but there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish into water and this kills huge numbers of fish too. So we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because trees are a source of life as they give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Keeping the environment is important for everyone.
 a. dirty b. polluted c. clean d. ugly
2. We live on the
 a. sea. b. moon. c. sky d. Earth

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish?
5. What do you think we should do to keep the environment clean?
6. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's a beautiful jacket. You look very
 a. strange b. long c. ugly d. smart
2. I cover my bed with a nice made of linen.
 a. scarf b. sheet c. cheat d. skirt
3. Is Omar suitable this job?
 a. of b. for c. on d. in

Part 2-Final Revision

4. My computer won't work, so I asked someone to it.
 a. recycle b. repeat c. replay d. repair
 5. One of the mobile's is that you can use it everywhere.
 a. dialects b. experts c. voices d. advantages
 6. To get better at something means to
 a. improve b. proof c. prove d. dislike
 7. In winter, it is good to wear
 a. long, wool socks b. socks long, wool
 c. long, socks wool d. wool, long socks
 8. Can you give me book? I can't get it.
 a. that b. these c. those d. this
-
1. The Ancient Egyptians didn't wear but sometimes they wore sandals.
 a. clothes b. shoes c. linen clothes d. cotton clothes
 2. means not hard.
 a. Strong b. Soft c. Black d. Sunny
 3. Tourism helps local people to money.
 a. make b. born c. steal d. rob
 4. Trees can reduce pollution.
 a. air b. water c. hair d. green
 5. I work hard to my dream.
 a. lose b. pass c. achieve d. fail
 6. We know the film is scary by their expression.
 a. hand b. eyes c. facial d. finger
 7. Did you Cairo last year?
 a. visited b. visits c. visit d. visiting
 8. Next Wednesday, I to Hurghada.
 a. go b. goes c. went d. am going
-
1. What would you like? - Large, please.
 a. colour b. size c. number d. material
 2. There are a lot of in the supermarket as there's a sale.
 a. occasions b. conservation c. customers d. books
 3. are planes without pilots.
 a. Boats b. Robots c. Rockets d. Drones

4. Rock climbing looks a bit to me.

a. bored

b. tired

c. afraid

d. scary

5. I feel If I fail an exam.

a. content

b. greedy

c. fantastic

d. disappointed

6. Some birds can sounds.

a. save

b. write

c. text

d. copy

7. Egypt is famous for

a. luxury, cotton, clothes

b. clothes, cotton, luxury

d. luxury, clothes, cotton

d. cotton, luxury, clothes

8. Shall I buy these black jeans or those ?

a. ones

b. any

c. some

d. one

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. This book is funny, but that (ones) is very boring.

2. Sami is a (young, tall, thin) boy.

3. Ali's family are going to (travelling) to Japan.

4. I (use) to play football when I was young.

5. Water always (boiling) at 100 degrees.

1. I think the weather (be) fine tomorrow.

2. Mr Ahmed (be) going to spend his holiday in Giza.

3. Rania (reads) a nice story last night.

4. It's a (new / beautiful / black) bag.

5. Listen! Your child (crying) loudly.

1. My mom is wearing (linen, long, white) clothes.

2. This woman is the (ones) who helped me.

3. Ali is (go) to travel to Aswan next month.

4. Sami (revise) for the exam now.

5. (That) are my dad's shoes.

Part 2- Final Revision

Writing

⑥ Write a paragraph of about NINTY (90) words on:

"An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

"How to keep our environment clean"

"How to learn English"

General Exercises

from Student's Book & Workbook

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

SB & WB Exercises Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you think that it is easy to from Arabic to English?
a. translate b. move c. find d. stay
- The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a
a. lorry b. ship c. rocket d. motorbike
- are like planes, but they do not have wings!
a. Cars b. Cameras c. Helicopters d. Mobiles
- Mona always wears on the bus because she loves listening to music.
a. mobiles b. headphones c. dresses d. tablets
- There's a/an on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
- Do you think that we will a car that doesn't make any pollution?
a. Invention b. predict c. prediction d. invent
- That new hotel looks I really don't like it.
a. nice b. wonderful c. horrible d. fantastic
- If you don't the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
a. swim b. visit c. try d. understand
- You shouldn't in the sea if it is very cold.
a. run b. swim c. visit d. understand
- The tourists took the road south by , but they wanted to go north.
a. correction b. lever c. mistake d. right
- Our friends sent us some photos on
a. social media b. battery c. keyboard d. mouse
- my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.
a. From b. In c. By d. On
- Technology can be bad your health.
a. at b. to c. for d. about
- When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to its large gardens.
a. invent b. explore c. expect d. export
- We can use solar to make electricity.
a. doors b. windows c. panels d. rooms
- media are websites and apps that let people talk to each other online.
a. Social b. Careful c. Electric d. Expensive

General Exercises

17. My little sister is _____ to sweets. She always wants to eat them!
 a. damaged b. addicted c. broken d. hated
18. Do you think that there will be many _____ in your English homework?
 a. correct b. corrections c. invent d. inventions
19. I think people will visit other planets one day, but it is _____ to go to the sun.
 a. possible b. probable c. easy d. impossible
20. The door was very heavy, so we had to _____ it open.
 a. call b. pull c. lock d. look
21. Don't touch the _____, or the machine will start.
 a. blackboard b. glasses c. telescope d. lever
22. Do you _____ that the weather will get hotter in the future?
 a. predict b. prediction c. invent d. invention
23. It was cloudy this morning, but the clouds soon _____ when the sun came out.
 a. appeared b. disappeared c. hurt d. damaged
24. I asked my teacher for help because I couldn't _____ a new lesson.
 a. stay b. visit c. understand d. try
25. You shouldn't _____ outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
 a. visit b. stay c. swim d. predict
26. The water in the sea is _____.
 a. sweet b. spicy c. juicy d. salty
27. _____ is an example of fast food.
 a. Cheese b. Pasta c. Pizza d. Cake
28. Sfenj has lots of fat and sugar in it and it is very _____.
 a. high b. sweet c. salty d. short
29. Falafel is really _____ and it is very popular in Egypt.
 a. horrible b. terrible c. bad d. delicious
30. Many people are allergic to _____, so they don't eat cakes.
 a. pizzas b. nuts c. salad d. salt
31. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is _____.
 a. expensive b. terrible c. old d. fresh
32. You need to _____ eggs and milk before you make an omelette.
 a. chop b. wash c. beat d. drink
33. Humans have 210 _____ in their bodies.
 a. legs b. backs c. skeletons d. bones
34. Meat, fish and eggs all have _____ in them.
 a. sugar b. protein c. bones d. skin
35. When I had a big lunch, I felt _____.
 a. full b. careful c. empty d. delicious

36. _____ products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
 a. Diary b. Dairy c. Dry d. Wet
37. The soup is cold. Shall we _____ it?
 a. cool b. freeze c. heat d. wash
38. Which of these is not a dairy product?
 a. milk b. rice c. cheese d. butter
39. Do you prefer to boil or _____ your eggs?
 a. wash b. pour c. serve d. fry
40. My grandparents always _____ lunch in the dining room at 4 o'clock.
 a. serve b. do c. wash d. play
41. _____ is a vegetable that is very healthy.
 a. Sugar b. Salt c. Spinach d. Apple
42. When Tamer is worried, he doesn't feel _____.
 a. big b. hungry c. salty d. cheap
43. A/An _____ can be green, red or yellow.
 a. pepper b. diet c. omelette d. spinach
44. Your _____ is the kind of food that you eat every day.
 a. work b. exercise c. diet d. homework
45. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy _____.
 a. sleep b. exercise c. snacks d. restaurants
46. A: How about drinking tea in the garden? B: It's a good _____.
 a. idea b. food c. meal d. diet
47. Which of these do you use to make an omelette?
 a. sugar b. rice c. eggs d. chocolate
48. Which of these is bad for your teeth?
 a. sugar b. salt c. eggs d. vegetables
49. I don't put any salt on my food because I don't like _____ food.
 a. sweet b. big c. fast d. salty
50. If we don't use sugar to make food _____, what other things can we use?
 a. sweet b. fast c. salty d. juicy
51. Samosas have _____ vegetables inside them.
 a. spicy b. careless c. bright d. fast
52. There is not protein in _____.
 a. meat b. milk c. fish d. apples
53. You need to _____ the tomatoes into small pieces.
 a. beat b. heat c. chop d. fry
54. _____ isn't a dairy product.
 a. Milk b. Cheese c. Rice d. Butter

General Exercises

55. We _____ things when we put them in our mouths.
 a. see b. smell c. taste d. hear
56. My dress is damaged, so my mother is _____ it.
 a. acting b. sewing c. painting d. playing
57. A _____ is a funny drawing usually showing people or animals.
 a. cartoon b. costume c. script d. carton
58. The children all wore funny _____ to the family party. Ahmed was a firefighter!
 a. contents b. costumes c. concerts d. customs
59. Which _____ can you play?
 a. device b. tool c. instrument d. concert
60. Mona can't answer the phone. She is doing her _____.
 a. scenery b. museum c. wake up d. make-up
61. The _____ is fantastic in the play, you feel like you are in the mountains!
 a. century b. scenery c. make-up d. costume
62. _____ are clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else.
 a. Costumes b. Scripts c. Cartoons d. Artists
63. A _____ person is the person who can't hear.
 a. blind b. fast c. tall d. deaf
64. My little sister started to _____ after she fell and hurt her hand.
 a. smile b. hide c. laugh d. cry
65. Lara always gives her grandmother a big _____ when she sees her.
 a. skill b. fire c. hug d. concert
66. A _____ person is the person who is not able to see.
 a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
67. A/An _____ person is the person who is not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
 a. excited b. delighted c. interested d. disabled
68. Don't _____ your car outside the school.
 a. bark b. land c. mark d. park
69. _____ is the things that happen in a film.
 a. Action b. Nation c. Review d. Picnic
70. The actor became a _____ after he was in that famous film.
 a. thief b. star c. park d. review
71. A _____ park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
 a. thin b. some c. scene d. theme
72. Let's go to the _____ and fly our kites.
 a. play b. park c. action d. cinema
73. It is nearly dark. Look, I can see a/an _____.
 a. star b. review c. sun d. picnic

74. The blind man is not able to the traffic lights.
 a. hear b. smell c. see d. taste
75. A is the words for a play.
 a. script b. trip c. photograph d. sculpture
76. people cannot walk.
 a. Disabled b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Strong
77. This deaf boy is not able to me.
 a. see b. talk c. walk d. hear
78. It's a long, blue, You wear it around your neck.
 a. belt b. handbag c. sandals d. scarf
79. Are his clothes smart or?
 a. greedy b. casual c. clever d. snowy
80. Do her clothes look or uncomfortable?
 a. comfortable b. similar c. gold d. electric
81. In Ancient Egypt, clothes made of were popular.
 a. oil b. plastic c. linen d. wheat
82. are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
 a. Handbags b. Headscarves c. Galabeyas d. Necklaces
83. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't very differently.
 a. call b. dress c. cost d. press
84. This cloth is made from a mixture of and cotton.
 a. wood b. electricity c. plastic d. linen
85. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton
 a. environment b. industry c. occasion d. electricity
86. If something is a special, it means it is an important event for you.
 a. size b. environment c. hobby d. occasion
87. When you wear the same clothes as your sister, it means you can wear the same clothes.
 a. size b. occasion c. price d. environment
88. are a large amount of plants that are grown to be sold.
 a. Chemicals b. Baskets c. Crops d. Soils
89. Scientists used the new app to determine the of underground water.
 a. invitation b. location c. conversation d. station
90. We have a for recycling in our house.
 a. system b. wind c. rain d. solar
91. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous
 a. vitamins b. proteins c. bacteria d. suitcases
92. I always listen carefully to my teacher and notes.
 a. hunt b. talk c. take d. fill

General Exercises

93. If you _____ an exam, you will feel proud.
 a. fail b. fill c. succeed d. pass
94. _____ study science three times a week during the school term.
 a. Learners b. Farmers c. Trainers d. Cleaners
95. If you _____ an exam, you will feel disappointed.
 a. feel b. fail c. pass d. fall
96. When was the last time you _____ disappointed?
 a. felt b. fall c. filled d. fell
97. It was _____ cloudy today. There wasn't much sun.
 a. hardly b. never c. rarely d. mostly
98. Students need to _____ what job they want to do.
 a. travel b. fix c. repair d. decide
99. A sound that comes from your mouth is your _____.
 a. sound b. hear c. voice d. touch
100. What is the _____ language of Egypt?
 a. fashion b. occasional c. emotional d. national
101. A person who speaks lots of languages is _____.
 a. multilingual b. greedy c. lazy d. national
102. In Switzerland, you do not need to be an _____ to speak many languages.
 a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. expect
103. Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their _____.
 a. eye contact b. facial expressions
 c. touch d. body language
104. Shady can hear _____ inside the house .
 a. sounds b. smell c. touch d. taste
105. A blind man chooses the shirt by _____.
 a. sounds b. sight c. smell d. touch
106. Some animals can _____ sounds.
 a. connect b. feel c. copy d. spend
107. When you get tired, you can _____ a break.
 a. make b. take c. win d. do
108. Successful persons always _____ their time.
 a. manage b. damage c. test d. revise
109. I want to _____ my English because I want to do well in my exams.
 a. move b. include c. improve d. prove
110. The Portuguese and Spanish languages are _____ in many ways.
 a. connected b. disappointed
 c. disadvantages d. disorganised

111. A is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.
 a. learner b. thief c. volunteer d. worker
112. Medhat can't drive because he his driving test.
 a. passed b. succeeded c. failed d. won
113. The family were when they found their hotel room was next to a factory!
 a. disappointed b. proud c. happy d. pleased
114. The teacher thinks that all the students in our class will the test.
 a. sound b. lose c. pay d. pass
115. Many people in Switzerland are : they speak four languages.
 a. blind b. greedy c. careless d. multilingual
116. Our school needs to take part in the festival.
 a. volunteers b. thieves c. engines d. farmers

SB & WB Exercises Language

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When Huda visits Cairo, she some new shoes.
 a. would buy b. buying c. will buy d. bought
- I think travelling in time impossible.
 a. be b. would be c. were d. will be
- Hassan won't use the internet to buy food when he older.
 a. is b. was c. be d. are
- If I everything online, I won't be able to go shopping with my friends.
 a. would buy b. buy c. will buy d. bought
- I think there no illnesses in the future.
 a. will be b. be c. won't be d. was
- I asked my aunt to a French internet article into Arabic.
 a. build b. check c. translate d. damage
- When you go to bed, you ... turn your phone off.
 a. won't b. will c. should d. have
- You should tell a parent or teacher if you worried about something.
 a. felt b. will feel c. are felt d. feel
- When you feel tired, you have a break.
 a. will b. shouldn't c. not d. should
- You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head
 a. will hurt b. hurting c. hurts d. would hurt
- If you someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.
 a. didn't know b. don't know c. not know d. won't know
- If you see people being horrible online, you tell your parents.
 a. should b. won't c. are d. shouldn't

General Exercises

13. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I . . . some new headphones.
 a. buys b. bought c. would buy d. will buy
14. If you want to get to the park quickly, you . . . the bus.
 a. would take b. take c. should take d. took
15. If you go to the Egyptian Museum, you . . . see Ali because he is in Luxor.
 a. should b. will c. won't d. don't
16. We won't go to the beach this weekend if it . . . very windy.
 a. is b. will be c. was d. should be
17. . . . it be cold if I travel to England?
 a. Will b. Does c. Is d. Was
18. When you . . . online games, you should check that you can't buy anything.
 a. played b. plays c. playing d. play
19. The tourists . . . the Pyramids if they are in Cairo for the first time.
 a. would visit b. are visited c. visited d. should visit
20. I'm not very hungry, but I'd like . . . olives, please.
 a. a lot b. a little c. any d. a few
21. My grandmother spends . . . time cooking in the kitchen.
 a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many
22. Has samosa got . . . sugar or salt in it?
 a. some b. any c. a lot d. many
23. She eats . . . fish because it helps to make her strong.
 a. any b. a lot of c. lots d. a lot
24. Leila likes . . . milk in her tea, but not very much.
 a. a few b. any c. a lot d. a little
25. She drinks . . . water.
 a. a little b. any c. many d. a few
26. She eats . . . sweets.
 a. much b. a lot c. a few d. a little
27. If you meet other people, you . . . stand 1.5 metres away from them.
 a. will b. should c. are d. have
28. There are . . . people on the bus.
 a. a few b. much c. a lot d. any
29. Take the omelette and . . . it with salad.
 a. serving b. serves c. serve d. doesn't serve
30. . . . the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a fork.
 a. To put b. Puts c. Putting d. Put
31. . . . the beans in the water until it boils.
 a. Heat b. Heats c. Heated d. Heating

32. _____ some lemon juice over the hot beans.
 a. Pours b. Pour c. Poured d. Pouring
33. _____ some beans and put them in a pan.
 a. Wash b. Washing c. Washes d. To wash
34. Would you like _____ more beans?
 a. some b. lot c. lot of d. lots
35. _____ the salad with the omelette.
 a. Serves b. Didn't serve c. Serve d. Serving
36. I'd like _____ cheese, please.
 a. a lot b. a few c. many d. a little
37. "_____ you like a sandwich?" "Thank you, but I'm really full."
 a. Are b. Were c. Would d. Had
38. We sometimes eat sfenj with _____ tea.
 a. an b. some c. many d. a lot
39. Do you know _____ to use a computer?
 a. what b. who c. how d. which
40. _____ you able to speak French?
 a. Do b. Can c. Can't d. Are
41. A: _____ you know how to play an instrument? B: Yes, I do.
 a. Do b. Are c. Is d. Does
42. Where did you get _____ sunglasses?
 a. those b. that c. this d. then
43. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black _____?
 a. once b. one c. two d. ones
44. Can I buy _____ earrings in the window?
 a. an b. that c. this d. those
45. We went to the island in a/an _____ boat.
 a. long, old, wooden b. wooden, long, old
 a. old, wooden, long d. old, long, wooden
46. We saw a / an _____ statue in the museum.
 a. old, gold, big b. big, gold, old
 c. gold, big, old d. big, old, gold
47. _____ market it amazing! There are so many cool things here.
 a. These b. That c. Those d. They
48. The man wore _____ sunglasses.
 a. green, pretty, plastic b. pretty, plastic, green
 c. pretty, green, plastic d. plastic, green, pretty
49. Those earrings are the _____ my mum gave me.
 a. ones b. none c. once d. one

General Exercises

50. These books are funny, but these are very boring!
 a. ones b. once c. one d. only
51. I love wearing my galabeya, because it is very cool in the summer.
 a. cotton, long, loose b. long, cotton, loose
 a. long, loose, cotton d. cotton, loose, long
52. your mobile phone when it is old?
 a. Are you recycling b. Do you recycle
 c. Did you recycle d. Are you going to recycle
53. What are you to do at the weekend?
 a. go b. going c. goes d. went
54. There a drought.
 a. is going to be b. is being c. is going d. going
55. He is late so he the bus.
 a. isn't catching b. isn't going to catch
 a. catches d. caught
56. Where going to go for your next holiday?
 a. you are b. do you c. are you d. you do
57. How are you going to your English?
 a. improve b. improving c. improves d. improved
58. It's 1:55. Ayman to his 2 pm music lesson in five minutes.
 a. goes b. was going c. went d. is going
59. Judy is working on her project
 a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. in the past d. ago
60. My cousins at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.
 a. arrived b. are arriving c. arrives d. arriving
61. I forward to watching the stars in the desert this evening.
 a. looks b. looking c. am looking d. looked
62. Osama has a towel and is walking towards the sea. He is going swimming.
 a. to going b. to goes c. to go d. go
63. Inji is ten minutes from the station and the train goes in five minutes. Is she the train?
 a. catching b. going to catch c. catch d. caught
64. Don't use classroom 5 because some men it this afternoon.
 a. is going to paint b. paints c. are painting d. paint
65. Summer will be hotter next month and the snow
 a. is melting b. melts
 c. melted d. is going to melt

66. Look at the black clouds ! It's soon.
 a. raining b. going to rain c. rains d. rained
67. It's raining heavily and the river
 a. are flooding b. flood
 c. flooded d. is going to flood
68. When I young, I wanted to be a scientist.
 a. am b. were c. was d. is
69. Ali is feeling ill, so I don't think he out this evening.
 a. come b. will come c. came d. comes
70. Next year, I French classes.
 a. am going to start b. starts
 c. started d. was starting
71. We to secondary school in two years.
 a. went b. go c. will go d. goes
72. Hala like fruit, but now she loves it.
 a. don't b. isn't c. won't d. didn't use to
73. At the moment, my brother in a bank.
 a. worked b. is working c. will work d. work
74. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I!
 a. will pass b. was passing c. passed d. passes
75. When I was three years old, I didn't to school.
 a. use to going b. using go c. use to go d. used to going
76. About five million people in Alexandria.
 a. are living b. live c. lives d. living
77. At the moment, lots of American tourists photographs of the castle.
 a. take b. used to take c. are taking d. was taking
78. The horses were frightened and they to leave the building.
 a. don't want b. won't want c. didn't want d. wants
79. Next year, they a new hotel in the park.
 a. build b. built
 c. were building d. are going to build
80. When my father was younger, he on his uncle's farm.
 a. used to help b. helps c. is helping d. will help
81. It's a car.
 a. beautiful, black, long b. black, beautiful, long
 c. beautiful, long, black d. long, beautiful, black
82. Farida is running fast and she the race.
 a. is going to win b. winning c. won d. win

General Exercises

السؤال الخامس من ورقة الامتحان

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. This machine won't _____ (being) able to fly very high.
2. I won't watch TV tonight if I _____ (went) out.
3. If I buy everything online, I _____ (not be able to) go shopping with my friends.
4. If we want to stop climate change, we should _____ (stopped) cutting down trees.
5. A: " _____ (Would) you like coffee?" B: "No, I don't. I prefer tea."
6. Wait a little. _____ (Not pour) the eggs now.
7. _____ (Adds) some water and salt to the beans.
8. _____ (Serving) it with warm bread.
9. _____ (Beats) two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
10. A firefighter _____ (are) able to stop fires.
11. Can you _____ (sewing)?
12. Maher is able _____ (play) musical instruments.
13. _____ (Able) you play football or tennis?
14. If you know how to cook, you _____ (work) in a restaurant.
15. The galabeya that I bought yesterday is _____ (the more comfortable).
16. It's a/an _____ (cotton, old, striped) scarf.
17. Look at that _____ (pretty, gold, long) necklace
18. It's a _____ (linen, beautiful, new, blue) dress.
19. They are _____ (more expensive) sunglasses in this shop.
20. Linen clothes are _____ (nicest).
21. It's a _____ (purple, nice, wool) jumper.
22. Which socks are you going to wear? These _____ (one) or those ones?
23. I like _____ (those) black, leather handbag! Is it new?
24. I bought _____ (this) shoes last week at the market.
25. He wore a _____ (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
26. The boy and his father are going to _____ (watching) a football match.
27. Mr Medhat is going to England in January. Why is he _____ (go) to take a big coat?
28. At the moment, we _____ (stay) in a small hotel near the lake
29. Judy is visiting her grandma the day _____ (before) tomorrow.
30. Let's run, because the bus _____ (leave) in ten minutes' time.
31. She is walking in the mountains _____ (last) week.
32. She is visiting a museum in nine days' _____ (clock).
33. What are you _____ (do) this afternoon?
34. After 85 minutes, it is the Blue team five and the Red team one. Who is _____ (win)?
35. What is the temperature going to _____ (is) this afternoon?
36. Lara is _____ (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
37. Fawzy _____ (not work) next week because he has a holiday.
38. I want to travel so I _____ (learn) lots of languages.
39. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I _____ (be) a scientist!

40. Ahmed (study) for his maths exam at the moment.
 41. Last Tuesday, my uncle (fly) to Paris.
 42. Sara (do) her homework when her friend visited her last night.
 43. At the moment, I (do) an English exercise.
 44. In the future, I think we (have) more lessons online
 45. They are (brown, leather, old) boots.

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

1- "Are you for or against online shopping?"

.....

2- How do you think life will change in the future?

.....

3- "Positive and negative sides of using technology"

.....

4- "Some unusual food that you have tried"

.....

5- "What you can eat to stay healthy"

.....

General Exercises

6- "Your favourite meal"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7- "A review of a museum you know "The Museum of Modern Egyptian Art"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8- "Difficulties that disabled people have"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

9- "A review of a film you have just watched (Jurassic World)"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10- "An advert for a mobile phone you want to sell"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

11- "A special occasion you are going to"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words:

1- to your friend Fatma telling her about a problem you had with an online delivery

- Your friend's email address is fatma77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Mariam and your email address is mariam80@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

2- to your friend telling her about your favourite snack.

- Your friend's name is Hanaa and her email address is hanaa77@gmail.com.

- Your name is Judy and your email address is judy88@hotmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

3- to your friend Salah about someone in your family that you are proud of.

- Your name is Ramy and your email address is ramypost@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is salah666@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

4- to your friend Emad inviting him to your birthday party.

- Your name is Hassan and your email address is hassanpost@gmail.com

- Your friend's email address is emad@666yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

5- to your friend Radwa to advise her about the problem with her sister.

- Your name is Fatma and your email address is fatma345@gmail.com

- Your friend's name is Radwa and her email address is radwa898@yahoo.com

.....

.....

.....

6- to your friend telling her about communication with animals.

- Your friend's name is Magda and her email address is magda898@yahoo.com.

- Your name is Ola and your email address is ola345@gmail.com.

.....

.....

.....

Listening material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات

Units 7 & 8 Test

I love hawawshi. It is easy to make. You put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You cook it in the oven.

Unit 9 & 10 Test

Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple. They loved to wear heavy metal jewellery. They wore expensive beautiful leather sandals. They wore beautiful gold necklaces.

Units 11 & 12 Test

We should keep our environment clean. The main problems are air pollution and climate change. Trees are good for the environment. Trees help reduce air pollution.

Listening on Units 7, 8 & 9

Noha prefers online shopping because she can stay at home and buy what she wants. But Tamer prefers going to real shops because he doesn't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

My name is Esraa. I'm allergic to milk. I love cheese, but I never eat it because it is made from milk. I eat nuts because they are healthy.

Huda doesn't like fast food. Her grandmother cooks delicious spicy chicken. Huda likes eating it at dinner.

Listening on Units 10, 11 & 12

Egyptian cotton is very good. It's used to make luxury clothes. Many people work in the cotton industry. The Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. All people like it because it is very good.


Drones are like planes. They can fly. We can fly them with a remote control. We can control them from the ground. They are going to help save some environmental problems in the future.

I'm at the shops. I'm selling a handbag. It's made of leather. It's L.E 500. It is black and white

End of Term Practice

مجاب عنه في آخر الملحق

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

نص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب 

1-What does Injy know how to cook?

- a. a few things b. many things
- c. only cakes

2-Why do they decide to make a carrot cake?

- a. Hala only eats vegetables.
- b. Hala likes healthy food.
- c. They find a recipe for it.

3-What will Amira do to make the cake?

- a. mix the flour and sugar b. add some eggs
- c. cut the carrots

4-How many nuts should they put on the cake?

- a. four b. fourteen c. ten

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What **a** ?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : **a** ?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a **c** to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper?

Fares : Why do you want them? We are going to do online research!

Baher : **a**

Fares : **c** we need to take notes on important information.

3 Read the text. Then answer the questions:

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like

End of Term Practice

unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will recognise it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Some people don't eat certain food because

- a. they ate it before and liked it
- b. they ate it and didn't like it.
- c. they didn't try it before.
- d. some people told them that it wasn't tasty.

2- If you want to stop liking unhealthy food,

- a. eat healthy foods instead.
- b. stop eating this type of food.
- c. eat this type of food often.
- d. a and b

B. Answer the following questions:

3- What do you think the word recognise means?

.....

4- Why do people often not like unusual food?

.....

5- Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar?

.....

6- What did people find after the stopped putting sugar on things they eat?

.....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1-If you feel ill, you a doctor.

- a. will see
- b. should see
- c. see
- d. would see

2-My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and to walk very well.

- a. can't
- b. doesn't know
- c. is not able
- d. won't

3-Please don't put salt on my food. I don't like it.

- a. many b. a lot c. a few d. any

4-Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants rice with his chicken.

- a. a few b. a little c. a lot of d. any

5-Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to for a delivery.

- a. buy b. pay c. save d. spend

6-People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of

- a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy

7-Before you fry food, you should some oil in a pan.

- a. make b. serve c. heat d. fire

8-Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started

- a. crying b. laughing c. hiding d. wondering

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words:

1. Ramy's (invent) saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little (act)
3. (Add) too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is (visit) the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets.
5. Mona knows how (draw). Let's ask her to draw us a picture

6 Choose one of the following:

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an email of about 90-100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Final Exams

Exam 1

Cairo - Al Salam



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نصوص الاستماع الخاص بهذا السؤال في آخر الكتاب

1. What did Samah buy?

a. A tablet

b. A camera

c. A computer

d. A mobile phone

2. What was the problem with the screen?

a. Lost

b. Damaged

c. Saved

d. Expensive

3. When did she order it?

a. Today

b. Last week

c. Last month

d. Last year

4. What did she do?

a. She sent an email.

b. She phoned the shop

c. She wrote a letter.

d. Nothing

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adam is at a shoe shop to buy a pair of shoes.

Shopkeeper : Hello! How can I help you?

Adam : ① I'd like to buy a pair of shoes.

Shopkeeper : ②?

Adam : Size 39.

Shopkeeper : ③?

Adam : Black.

Shopkeeper : Here you are. Do you like them?

Adam : ④ How much are they?

Shopkeeper : ⑤

Adam : OK. Thanks. Here is the money.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The sun is the most important source of energy. Although we can't live without "it". Scientists tell us that the sun has advantages and disadvantages.. On the one hand, sunshine is good for you as it gives you energy, it is good for plants, so many crops and fruits grow well in Egypt as it is sunny most of the year and it is not usually cold. Tourists like to come to Egypt because of the sunshine. On the other hand, it has some disadvantages as the sunshine can burn your skin, the sun can "start" fires. If it is very hot, some plants can't grow, and it can be difficult to play sports.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sunshine is very useful, but scientists say that it has also . . . effects.
 a. good b. nice c. bad d. great
2. One advantage of the sunshine is that it can give us
 a. fruit b. energy c. fire d. metal

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

5. Why do you think tourists like to come to Egypt?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "start" mean?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The can help you listen to music on the bus.
 a. headphone b. robot c. screen d. moon
2. Don't too much salt to the food as it is unhealthy.
 a. add b. put c. pour d. heat
3. An is a small computer program that we can use on a mobile.
 a. port b. app c. clap d. cap

Final Exams

4. Changing roads into panels is a great invention.
 a. moon b. water c. plastic d. solar
5. I would prefer abroad.
 a. travel b. travels c. travelling d. to travel
6. Can you the problem clearly and I may help you?
 a. steal b. refuse c. paint d. explain
7. She has decided. She abroad.
 a. travel b. travelling
 c. is going to travel d. travels
8. Did you Aswan last year?
 a. visited b. visiting c. visits d. visit

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- In the future, people (travelled) by rockets.
- Would you like to have (any) tea?
- I (able) to do the washing up by myself.
- This glass is dirty. Can I have a clean (ones) , please?
- (This) people are my relatives.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 2

Giza - Hawamdia



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mazen is a/an boy.
 a. lazy b. active c. bored d. sad

2. He spends hours studying.

a. two

b. three

c. four

d. five

3. Mazen sleeps every day.

a. late

b. early

c. lately

d. hard

4. He doesn't like

a. karate

b. swimming

c. football

d. running

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Adham and Omar are talking about going to the cinema.

Adham : How are you, Omar?

Omar : ①

Adham : ②?

Omar : I went to the cinema.

Adham : ③?

Omar : I went by bus.

Adham : What did you see there?

Omar : ④

Adham : Did you enjoy the film? .

Omar : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My father is my hero. He was born in a village in 1952. He worked hard at school and went to university. He became a doctor. He was always interested in helping people. I admire him because he stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He helped the poor for free. He gave them medicine without taking money. He is really a great man. He always got up early. He gave people useful advice. I love him so much.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to his

a. uncle

b. sister

c. father

d. daughter

Final Exams

2. The writer's father worked as a

a. farmer

b. doctor

c. mechanic

d. driver

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

4. Why do you think the writer's father is a great man?

.....

5. What was the writer's father interested in?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "admire" mean?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most children are to video games.

a. worried

b. addicted

c. damaged

d. broken

2. A is a piece of jewellery worn around the neck.

a. necklace

b. glass

c. book

d. class

3. My brother is a/an in the orchestra.

a. farmer

b. cook

c. musician

d. thief

4. We should all our plastic to use again.

a. burn

b. throw

c. damage

d. recycle

5. My brother is to nuts. He must be careful about what he eats.

a. healthy

b. casual

c. amazed

d. allergic

6. My cousin is He uses sign language.

a. deaf

b. rich

c. strong

d. interested

7. My friend knows to drive a car.

a. what

b. how

c. which

d. whom

8. watch too much TV.

a. Didn't

b. Does

c. Don't

d. Isn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. We are going to (watching) the match.

2. There is too (many) sugar in my tea.

3. I don't like this watch. I want the other (ones).

4. (Do) he able to play the piano?
5. If you (be) tired, you should have rest.

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy Food"

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue or grey ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Exam 3

Qalyubia - Benha



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What does Hana love? _____
 a. sports b. shopping online
 c. swimming d. reading
2. What does online shopping save? _____
 a. Time b. Money c. Water d. Food
3. Where can she shop online? At _____
 a. shops b. school c. home d. work
4. Does Hana like going to the shops? _____
 a. Yes, she does b. Maybe c. I don't know d. No, she doesn't

Final Exams

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Amr meets his friend Adel at the library.

Amr : Hi Adel, How are you?

Adel : ①

Amr : What are you reading?

Adel : ②

Amr : ③?

Adel : The article is about recycling.

Amr : ④?

Adel : It means that we can use things again.

Amr : Do you think recycling helps the environment?

Adel : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is on the north coast of Africa. The Egyptians are kind and clever people. They speak Arabic. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It is famous for the Pyramids of Giza, the Egyptian Museum in Cairo, the beautiful temples in Luxor and Aswan and the amazing High Dam south of Aswan. It is also famous for the fine weather all year round. A lot of tourists from all over the world visit Egypt. They like to visit it in winter. They visit Khan Al Khalili to buy presents for their families and their friends. They enjoy spending good time in Egypt and wish to come again many times.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Egyptians are

a. lazy

b. bad

c. ugly

d. kind and clever

2. A lot of tourists from all over the world visit Egypt. "A lot of" means

.....

a. much

b. a little

c. many

d. a few

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. When do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

.....

5. What is Egypt famous for?

.....

6. What do the tourists like to buy?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When Omar got the full marks in English, he was
 a. careless b. proud c. unhappy d. disappointed
2. Would you like tea?
 a. some b. any c. a lot d. a few
3. A is the person who is not able to see.
 a. stupid b. deaf c. wise d. blind
4. Farid to fix the car. He can't do it.
 a. is able b. isn't able c. can d. can not
5. There are a lot of floods because of
 a. schools b. climate change c. trees d. drought
6. Most children are to video games.
 a. addicted b. worried c. broken d. damaged
7. This e-mail is in French, can you it for me, please?
 a. transport b. waste c. taste d. translate
8. I am to nuts and strawberry.
 a. bad b. allergic c. lazy d. funny

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Don't (boiling) eggs more than one time.
2. If you feel ill, you (see) a doctor.
3. I hope there (is) less air pollution in the future.
4. Those glasses are not good. Give me the red (one).
5. Lama and I (knows) how to use the computer.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A person you are proud of"

.....

.....

.....

Exam 4

Al Menofia - Ashmoun



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did Lobna order the phone?

a. Last month	b. Last week
c. Yesterday	d. Three days ago
2. The delivery was

a. yesterday	b. today morning
c. two weeks ago	d. tomorrow
3. The screen of the phone was

a. cool	b. usual	c. damaged	d. online
---------	----------	------------	-----------
4. Lobna wants to the phone for a new one.

a. push	b. translate	c. invent	d. change
---------	--------------	-----------	-----------

F Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Samy and Mona are talking about healthy food.

Samy : I think we should eat healthy food.

Mona : ①

Samy : Should we eat fast foods?

Mona : ②

Samy : ③?

Mona : Yes, fizzy drinks are bad for health.

Samy : What kinds of food should we eat?

Mona : ④

Samy : ⑤?

Mona : Dairy products make our bodies strong.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops; they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't want to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "view" can be replaced by
 a. pollution b. opinion c. material d. shopping
2. If more people shop online, the streets will be less
 a. cleaned b. popular c. polluted d. common

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

4. What do you think of shopping online?

.....

5. Where can you stay while shopping online?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I have a new phone that has a/an to help me do my homework.
 a. motorbike b. app c. wing d. headphone
2. He can speak different such as French and German.
 a. books b. inventions c. idea d. languages
3. Means very bad.
 a. Horrible b. Nice c. Amazing d. Interesting

Final Exams

4. Some people feel worried when they can't their phones.
a. shake b. bake c. wake d. check
5. products like milk make our body strong.
a. Daily b. Diary c. Dairy d. Little
6. Our food should contain
a. proteins b. vitamins c. wood d. a&b
7. My son 8 years old next month.
a. will b. is being c. will be d. is going to be
8. drink many fizzy drinks.
a. Not b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Would you like (any) tea?
2. If she is ill, she should (sees) a doctor.
3. Don't (arrived) late.
4. He is wearing a/an (wool, old, loose) jumper.
5. If you (visiting) Cairo, you should go to the Egyptian Museum.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Helping your environment"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 5

Al Sharkia - Diarb Negm



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At the weekend, we go to the and pick up the rubbish.
a. cinema b. teacher c. school d. beach
2. I work as a for a charity.
a. cleaner b. doctor c. volunteer d. market

3. We always pick up plastic

- a. bottles b. chairs c. tables d. pots

4. The charity helps to our local beach.

- a. play b. eat c. clean d. pick

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar asks Jana about her plan for this evening.

Omar : Good afternoon, Jana. How are you?

Jana : Good afternoon, Omar. ①

Omar : Where are you going?

Jana : ②

Omar : ③?

Jana : To meet my brother. He's coming from Kuwait.

Omar : ④

Jana : His plane arrives at 8 o'clock.

Omar : I hope he will arrive safely.

Jana : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country in the Middle East. Its capital is Cairo. The main language is Arabic. The weather in Egypt is fine all the year, so many tourists come from all over the world to enjoy it. They visit many historic places such as the Egyptian Museum to see the ancient statues. They also visit Luxor and Aswan to see Luxor Temples and the High Dam in Aswan. Also, they can visit the Cairo Tower where they can have delicious meals at the restaurants in Cairo. They enjoy their visit and have nice time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main language in Egypt is

- a. Arabic b. English c. Chinese d. French

2. The capital of Egypt is

- a. Luxor b. Cairo c. Sohag d. Siwa

Final Exams

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to the passage.

4. Why do you think tourists like to visit Egypt?

5. What does the underlined word "fine" mean?

6. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I the recipe that you gave me last night.

- a. visited b. helped c. tried d. ate

2. My teachers help me to the lessons well.

- a. misunderstand b. underground c. understand d. waste

3. Try to help people by solving their problems.

- a. rich b. disabled c. good d. proud

4. She likes playing in the because she loves music.

- a. musician b. orchestra c. temple d. museum

5. I'm looking my baby cousin Lina today.

- a. in b. up c. before d. after

6. I started a project to mobile phones.

- a. return b. cycle c. rewrite d. recycle

7. Do you know this car?

- a. to drives b. how to drive c. to driving d. how drive

8. The train at 7.30.

- a. leaving b. leave c. leaves d. is leaving

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Would you like to eat (any) fruit?

2. I don't have (some) oil.

3. I'd like (watched) a new film.

4. I (visit) my uncle tomorrow - It's my plan.

5. (Can) you able to speak more than two languages?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A person you are proud of"

Exam 6**Al Gharbia - East Tanta****A Listening**

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did Ali go to Luxor?
 a. Last month b. Last week c. Last year d. Last summer
2. He went to Luxor with his
 a. friends b. parents c. teachers d. family
3. They stayed in a there.
 a. house b. hotel c. valley d. village
4. How long did they stay in Luxor?
 a. Three days b. Five days c. Seven days d. Four days

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Maher and Mazen are talking about the Nile.

- Maher** : What is the longest river in the world?
Mazen : ①
Maher : I think it is polluted, isn't it?
Mazen : ②
Maher : ③?
Mazen : Because some people throw rubbish in it.
Maher : That's very bad. ④
Mazen : We should keep the Nile clean.
Maher : ⑤
Mazen : I agree with you that it is important for our life.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

On the walls of the temples, you can find a lot of information about how people dressed. In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians didn't use shoes but some of them had expensive leather sandals. Children didn't usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy metal jewellery. Like some people today, men and women liked to have beautiful necklaces and other jewellery which were designed perfectly using gold and silver.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Linen is a kind of

a. metal

b. cloth

c. wood

d. jewellery

2. The underlined word "loose" means very

a. large

b. beautiful

c. small

d. dirty

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How did we learn about clothing in Ancient Egypt?

.....

4. What did people use to wear in their feet?

.....

5. How were men and women similar in the way they dressed?

.....

6. What did Ancient Egyptians use to make their jewellery?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children should eat a lot of products. They are good for their bones.

a. diary

b. dairy

c. salty

d. tasty

2. It's important to keep up with technology.

a. the latest

b. the late

c. the least

d. later

3. I'd invite you to the dolphin show.
 a. like b. likes c. liked d. like to
4. "Braille" is a special writing for the
 a. deaf b. disabled c. blind d. paralyzed
5. Most young people are to mobile phones.
 a. interested b. worried c. amazed d. addicted
6. Ancient Egyptians' clothes were made of
 a. leather b. linen c. silver d. paper
7. They to do extra homework tonight.
 a. going b. are going c. is going d. go
8. you feel ill, you should see a doctor.
 a. What b. How c. When d. Where

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Nesma (not study) on Fridays.
2. There is (a few) sugar in this cake. It is healthy.
3. I like (these) smart, red cotton T-shirt.
4. You should (being) careful when you use the internet.
5. These cakes are the best (one) at the bakery.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar is to nuts.

- a. energetic b. addict c. allergic d. normal

2. Some kinds of food make Omar

- a. noisy b. ill c. tall d. beautiful

3. Omar must be with what he eats.

- a. careless b. naughty c. careful d. tidy

4. Omar can eat food that has nuts in it.

- a. no b. too many c. some d. lots of

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nour is talking to his friend about his visit to the Museum of Art.

A friend : Where did you go at the weekend?

Nour : ①

A friend : Really! ②

Nour : I went with my parents.

A friend : ③

Nour : No. It is cheap to get inside.

A friend : OK. What did you see there?

Nour : ④

A friend : Are all the paintings ancient?

Nour : ⑤ Some of them are modern.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

How much do you know about the history of some of your favourite foods? You will be surprised when you know when people in England started cooking curry dishes and where people first made pizza.

Many people think that the English people knew about curry from people in India. In fact, wealthy English people were eating dishes made with curry spices hundreds of years before English ships travelled to India. Surprisingly, The word "curry" was first used in an English language cookbook in 1377.

As for pizza, the dish was first made in Persia (What is now Iran). People there were eating round, flat bread with cheese in 500s. that was about 1000 years before pizza was known in Naples, Italy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "wealthy" means

- a. rich b. usual c. popular d. strong

2. "Curry" is a kind of

- a. pasta b. juice c. spices d. rice

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. How do we know that the word "curry" was used long ago?

.....

5. When did the people of Persia eat something like pizza?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people need eight sleep.

- a. hours b. hour's c. hours' d. hour

2. When you do something by, you do it without planning or wanting to do it.

- a. plan b. mistake c. wrong d. yourself

3. The is fantastic in the play. You feel like you are in the mountains!

- a. scenery b. custom c. character d. pottery

4. If I a lot of time using my mobile, I have a headache.

- a. spends b. spent c. am spending d. spend

5. In ancient Egypt, men and women wore clothes.

- a. lose b. loss c. lost d. loose

Final Exams

6. When something is as good as it is possible to be, we say it is

- a. horrible b. perfect c. usual d. traditional

7. We a party next Thursday. Would you like to come?

- a. have b. won't have c. are having d. going to have

8. Trees help air pollution.

- a. reduce b. double c. escape d. spread

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I know how (spell) long words.

2. My sister is (can) to sew clothes. It's easy for her.

3. I bought a round (wood) table.

4. My new glasses are better than the (one) I had last year.

5. I don't want much rice. Just (a few).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your brother's birthday"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 8

Kafr El Sheikh - Riyadh



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Drones can without a pilot.

- a. swim b. sink c. float d. fly

2. We can use a control to fly drones.

- a. drone b. flying c. battery d. remote

3. We can control drones from the

- a. ground b. sea c. floor d. sky

4. In the future, drones are going to help solve some problems.

- a. medical b. environmental c. health d. mental

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Randa asks Aya about her plan for this evening.

Randa : How are you?

Aya : ①

Randa : Where are you going?

Aya : ②

Randa : ③?

Aya : To meet my brother. He's coming from Malaysia.

Randa : ④?

Aya : His plane arrives at 8 o'clock.

Randa : I hope he arrives safely.

Aya : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our facial expressions before they send a message.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Phones are able to understand people's now.

- a. shapes b. forms c. voices d. messages

2. The underlined word "developed" means

- a. damaged b. improved c. broke d. used

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title for the passage?

.....

4. How did people use to send messages on old phones?

.....

Final Exams

5. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future?

6. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The train _____ at 7.30.

- a. leaving b. leave c. is leave d. leaves

2. Sarah _____ do her English homework alone.

- a. can b. are able to c. know how to d. able to

3. He was really ill _____, he went to school.

- a. So b. However c. Because d. As

4. I like cats but I'm _____ to them.

- a. keen b. happy c. hungry d. allergic

5. He _____ some flowers and gave them to his mum.

- a. picked b. backed c. broke d. booked

6. She likes playing in the _____ because she loves music.

- a. musician b. orchestra c. temple d. museum

7. If you _____ an exam, you will feel disappointed.

- a. pass b. feel c. fail d. fall

8. My little sister is _____ to sweets. She always wants to eat them.

- a. added b. mad c. crazy d. addicted

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I want to _____ (improved) my English.

2. _____ (you / like) a few biscuits?

3. He _____ (spend) a week in Alexandria last summer.

4. Hala _____ (read) a story when her son dropped the toy.

5. _____ (Pouring) the eggs into the frying pan now

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Your favourite food"

Exam 9

El Behera - Shubra Khit



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What's your friend's name?
 a. Mayar b. Fatma c. Samar d. Lamar
2. What did you order online?
 a. a dress b. a jacket c. a T-shirt d. a book
3. Which colour do you want?
 a. red b. blue c. brown d. green
4. What's your name?
 a. Mayar b. Fatma c. Samar d. Lamar

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Hadeer and Shady are talking about next summer holiday.

Hadeer : Hello, Shady. How are you?

Shady : Hi, Hadeer. 1

Hadeer : Where will you go next summer holiday?

Shady : 2

Hadeer : Sharm El-Sheikh! Who will you go with?

Shady : 3

Hadeer : 4?

Shady : We will travel by bus.

Hadeer : 5?

Shady : We will stay in a hotel.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

I am a student in the second year of a prep school. My school is clean and beautiful. It is the biggest in the town. I like it very much for many reasons. Firstly, I am lucky to have good teachers. Secondly, I can practice my hobbies in my school such as reading in its big library, playing music and football and drawing. Thirdly, all the students and I can learn how to use the internet and the computer. My school day starts at 8 o'clock in the morning and ends at 2 o'clock in the afternoon. Students don't go to school on Friday or Saturday every week. Finally, I am very proud of my school.

Final Exams

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer's school is a school.
a. primary b. preparatory c. secondary d. KG
2. Students don't go to school on
a. Friday b. Tuesday c. Thursday d. Wednesday

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does the writer think himself lucky?
.....

4. What hobbies can the writer do in his school?
.....

5. Give a suitable title to this passage.
.....

6. How many hours do students spend at school every day?
.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should sure that you eat all types of healthy food.
a. say b. take c. do d. make
2. He can't stop using the internet. He has become to it.
a. disliked b. attacked c. addicted d. lever
3. I'm to sweets, so I never eat them.
a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic
4. don't need pilots to fly them.
a. Planes b. Drones c. Helicopters d. Jets
5. A lot of sugar is bad your teeth.
a. in b. on c. at d. for
6. A pain in your head means
a. toothache b. headache c. knee ache d. singing
7. My little son able to spell difficult words in English.
a. can b. is c. are d. were
8. I bought a handbag.
a. red, new, old b. fantastic, new, leather
c. fantastic, leather, new d. red, old

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Look at the clouds. I think it (rain).
2. She will look online for a new phone when she (get) home.
3. I have four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favorite (one's).
4. I'd like (watched) a new film.
5. There are (a little) cars in the street.

E Writing**6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:**

"Keeping our environment clean"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 10**Ismailia - Ismailia****A Listening****1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Asser finds it to understand science books.
 a. difficult b. easy c. sick d. heavy
2. Asser does in the laboratory.
 a. mistakes b. shopping c. experiments d. sports
3. Asser learns best by doing
 a. things b. writing c. listening d. speaking
4. Asser likes so much.
 a. history b. technology c. geography d. sports

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada and Sara are talking about snacks.

Nada : What's your favourite snack?

Sara : ①

Nada : Why do you like koshari?

Sara : ②

Nada : ③

Sara : My mum always makes it for me.

Nada : What else do you eat?

Sara : ④

Nada : ⑤?

Sara : I eat fruits and vegetables twice a day.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

One day, Eyad invited his friends to have dinner. They went to Abo Ali restaurant. It is a famous one. They looked at the menu and chose their favourite meals. The food was delicious. After having food, they ordered something cold. Now, it's time to pay the money. Eyad put his hand in his pocket but he didn't find any money. He was surprised. Suddenly, his father entered the restaurant, Eyad ran towards him. His dad paid all the money. They left the restaurant laughing at the situation.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- At the end, they left the restaurant
a. sadly b. angrily c. happily d. upset
- The underlined word "one" means
a. father b. the restaurant c. Eyad d. the food

B. Answer the following questions:

- Which meal did Eyad invite his friends to?
.....
- What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
.....
- Did Eyad pay the money? Why?
.....

6. How was the food?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _____ means to provide food or drink.
a. Serve b. Keep c. Smell d. Taste
2. Can you _____ this passage into Arabic?
a. transmit b. transport c. transform d. translate
3. We need someone to _____ a scenery for the play.
a. write b. paint c. show d. sew
4. _____ are planes without pilots.
a. Boats b. Robots c. Rockets d. Drones
5. If a person is _____, he or she isn't able to hear.
a. deaf b. blind c. strong d. weak
6. What _____ would you like? -Large, please.
a. colour b. size c. site d. high
7. I'd like to eat _____ biscuits for breakfast.
a. a few b. a little c. a lot d. any
8. There are _____ many mistakes in this email.
a. two b. too c. toe d. to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Don't _____ (forgot) to do your homework.
2. It's a _____ (new- beautiful- black) bag.
3. What _____ (be) you eating now?
4. I will _____ (visiting) you tomorrow.
5. You shouldn't stay outside when it _____ (raining).

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Modern technology"



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The charity helps to our local beach.
a. play b. eat c. clean d. pick
2. At the weekend, we go to the and pick up the rubbish.
a. teacher b. cinema c. school d. beach
3. I work as a for a charity.
a. cleaner b. volunteer c. doctor d. market
4. We always pick up plastic
a. bottles b. chairs c. tables d. pots

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Sara and Aseel are talking about healthy food

Sara : What type of food should we eat to be healthy?

Aseel : ①

Sara : ②?

Aseel : Because dairy products help us to have strong bones.

Sara : Great! ③?

Aseel : No. Sugar is bad for our teeth.

Sara : What else should we do to be healthy?

Aseel : ④

Sara : Do you have any other advice for me?

Aseel : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Sara likes clothes very much. She always goes shopping for new fashionable clothes. She likes colourful comfortable clothes. She likes to feel relaxed in her clothes. Her favourite colours are orange and yellow. She likes wearing a headscarf which matches the clothes she wears. Sara doesn't like traditional clothes. She thinks

they are something from the past. Her handbag is always the same colour of her blouse. She always wears sunglasses even in winter. Her friends think that Sara is smart. Sometimes they ask her from where she buys her cool clothes, but she never tells them!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara wears sunglasses
 a. in summer only b. in no season
 c. in winter only d. all the time
2. Sara's friends think she is
 a. stupid b. special c. smart d. local

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title for the passage?

.....

4. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to?

.....

5. Why do you think Sara's friends ask her about where she goes shopping?

.....

6. What kind of clothes does Sara like?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many people can their shopping online.
 a. go b. save c. do d. waste
2. Mum had a bad and couldn't go out.
 a. headache b. head c. muscle d. eye
3. Falafel is really and it is very popular in Egypt.
 a. horrible b. terrible c. bad d. delicious
4. A/An is a group of instructions that help you cook a dish.
 a. way b. recipe c. example d. diary
5. We should all our plastic to use again.
 a. burn b. throw c. recycle d. damage
6. In Ancient Egypt, men and women didn't very differently.
 a. call b. dress c. cost d. press

Final Exams

7. There are cars in the centre of the city.

- a. much b. a little c. a lot d. a few

8. If you know the answer, you should ask your teacher.

- a. doesn't b. isn't c. don't d. hasn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I think it (rains) tomorrow.
2. (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
3. She (able) to read music by her hands.
4. My uncle (work) in a big company.
5. The boy and his father (going to) watch a football match.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY (90)** words on:

"A visit to a museum"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 12

Fayoum - Sennurs



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a/an diet.

- a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. allergic

2. Eat some of all of food.

- a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells

3. To be healthy, you should well.

- a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry

4. Don't too much.

- a. use b. bring c. go d. worry

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Eman about her new dress.

Dina : Hello Eman! Your dress is very smart. ①

Eman : Yes, it is new.

Dina : When did you buy it?

Eman : ②

Dina : How much is it?

Eman : ③

Dina : Oh, 800 pounds! It's very expensive. ④

Eman : It's made of linen.

Dina : Can I borrow it for my brother's wedding party?

Eman : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, I'm visiting a very special school in Cairo. It is a music school for girls. Students study their normal subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students here join an orchestra called Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra plays concerts all around the world. The orchestra is **amazing**. The most special thing about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are blind. The orchestra plays international classical and Arabic music. All the students learn to read the music note using Braille. **It** is a system for reading by using hands. They can't read and play at the same time, so they have to remember the music.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The special school is in

- a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Alexandria d. Luxor

2. Blind students can't

- a. walk b. swim c. hear d. see

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title to this passage

.....

Final Exams

4. Why do you think the students have to remember the music?

5. What does the underlined word "It" refer to?

6. What does the underlined word "amazing" mean?



Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This factory uses solar to produce electricity.

- a. panels b. canals c. turbines d. tablets

2. Eman never eats fast food or unhealthy

- a. sleep b. exercise c. snacks d. restaurants

3. Don't your car outside the school.

- a. bark b. land c. mark d. park

4. I always wear to protect my eyes from the sun.

- a. trainers b. sunglasses c. earrings d. sandals

5. He can speak different such as English and French.

- a. jobs b. subjects c. sports d. languages

6. We have 210 in our bodies.

- a. legs b. hands c. bones d. eyes

7. Leila likes milk in her tea ,but not very much.

- a. a little b. any c. many d. a few

8. A film star knows how well.

- a. to act b. acts c. acting d. act

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Take the omelette and (to serve) it with salad..

2. The boy and his father are going to (watching) a football match.

3. Last Tuesday, my uncle (travel) to Paris.

4. I bought (that) trainers when I was in London.

5. We (go) to the beach this weekend if it is very windy.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Are you for or against shopping online"

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal ruling lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no text or other markings on the paper.

Exam 13

Beni-Suef - Nasser



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The speaker is having a fantastic time with his
a. sisters b. brothers c. friends d. family
2. They were in
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Siwa d. Aswan
3. They had a picnic on Fatanas
a. Island b. Farm c. Valley d. Desert
4. The speaker is sitting the water and watching the sunset.
a. in b. by c. at d. from

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona wants to buy a dress.

Shopkeeper : Hello. Can I help you?

Mona : ①

Shopkeeper : ②

Mona : I'd like that green one. ③

Shopkeeper : Sure. The changing room is over there.

Mona : Thank you.

Shopkeeper : Does it fit you?

Mona : ④ Do you have a bigger size?

Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.

Mona : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The type of clothes that is worn usually depends on the occasion. People that attend a wedding usually wear formal clothes. Men often wear suits and women wear dresses. Formal and smart clothes are often worn on special occasions. People often wear different clothes at work. Some jobs require people to wear special uniforms. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes inside their own homes.

This choice of clothes may be very different to the clothes they would wear outside. People often wear clothes which match their size, health and their age.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People wear clothes depending on the

a. time

b. money

c. food

d. occasion

2. People often choose to wear comfortable clothes in their own

a. work

b. homes

c. streets

d. jobs

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

.....

4. What do people in some jobs have to wear?

.....

5. What do people usually wear in weddings?

.....

6. What is the opposite of the underlined word "outside" in the passage?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Shopping online is great. It our time.
a. does b. makes c. saves d. push
- Koshari is really delicious and it is very in Egypt.
a. popular b. horrible c. ugly d. bad
- A lot of important.. are grown in Egypt.
a. hobbies b. crops c. chemicals d. cars
- Policemen were everywhere, so the thief wasn't able to
a. park b. present c. offer d. escape
- We need someone to the scenery for the play.
a. sew b. write c. paint d. cook
- This rich family lives in a big villa.
a. nature b. luxury c. match d. industry
- some beans and put them in a pan.
a. To wash b. Wash c. Washed d. Washing
- you visit Aswan next winter?
a. Will b. Are c. Do d. Were

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- Can you (helps) me?
- All is able (play) the piano.
- This car is the only (ones) that I prefer.
- How (many) money do you need?
- I borrowed (these) story from the library yesterday.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

" Your favourite food"

Final Exams

Exam 14

Al Minia - Maghagha



A Listening

① Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art
a. last year b. last night c. last week d. last month
2. The Museum of Modern Art is in
a. Cairo b. Luxor c. Aswan d. Alexandria
3. Egypt is famous for its art.
a. modern b. old c. bad d. ancient
4. Ali was in seeing art.
a. excited b. bored c. boring d. interested

B Language Functions

② Complete the following dialogue:

Jana is talking to Hana about clothes.

Jana : What a lovely scarf you are wearing, Hana?

Hana : Really? ①

Jana : Yes, I like the green colour. ②

Hana : It's made of Egyptian cotton.

Jana : Great! Where did you buy it?

Hana : ③

Jana : Are there any more green scarfs there?

Hana : ④ This was the last one.

Jana : Oh, dear! What about going to another shop?

Hana : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

③ Read the following, then answer the questions:

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use "it" every day. We can send messages, do research and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions, first, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information. Don't send photos to

"people you don't know". Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or teacher.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should keep your secret.
 a. text b. email c. postcard d. password
2. The underlined words "people you don't know" mean
 a. poor people b. disabled c. strangers d. relatives

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. What should you do when you are in a trouble?

.....

5. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online?

.....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

.....

Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My brother is going to in a play next summer.
 a. save b. make c. act d. add
2. We should all our plastic to use it again.
 a. burn b. throw c. recycle d. damage
3. People like travelling by plane as it's
 a. boring b. traditional c. tiring d. comfortable
4. Ali is proud play in this great team.
 a. on b. of c. to d. at
5. I don't want these expensive shoes, please give me cheaper
 a. one b. one's c. ones d. ones'
6. He is happy because he his exams.
 a. failed b. succeeded c. passed d. lost
7. The word "....." means very nice to eat.
 a. sour b. dirty c. delicious d. terrible

Final Exams

8. To is to change words into another language.

- a. state b. transport c. feed d. translate

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I eat (a little) healthy snacks.
2. He (able) to ride a bike.
3. I don't like this snack, I want the other (ones).
4. If you have free time, don't (wastes) it.
5. I'm looking forward to (visit) the new museum.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about **NINETY** (90) words on:

"Eating healthy food keeps you healthy"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 15

Assiut - Manfalout



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is her friend's name? -

- a. Shyma'a b. Samah c. Samar d. Sandy

2. What did she ordered online? - A

- a. dress b. jacket c. T-shirt d. book

3. What colour did she want? -

- a. Red b. Black c. Brown d. Blue

4. When did the jacket arrive?

- a. Yesterday b. Today c. Tomorrow d. Next year

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada is asking Sama about computers and the internet.

Nada : Hello. Sama. Do you have a computer?

Sama : ① -----, I bought it last year.

Nada : What do you use it for?

Sama : ② -----

Nada : ③ -----?

Sama : Yes, I like the internet. I use it to get a lot of information.

Nada : ④ -----?

Sama : In my opinion, it's dangerous to use it too much.

Nada : What should I do if I'm worried about something online?

Sama : ⑤ -----

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment just to feel happy and spend a nice time.

Others read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you read, you need to be in a ----- place.
 a. huge b. crowded c. noisy d. quiet
2. Students read for their -----
 a. match b. play c. journey d. study

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. Why is reading a helpful habit?

5. How can we remember what we read?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "others" refer to?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you get full marks, I you a bike.

- a. buy b. to buy c. will buy d. am buying

2. You should always eat food.

- a. bad b. hot c. cold d. healthy

3. To your memory, you should eat nuts and fruits.

- a. improved b. improving c. improve d. are improving

4. I'm I need to eat now.

- a. hunger b. hungry c. angry d. thirsty

5. My friend is sending me a message on my phone.

- a. text b. road c. research d. picnic

6. is something that gives you the power to do things.

- a. Plan b. Offer c. Problem d. Energy

7. Healthy food is good our bodies.

- a. in b. on c. for d. of

8. Mountain climbing is the most sport. Many people fall and die.

- a. beautiful b. safe c. dangerous d. cheap

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. Ramy (not / play) computer games on school days.

2. Please, (sat) down.

3. I can (running) fast.

4. People (should) smoke in hospitals.

5. Ali is able to speak English (good).

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A story you read"

.....

.....

.....

Exam 16

Sohag - Juhayna



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What did the speaker buy?

- a. A shirt b. A dress c. A jacket d. A hat

2. Is the speaker trying to buy more clothes?

- a. Yes, she is b. No, she isn't c. Yes, they do d. No, they don't

3. What causes a lot of pollution?

- a. Clothes b. Transportation c. Environment d. Shirts

4. Who did the speaker borrow clothes from?

- a. Her sister b. Her brother c. Her mother d. Her father

Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Laila and Soha are planning for the weekend.

Laila : What are you going to do at the weekend?

Soha : ① What shall we do?

Laila : ②

Soha : The museum! I'd love to.

Laila : ③?

Soha : Of course. I'll bring my camera.

Laila : ④

Soha : We should meet at 9 am.

Laila : That's great! See you then.

Soha : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

From smart phones and social media to TV and tablets, today's children, are flooded by technology. While it's important for children and teenagers to use technology, too much technology use can have bad health and **physical** effects. One of the bad effects on children is the loss of social skills. Many of us stay up too late into the night texting friends or checking social media. All of this leads to poor sleeping habits. Of course, this doesn't mean parents need to ban technology completely, but it's important for parents to know the negative effects of it on children and develop ways to reduce their children's screen time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "physical" means something related to the.....
 a. mind b. personality c. body d. identity
- It is good for children and teenagers to use technology for time.
 a. many b. much c. a little d. a few

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

4. Give an example of the negative effects of technology

5. In your opinion, what are the physical effects of using too much technology?

6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I don't like spending time on social media because this my time.
 a. saves b. wastes c. spends d. waits
- I am to nuts. I always feel ill when I eat them.
 a. addicted b. allergic c. interested d. excited
- Lara knows how to costumes. She loves clothes.
 a. sew b. play c. write d. act
- Women always wear beautiful gold and other similar jewelry.
 a. sandals b. trainers c. earrings d. handbags

5. Children like watching on TV.

- a. cartons b. cartoons c. sculpture d. pottery

6. Trees are good for the environment and help air pollution.

- a. install b. reuse c. recycle d. reduce

7. Ali, this email now, please.

- a. write b. writing c. is writing d. wrote

8. I have about four different jackets but my favourite is the black

- a. one b. this c. ones d. that

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- In the future, we (able) change our roads into solar panels.
- Would you like (have) some coffee?
- I (visit) the dentist at four pm next Friday as arranged.
- There are (a lot of) cheese sandwiches here, so we need to buy some.
- Are you (able) write a script or paint scenery?

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"A Person You Are Proud Of"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 17

Qena - Nag Hammadi



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a diet.

- a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled

2. Eat some of all of food.

- a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells

3. To be healthy, you have to well.

- a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry

Final Exams

4. Don't too much to be healthy.

a. worry

b. bring

c. practise

d. speak

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Farida about the Pyramids.

Tourist : Can I ask you some questions, please?

Farida : ①

Tourist : ② ?

Farida : The Pyramids are in Giza.

Tourist : ③ ?

Farida : They were built by the ancient Egyptians.

Tourist : Are they far from here?

Farida : ④ You can take a taxi.

Tourist : Thank you.

Farida : ⑤

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A famous doctor was always ready to help his poor neighbours. One day, an old woman came to his house and asked if he would come to her house to see her husband who was very sick. The doctor went with her to her house. When he entered, he noticed that there was no food in the house. He examined the man and gave him some medicine, then he asked the woman to come to his hospital to give her some other medicine. The woman went there and he gave her a small box. He told her that she would find the instructions inside the box. When she arrived home, she opened the box. It contained some money and a piece of paper. On the paper he wrote these words: "To be taken when it is needed".

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a in the box.

a. message

b. neighbour

c. woman

d. hospital

2. The doctor asked the woman to go to his hospital to

a. give her some money

b. see her husband

c. examine the box

d. take her money

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the woman go to the doctor's house?

.....

4. How did the doctor know that the family was poor?

.....

5. How do you think the woman felt when she found the money?

.....

6. What does the underlined word "there" refer to?

.....

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you think it is easy to from Arabic into English?

- a. stay b. translate c. find d. waste

2. I hope the flying motorbike invented soon.

- a. will be b. will c. should d. going to

3. I am to nuts, so I must be careful what I eat.

- a. ready b. allergic c. athletes d. energy

4. My dress is damaged, so my mother is it.

- a. sewing b. playing c. cooking d. acting

5. my point of view, we should recycle all our plastic.

- a. Of b. At c. In d. From

6. Are you wearing your brown shoes or the black ?

- a. the shoes b. a shoe c. ones d. one

7. The climate and soil in Egypt are for growing cotton.

- a. perfect b. bad c. hard d. boring

8. Electric cars will help to pollution in the future.

- a. happen b. cause c. save d. reduce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. If you feel tired, you (shouldn't) have a rest.

2. (Are) a film star know how to act in films?

3. It's a (cotton, striped, pink) scarf.

4. Look at the black clouds! It is (go) to rain!

5. You should never drink sea water because there is (too many) salt in it.

E Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY(90) words about:

"The city or village you live in"

Your name is Hatem and your email address is: hatem@gmail.com Your friend's name is Ali and his email address is: ali@gmail.com

Exam 18

The New Valley - Dakhla



A Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The deaf are people who can't

- a. walk b. hear c. see d. taste

2. The disabled are to our country.

- a. unimportant b. unable c. useful d. useless

3. We help disabled people..

- a. mustn't b. can't c. shouldn't d. should

4. All people should treat the disabled as people.

- a. normal b. formal c. abnormal d. warm

B Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ahmed are talking about the week end.

Omar : Hello! How are you?

Ahmed: : I'm OK. ①

Omar : I'm going to visit my uncle this weekend.

Ahmed: : ②

Omar : He lives in Alexandria.

Ahmed: : How are you going to go there?

Omar : ③

Ahmed: : Are you going to the beach?

Omar : ④ I can't swim.

Ahmed: : How about visiting the Alexandria Library?

Omar : ⑤ I like reading a lot.

C Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make luxury clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material. The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it soft. When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of water and chemicals. Now the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Cotton is a

- a. hobby b. chemical c. soil d. material

2. Using chemicals may help protect the environment.

- a. fewer b. a little c. many d. much

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

Final Exams

4. What does the underlined word "it" refer to

5. How do you think the government is trying to protect the environment?

6. Is the soil in Egypt perfect for growing crops?

D Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is a/an on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
a. screen b. app c. battery d. charger
2. Your is the kind of food that you eat every day.
a. work b. exercise c. diet d. homework
3. The children all wore funny, to the family party. Tarek was a firefighter!
a. contents b. customs c. concerts d. costumes
4. Many people in Egypt work in the cotton
a. tradition b. occasion c. industry d. electricity
5. Are his clothes smart or ?
a. casual b. clever c. snowy d. greedy
6. The desert is a difficult to live in.
a. park b. environment c. city d. village
7. Leila likes milk in her tea, but not very much.
a. a few b. any c. a little d. a lot
8. Judy is working on her project
a. tomorrow b. yesterday c. in the past d. ago

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. What is the temperature going to (is) this afternoon?
2. He wore a (long, cotton, red) galabeya.
3. The books are funny, but these (one) are very boring.
4. A firefighter (are) able to stop fires.
5. If you don't (understanding) the lesson, you should tell the teacher.

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on:

"Healthy and unhealthy food."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 19

Al Azhar - Ismailia



A Language Function

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I visited the in Cairo.

a. pyramids

b. parks

c. art museum

d. river

2. The museum has lots of

a. clothes

b. statues

c. pots

d. desks

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Grandma : ①, Leila?

Leila : Yes, please, just a little piece of cake.

Grandma : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake?

Leila : ②

Grandma : How much sugar?

Leila : Little sugar, please.

Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake.

Leila : ③

B Language Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you are on the computer for 3 hours, you, have a break.

a. are

b. shall

c. will

d. should

2. I asked my aunt to a French internet article into Arabic.
 a. translate b. translation c. translator d. translating
3. A can be green, red or yellow.
 a. cloud b. popcorn c. pepper d. peppered
4. These trainers are much better than the I had before.
 a. one b. ones c. once d. one's
5. The desert is a difficult to live in.
 a. environmental b. environments
 c. environment d. environmentally

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last month Sami visited the Egyptian Museum of modern art in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art, but he was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from 20th and 21st centuries. My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very colourful. The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit. I recommend visiting it if you are in Cairo.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did Sami visit the museum?

.....

2. What was the name of Samy's favourite thing in the museum

.....

3. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Egypt is famous for its art.

a. new b. ancients c. newly d. ancient

5. The best things about the museum is that is to visit.

a. old b. ancient c. free d. colourful

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. I hope there is less pollution in the future. (.....)
2. The road is very busy. There are much cars. (.....)
3. Be your brother able to swim? (.....)
4. Are you able to carrying this heavy box? (.....)

Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE(5) sentences on:

"Online shopping"

Exam 20 Al Azhar - The New Valley



Language Function

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What's Judy's favourite sport?

- a. karate b. football c. basketball d. squash

2. Judy is allergic to

- a. nuts b. beans c. apples d. bananas

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Zahraa : 1?

Rawan : I'm going to visit my uncle in the mid-year holiday.

Zahraa : Are you going with your family?

Rawan : 2?

Zahraa : 3?

Rawan : I'll go there by car.

Language Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you feel ill, you a doctor.

- a. sees b. shouldn't see c. should see d. seen

2. I don't like this soup, there is too salt in it.

- a. much b. many c. enough d. few

3. are like planes, without wings.
 a. Helicopters b. Motorbikes c. Bikes d. Phones
4. Farmers use ... although they are bad for nature.
 a. crops b. soil c. chemicals d. oil
5. She's driving too fast. She is have an accident.
 a. couldn't b. won't c. going to d. going

C Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Technology has become important because it saves time. Although it made our life easier and more comfortable, it has bad effect on our lives. Computer addiction can cause health problems such as bad eyesight and becoming fat, so if you aren't addicted to it, you will be fine.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is the passage about?

.....

2. Why do you like computers?

.....

3. What are the bad effects of using computers too much?

.....

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

- a. computer b. sports c. dangers d. problems

5. Computers help you because they save

- a. health b. money c. time d. books

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. I not watch TV tonight if I am busy. (.....)

2. If Ali comes first, he be very happy. (.....)

3. I don't have some cheese in the fridge. (.....)

4. When she was in London, she learned what to speak English. (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Healthy Food"

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 21

Al Azhar - Qena



A Language Function

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Make sure you have a diet.

- a. boiled b. fried c. grilled d. balanced

2. Eat some of all of food.

- seeds b. types c. tastes d. smells

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Bahaa and Ali are talking about reading

Bahaa : Where are you going, Ali?

Ali : ① to read a book.

Bahaa : ②?

: Yes, I like it very much. Reading is my favourite hobby.

Bahaa : ③?

Ali : Science and historical books.

B Usage

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The deaf aren't hear.

- a. can b. know c. able d. able to

2. A/An is a plane without a pilot.

- a. robot b. rocket c. drone d. boat

3. You shouldn't stay outside when it

- a. rain b. rains c. raining d. rained

4. There is petrol in this car. We need more for travelling.
 a. any b. a little c. a few d. a lot
5. The of people in Cairo is different from those in Upper Egypt.
 a. connection b. multilingual c. dialect d. language

B Reading

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My cousin Hatim is addicted to video games. His mother warned him several times that it could hurt his eyesight. A week ago, he complained about his eyes and the headaches he suffered from all week long. I advised him to see a doctor. Later on, he saw one. The first thing the doctor asked him was how long he played video games. Hatim was surprised to know that all these games caused his headaches. The doctor advised him to practise more exercise and eat lots of carrots. When my cousin followed the doctor's advice, he became fine once again.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did Hatim suffer from?
2. What did the doctor advise Hatim to do?
3. What happened when Hatim followed the doctor's advice?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "one" refers to
 a. Hatim b. the doctor c. the mother d. a video game
5. Spending too much time playing video games can hurt your
 a. back b. stomach c. eyesight d. cars

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s) of each sentence:

1. Did you used to drive a car? (.....)
2. If Nabil comes first, he be very happy. (.....)
3. We have got any bread. (.....)
4. Be you able to play music? (.....)

E Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A visit to a museum."

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 22

امتحان الدمج



A Language functions

1 Choose and complete the following dialogue :

- a. Thank you b. What is your name ?
c. Who is your hero? d. I live in Cairo e. Do you like Egypt ?

Shady : Hi, ① ----- ?

Ahmed : My name is Ahmed.

Shady : Where do you live?

Ahmed : ② -----

Shady : ③ ----- ?

Ahmed : Yes , I like it very much.

Shady : ④ ----- ?

Ahmed : My hero is my father.

Shady : ⑤ -----

Ahmed : You are welcome.

2 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Sami. I am thirteen years old . I live in Alexandria. I usually wake up at 6 in the morning. First, I wash my face and brush my teeth. After that, I get dressed, then eat a cheese sandwich for breakfast. Next, I carry my bag and go to school. I always start school at 8 in the morning and then have a lunch break and talk to my friends. Next, I finish school around 3 in the afternoon, and then I wait for the school bus. Finally, I usually do my homework, have my milk, and go to bed at 9 p.m.

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of this passage?

- a. Sami's life b. Ahmed's life c. Soha's life d. Daily life

2. How does Sami go to school?

- a. By car b. By bus c. On foot d. By train

3. Sami is ----- years old.

- a. fourteen b. fifteen c. thirteen d. thirty

4. Sami eats a ----- sandwich for breakfast.

- a. cheese b. tea. c. fruit d. milk

5. Sami lives in ----- .

- a. Aswan b. Giza c. Cairo d. Alexandria

Final Exams

6. Sami starts school at in the morning.

- a. eighteen b. eight c. eighty d. seven

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This jacket uses an app to make you warmer.

- a. boring b. ugly c. stupid d. clever

2. She play football if she doesn't finish her homework.

- a. won't b. haven't c. aren't d. don't

3. You should eat healthy

- a. snakes b. snacks c. spikes d. sneaks

4. People like to drink juice or water when they are

- a. full b. thirsty c. hungry d. angry

5. The disabled can use to be able to move.

- a. wheelchairs b. armchair c. wheels d. sofas

6. We should things such as bags to reuse them again.

- a. cycle b. recycle c. throw d. go

7. A/An is a person who does things without taking money.

- a. shopkeeper b. customer c. volunteer d. assistant

8. There's a great from the top of the tower.

- a. review b. view c. watch d. few

9. People wear to protect their eyes from the sun.

- a. sunglasses b. trainers c. sandals d. earrings

10. The headphone can Arabic into English.

- a. write b. transport c. translate d. feed

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Life easier in the future.

- a. is b. was c. will be d. were

2. vegetables into small pieces.

- a. Chopping b. To chop c. Chops d. Chop

3. Will you visit Aswan? Yes, I

- a. would b. will c. won't d. do

4. Are there tickets?

- a. some b. a c. an d. any

5 Write a paragraph of about (70)seventy words on:

"Computer"

It- very -important/ can- store - information/ do -sums - quickly

Listening material

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الاختبارات

End of Term Practice

Amira: Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook?

Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make?

Amira: Shall we make a cake for Hala? It's her birthday tomorrow.

Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.

Amira: Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.

Injy : What do we need?

Amira: We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.

Injy : Good, I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira?

Amira: Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy, I'll cut the carrots.

Injy : Okay. How old will Hala be?

Amira: She is fourteen tomorrow.

Injy : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.

Amira: That's a good idea!

Final Exams

Exam 1

Samah bought a mobile phone last week. When she received the phone, the

screen was damaged. She phoned the shop and they sent her another one.

Exam 2

Mazen is an active boy. He studies for five hours every day. He sleeps early every day. He likes football but he doesn't like swimming.

Exam 3

Hana loves shopping online. Online shopping saves time. She can shop online at home. Hana doesn't like going to the shops.

Exam 4

Lobna ordered a phone last week. The delivery was yesterday. The screen of the phone was damaged. Lobna wanted to change the phone for a new one.

Exam 5

We go to the beach at the weekend. I work as a volunteer for a charity. We always pick up plastic bottles. The charity helps to clean our local beach.

Exam 6

Ali went to Luxor last month. He went there with his parents. They stayed in a hotel. They stayed there for a week.

Exam 7

Omar is allergic to nuts. When he eats some kinds of food, he gets ill. He must be careful with what he eats. Omar can eat food that has no nuts.

Exam 8

Drones can fly without a pilot. We can use a remote control to fly drones. We

Listening material

can control them from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

Exam 9

I'm Fatma. I love online shopping. I ordered a dress for my best friend Mayar yesterday. The dress was blue. Mayar loved the dress and thanked me.

Exam 10

Asser finds it difficult to understand science books. He does the experiments in the laboratory. He learns best by doing things. He likes technology so much.

Exam 11

The charity helps to clean our local beach. We go to the beach at the weekend. We pick up rubbish. I work in the charity as a volunteer. We always pick up plastic bottles.

Exam 12

Make sure you have a balanced diet. You should eat some of all types of food. You should sleep well, to be healthy. Don't worry too much.

Exam 13

I'm having a fantastic time with my friends. We went to Siwa. We had a picnic on Fatanas Island. I am sitting by the water and watching the sunset.

Exam 14

Ali visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art last week. It is in Cairo. Egypt is famous for its ancient art. Ali was interested in seeing art.

Exam 15

Samah is my friend. She likes online shopping. She ordered a jacket online. She wanted it red. The jacket arrived yesterday.

Exam 16

I like shopping online. I bought a dress last week. I love clothes so I always try to buy more clothes and I sometimes borrow clothes from my sister.

Shopping online helps to reduce pollution because we use less transportation.

Exam 17

Make sure you have a balanced diet. Eat some of all types of food. To be healthy, you have to sleep well. Don't worry too much to be healthy.

Exam 18

The deaf are people who can't hear. The disabled are useful to our country. We should help disabled people. All people should treat the disabled as normal people.

Exam 19

I visited the museum in Cairo. It has lots of statues. It was a nice visit.

Exam 20

Judy likes sport. Her favourite sport is basketball. She is allergic to nuts. She must be careful with what she eats.

Exam 21

Make sure you have a balanced diet. Eat some of all types of food. Sleep well and do exercise.